Herbs & Natural Supplements
An evidence-based guide
Volume 1

Lesley Braun
Marc Cohen
Herbs & Natural Supplements
An evidence-based guide
4TH EDITION
VOLUME 1
CONTENTS

Organisation of this book vi
Acknowledgments vii
About the authors viii
Contributors ix
Reviewers x
Preface xi

Herbal and natural supplements

1 Introduction to complementary medicine 1
2 Introduction to herbal medicine 19
3 Introduction to clinical nutrition 29
4 Introduction to aromatherapy 42
5 Introduction to food as medicine 54

Clinical practice

6 Introduction to the practice of integrative medicine 78
7 Safety of complementary medicines 92
8 Interactions with herbal and natural medicines 109
9 Preoperative care: considerations 129
10 Cancer and the safety of complementary medicines 143
11 Herbs and natural supplements in pregnancy 172
12 Introduction to wellness 202

Index 215
This fourth edition of *Herbs and Natural Supplements: an evidence-based guide* is organised into four sections. The first volume provides a basic introduction to complementary medicine in general and then, more specifically, to herbal medicine, clinical nutrition, aromatherapy and food as medicine. It is hoped that many of your general questions will be answered here. In this first volume, we have also included the chapters relating to clinical practice and explore the relatively new fields of integrative medicine and wellness as it relates to health. These areas are gaining popularity around the globe and complementary medicine philosophy and treatments are often an integral part of the approach.

We have also included chapters with a focus on safety because the wise clinical use of all interventions must be based on a benefit versus risk assessment. There are general chapters discussing the safety of herbs and natural supplements and drug interactions, and then specific chapters focusing on safety in pregnancy, before surgery and for people undertaking treatment for cancer. These topics are discussed in both a theoretical and a practical way to clarify the key concerns and produce some general guidelines that can be used to inform practice.

The second part of this volume consists of ready-reference appendices, the largest of which is a table outlining the interactions possible between the complementary medicines reviewed and pharmaceutical drugs. Although investigation into this area is still in its infancy, we have provided a brief explanation for each possible interaction and a general recommendation based on what is currently known or suspected. It is intended as a guide only, to be used to inform practice when clinicians take a medical and medication history; obviously it should be interpreted within the individual patient’s context. It is anticipated that this section will continue to change in future editions as more clinical studies are published and theoretical predictions are tested.

The second volume comprises of 132 evidence-based reviews of some of the most popular herbs and natural supplements available over the counter. Exhaustive reviews of the peer-reviewed literature have been undertaken by the author team to update, modify and expand information from the previous edition. Common names, chemical components, main actions, clinical uses, dosage range and safety issues are included for each herbal medicine. For nutritional supplements, background information and pharmacokinetics, food sources, deficiency signs and symptoms and the new Australian and New Zealand recommended daily intakes (RDIs) are also included where appropriate. Although technical language is frequently used, there is also a summary in non-technical language (Practice Points/Patient Counselling) and answers to key questions patients may have about the product (Patients’ FAQs). A Historical note is included where appropriate and occasionally there are also Clinical note boxes that provide further information.
Each edition of *Herbs and Natural Supplements* is bigger than the last and has required even more effort to produce. This is certainly true of this, our fourth edition, which has been expanded to two volumes and is now also available as an eBook.

The increase in size is chiefly due to the enormous amount of new material we have uncovered and felt important enough to include in this completely revised edition. Between Medline, Science Direct and the Cochrane database, there are tens of thousands of peer-reviewed articles that are now available to help us uncover the potential of herbs and natural supplements.

Identifying, interpreting, collating and synthesizing this information is an important and challenging task. For this edition, we significantly expanded our contributor team and searched for people with a range of backgrounds, training and skills. Some contributors are research academics with an expertise in complementary medicine; others are university lecturers working at the interface with students, whereas others are clinicians that bring a real-world perspective to the task. As always, I believe the author team to be among the brightest and most talented technical CM writers in the country. Their dedication, tenacity and enthusiasm have been integral to this project and I am privileged to have them on the team.

On a personal note, undertaking such a major project as this book means many hours dedicated to working in the home office, away from family and friends. It also means mentally retreating from everyday life as thoughts about the book and the issues raised, permeate nearly everything.

I’d like to thank my husband Gary, who is my biggest support, greatest teacher and best friend. His understanding and patience are always given without a second thought and forever appreciated. My three daughters Sarah, Lori and Jaimie are wonderful, warm and intelligent people who have found a genuine interest in health and helping others. I am so proud and thank you for your understanding and support during my busy and distracted writing periods.

I’d also like to thank all my parents Shana and Fred Green, Judy Braun for their emotional and hands-on support; my late grandfather Leon Kustin and father-in-law Emil Braun, who continue to serve as reminders to me to have courage and persevere; and the rest of my wonderful extended family and friends who accept that I’m off the radar every now and again, working on another book.

I’d like to make a special mention of my late father, Magenesta, who passed away between editions. Without him I would not have finished my pharmacy degree or started my life long journey into natural medicine – you have been my mentor and guide from the beginning.

I’d like to thank associate editors Liza Oates, Rachel Arthur, Gina Fox, Evelyn Tiralongo, Louise Zylan and Brad McEwan for helping to guide the newer contributors with their patience, experience and wisdom. I’d like to thank returning contributors Ondine Spitzer, Leah Hechtman, Emily Bradley, Trisha Dunning and Surinder Baines for their continued commitment and professionalism and Marc Cohen for your unwavering vision. We also have a large number of new contributors who have been important additions to the author team; without you, this book simply would not have been possible — thank you.

I’d like to thank the team at Elsevier, especially Neli Bryant, for her energy and co-ordination, and my inspiring work colleagues at The Alfred Hospital (especially Prof Frank Rosenfeldt), Monash University (esp. Prof Paul Komesaroff), National Institute of Complementary Medicine (esp Prof Alan Bensoussan) and most recently, Blackmores (esp Christine Holgate and Marcus Blackmore) and the wonderful Blackmores Institute.

Finally, thank you to all the health care professionals that have told me they use this book every day to guide their clinical practice. Knowing this helps make the difficult journey easier and is an important reminder of why our work is important, because the information within helps improve people’s lives through you.
ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Lesley Braun, PhD, BPam, DipAppSciNat
Associate Professor of Integrative Medicine (Hon)
National Institute of Complementary Medicine,
University of Western Sydney, NSW, Senior
Research Fellow (Hon), Monash/Alfred Psychiatric
Research Centre, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

Dr Lesley Braun is a registered pharmacist
and naturopath. She holds a PhD from RMIT
University, Melbourne, in which she investiga-
ted the integration of complementary medi-
cine into hospitals in Victoria. Dr Braun is an
Adjunct Associate Professor of Integrative Med-
cine at the National Institute of Complementary
Medicine (NICM) at the University of
Western Sydney. NICM provides leadership
and support for strategically directed research
into complementary medicine and translation
of evidence into clinical practice and relevant
policy to benefit the health of all Australians.

Dr Braun serves on the Australian Thera-
peutic Goods Advisory Council, which oversees
the implementation of TGA reforms and pro-
vides general strategic guidance to the TGA,
advice on relationships and communication with
stakeholders. She is also on the executive for
the Complementary and Integrative Therapies
interest group of the Clinical Oncology Society
of Australia and is an advisory board member
to the Australasian Integrative Medicine Asso-
ciation. As of 2014, she is also Director of
Blackmore’s Institute, the academic and profes-
sional arm of Blackmores, which entails engag-
ing with a broad range of academics, government
and industry bodies and overseeing a compre-
hensive academic and research program.

Since 1996 Lesley has authored numerous
chapters for books and more than 100 articles,
and since 2000 has written regular columns for
the Australian Journal of Pharmacy and Journal of
Complementary Medicine. She lectures to medical
students at Monash University and to chiro-
practic students at RMIT University, and is
regularly invited to present at national and
international conferences about evidence-based
complementary medicine, drug interactions,
complementary medicine safety and her own
clinical research.

Her role as the main author of *Herbs and
Natural Supplements: an evidence-based guide*
represents a continuation of a life-long goal to
integrate evidence-based complementary medi-
cine into standard practice and improve patient
outcomes safely and effectively.

Marc Cohen, MBBS(Hons), PhD, BMedSc
(Hons), FAMAC, FICAE
Professor of Health Sciences, School of Health
Sciences, RMIT University, Melbourne, VIC,
Australia

Professor Marc Cohen is one of Australia’s
pioneers of integrative and holistic medicine
who has made significant impacts on educa-
tion, research, clinical practice and policy. He
is a medical doctor and Professor of Health
Sciences at RMIT University, where he leads
postgraduate wellness programs and supervises
research into wellness and holistic health,
including research on yoga, meditation, nutri-
tion, herbal medicine, acupuncture, lifestyle
and the health impact of pesticides, organic
food and detoxification. Professor Cohen sits
on the board of a number of national and
international associations, including the Aus-
tralasian Integrative Medicine Association, the
Global Spa and Wellness Summit and the Aus-
tralasian Spa and Wellness Association, as well
as serving on the editorial boards of several
international peer-reviewed journals. Professor
Cohen has published more than 80 peer-
reviewed journal articles and co-edited *Under-
standing the Global Spa Industry*, along with
more than 10 other books on holistic approaches
to health. He is a frequent speaker at many
national and international conferences where
he delivers inspiring, informative and uplifting
presentations. His impact on the field has been
recognised by four consecutive RMIT Media
Star Awards, as well as the inaugural Award for
Leadership and Collaboration from the National
Institute of Complementary Medicine.
Phil Dowling, MA(LiveFoodNut), Naturopath Practitioner, BA(Econ), BHSc, DipNat, Dip Herb
Senior Head, Faculty of Naturopathy and Nutrition, Wellpark College of Natural Therapies, Auckland, New Zealand
Chapters updated: Chapter 1 Introduction to complementary medicine

Leah Hechtman, PhD(candidate), MSciMed(RHHG), BHSc(Nat), ND
Director and Clinician, The Natural Health and Fertility Centre
PhD candidate — University of Sydney, Department of Obstetrics, Gynaecology and Neonatology, Faculty of Medicine, President, National Herbalists Association of Australia, NSW, Australia
Chapter updated: Chapter 11 Herbs and natural supplements in pregnancy

Liza Oates, PhD, GCert Evid-based CompMed, BHSc(Nat)
Course co-ordinator ‘Food as Medicine’ and ‘Wellness Practices & Perspectives’, Postgraduate Wellness Program, RMIT University, Vic, Australia
Naturopathic Clinical Supervisor, Southern School of Natural Therapies and Endeavour College of Natural Health
Teaching Associate, Department of General Practice, Monash University
Chapter updated: Chapter 5 Introduction to food as medicine

Tanya Wells, B.Sc.(Hons), BHSc(Nat), GCertHealthProfEd, Memberships: MNHAA AIMA AMCOSA
Integrative Medicine Naturopath, Lecturer Synergy Health — Consulting, Seminars and Training — Drug–Herb/Nutrient Interaction Seminars for Medical and Nursing Practitioners, Vic, Australia
Chapter updated: Chapter 10 Cancer and the safety of complementary medicines
REVIEWERS

Sandy Davidson, MPH(USYD), DipNat, AdvDipNat, DipNutr; Membership: DRM
Associate Program Leader — Nutritional Medicine, Endeavour College of Natural Health

Myfanwy Graham, MPharm
Associate Lecturer, School of Biomedical Sciences and Pharmacy, Faculty of Health and Medicine, University of Newcastle, NSW, Australia

Elizabeth MacGregor, MEd(HighEd), BHSc(Nat)
Naturopathic Practitioner, Senior Lecturer of Naturopathic Medicine, Endeavour College, Perth, WA, Australia

Karen Wallace, BHSc(Nat), BBus(HAdm), MANTA
Naturopathic Practitioner, Lecturer, Endeavour College of Natural Health, Perth, WA, Australia
Welcome to the fourth edition of *Herbs and Natural Supplements: an evidence based guide*. Due to the exponential growth in the peer-reviewed literature, we have had to expand our team of contributors significantly since the last edition. We have contributions from experts with a range of backgrounds such as nutrition and naturopathy, herbal medicine, pharmacy, dietetics and medicine and also a number of research active academics and university lecturers.

I started writing the first edition, together with Prof Marc Cohen, nearly 10 years ago, and it is very heartening to see the enormous growth in the evidence base that has occurred since that time. We now have far more information available in the peer-reviewed literature about key active components in herbal medicines, pharmacological activity in vivo and clinical trials. In particular, the complexity of herbal medicines has become more evident as nearly all have multiple mechanisms of action and we have well and truly moved beyond using solely traditional evidence to guide their use. Unfortunately, some authors of meta-analyses still continue to pool information from studies that have tested different plant parts and even species. This is like lumping apples and oranges together, and thereby compromises the usefulness of these reviews. However, overall reporting in herbal medicine studies has improved and where possible, we state the extract used, dose and administration form to help guide you in your practice.

The area of drug-herb interactions was of particular concern in the early-mid 2000s and there is now far more information about interactions that are clinically relevant. You will notice that we place most importance on drug interactions that have been demonstrated in vivo because in vitro testing has led us all astray in the past with false positives.

Probably the biggest growth area has been in nutritional science and research. In this edition, the fish oil, vitamin D and probiotic monographs in particular have expanded significantly. They are among the most popular supplements being bought in retail stores today. Fish oils are being intensively investigated for health conditions beyond cardiovascular disease, and there is work being done in mental health, neurological diseases, neonates and children and even cancer. Unfortunately, some researchers still use olive oil as a placebo, which is unfortunate because this is not an inert substance and could be compromising results. Vitamin D is also being investigated for conditions unrelated to the musculoskeletal system, and population studies are indicating low vitamin D status is rife. Probiotics has been another area to explode with new information about potential effects beyond the gastrointestinal tract. The effect of the microbiome on multiple diseases is only starting to be understood and the role of pre- and probiotics in influencing it is slowly being uncovered. In contrast, there have been relatively fewer studies published on vitamins E and C than in the past.

Our team of contributors have systematically searched the main medical databases, using primary literature where possible, to capture, collate and synthesise the best and most relevant information for busy clinicians. We used Medline, Science Direct and the Cochrane database as a starting point to identify articles published since our last edition. This means having access to over 24 million peer-reviewed articles. Despite our best efforts, no doubt we will have missed something. This is due to the intense research activity underway and almost weekly publication of new information making it extremely difficult to keep up.
In this book, we report on positive, negative and inconclusive results and try to put forward theories as to why results are inconsistent. I think that in the future, we will better understand these differences. In particular, I wonder how much individual genetics is playing a role which we have not yet fully explored at this time. I also think there will be a time in the near future when personalised optimal nutrition will be developed and the one-size-fits all evidence based approach, which uses averages and bell shaped curves, will be seen as a blunt instrument of the past.

We have tried our best to capture and present the available information in such a way that is useful to clinicians. I hope that this book will help expand your practice by unlocking the potential of natural medicines and safely guide your patients to use them appropriately.
CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION TO COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE

The practice of medicine aims to reduce human suffering through the treatment and prevention of disease, and has been part of every human society and civilisation throughout history. Although medicine has a single aim, over the ages many different practices and techniques have evolved to achieve this. We are currently living at a time when the wisdom of many different cultures and philosophies is widely available to us. Despite the existence of a wide range of therapies, medicine in the Western world has been largely institutionalised and dominated by the scientific biomedical model that centres on treating disease with drugs and surgery. In more recent times a new model has emerged; it attempts to integrate some of those therapies and medicines that are not based on the biomedical model and that have been previously termed ‘alternative’. In integrative medicine, as some have called it, ‘alternative medicine’ is viewed as complementary to the existing system and practitioners seek to improve and enlarge the scope of the existing biomedical model.

WHAT IS COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE?

The definition of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) has been the subject of some debate. In 1995 the following definition was formulated at a conference held by the National Institutes of Health’s Office of Alternative Medicine in the USA, with the aim of producing a definition that has the broadest and most consistent applicability and that excludes bias and partisanship:

Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) is a broad domain of healing resources that encompasses all health systems, modalities, and practices and their accompanying theories and beliefs, other than those intrinsic to the politically dominant health system of a particular society or culture in a given historical period. CAM includes all such practices and ideas self-defined by their users as preventing or treating illness or promoting health and well-being.

National Institutes of Health Panel on Definition and Description 1997

Like many definitions produced by committees, this one seems a little unsatisfying. Simply dividing interventions into those that are part of the politically dominant health system and those that are not does not provide useful insight. This classification is also subject to regional political differences that may be unrelated to healthcare.

Rather than focus on political acceptance as the basis for defining alternative and
Complementary medicine, a discussion paper by the Australian Medical Council addresses ‘unorthodox therapies’ and states that ‘the practices they embrace are by definition unscientific and of unproven efficacy until proved otherwise (in which case they become part of mainstream medicine’) (Australian Medical Council 1999).

The division of therapies into unorthodox and mainstream based on scientific merit is a little simplistic, and open to subjective interpretation. Similarly, the divide between complementary and conventional medicine can no longer be based on differences in scientific support as some herbals have high-level evidence yet remain classified as complementary (such as St Johns wort). On the other hand, some complementary medicines, such as fish oils, are now embraced by medical doctors and specialists and it remains to be seen how long they will continue to be called complementary.

When defining therapies on political or scientific grounds, further confusion is added because of the amount of time it takes to gain wide acceptance. For example, even though scientific evidence in support of acupuncture has been accumulating since the discovery of endogenous opioids in the mid-1970s, it is well accepted in countries such as China, and government rebates via Medicare have been available for acupuncture for nearly two decades, this therapy is still not universally accepted as mainstream in Australia and New Zealand.

Over the last few decades there has been a move away from calling complementary medicine ‘unorthodox’ or ‘unconventional’ or ‘fringe’ medicine as more scientific research has been conducted and there has been greater integration of many complementary medicine modalities and specific treatments into interdisciplinary medical clinics, hospitals, pharmacies and many allied health clinics. In fact, for many treatments traditionally thought of as complementary, such as massage, yoga, meditation and acupuncture, the broad acceptance of their usefulness by medical practitioners really challenges whether they can be called ‘complementary’ at all.

The range of therapies traditionally described as complementary is vast and includes treatments based on traditional philosophies, manual techniques, medicinal systems, mind–body techniques and bioenergetic principles (Table 1.1). These techniques vary widely with respect to levels of efficacy, cost, safety and scientific validation, yet they often share common principles, including the concept of supporting the body’s homeostatic systems, as well as acknowledging the role of lifestyle practices, personal creativity, group sharing, the mind–body connection and the role of spiritual practice in health.

**COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE IN AUSTRALIA**

Complementary medicine (CM) in the form of herbal medicine, clinical nutrition, bodywork therapies and mind–body techniques has existed in Australia for generations. Over the last three decades, public support for CM has grown to the point where it is highly unusual to find someone who has not taken a herbal or natural supplement, visited a massage therapist or tried meditation or yoga.

---

**TABLE 1.1 THE RANGE OF COMPLEMENTARY THERAPIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHILOSOPHICAL SYSTEMS</th>
<th>MEDICINAL</th>
<th>BIOENERGETIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ayurvedic</td>
<td>Herbal therapies</td>
<td>Magnetism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yoga</td>
<td>Homeopathy</td>
<td>Pulsed electromagnetic fields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traditional Chinese medicine</td>
<td>Diet modification</td>
<td>Qi gong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shamanic healing</td>
<td>Nutritional supplementation</td>
<td>Reiki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naturopathy</td>
<td>Aromatherapy</td>
<td>Therapeutic touch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIND–BODY MODALITIES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meditation</td>
<td>Chiropractic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypnosis</td>
<td>Massage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-help/support groups</td>
<td>Reflexology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biofeedback</td>
<td>Shiatsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prayer/spiritual healing</td>
<td>Osteopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
In 2000 it was estimated that about 50% of the Australian population took a ‘natural supplement’, about 20% formally saw a complementary medicine practitioner and public spending on complementary medicines (A$2.3 billion in 2000) was more than four times patients’ contributions for all pharmaceutical medications (MacLennan & Taylor 2002). A follow-up survey performed in 2004 found that although spending on complementary medicines had decreased to A$1.8 billion, there was a slight increase in the number of people taking natural supplements, and visits to complementary medicine practitioners rose to 26.5% (MacLennan et al 2006). More recent statistics reveal that up to 70% of the Australian population has used complementary medicine in a number of different forms (Xue et al 2007).

Data from the Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) indicates that in the 10 years leading up to 2006, the number of people visiting CM practitioners within a 2-week period rose from approximately 500,000 to 750,000, and over the same period there was an 80% increase in the number of people employed as CM practitioners. The most commonly consulted CM practitioners were chiropractors, naturopaths and acupuncturists (ABS 2004–05, ABS 2008).

CM is used by children, adults and older people across the age spectrum. It is used by people with cancer, HIV/AIDS, musculoskeletal pain, cardiovascular disease, diabetes and many other conditions, indicating that its use is broad and not chiefly the domain of the ‘worried well’.

One of the main reasons people choose CM is to manage chronic disease, improve wellbeing and as a preventive healthcare approach (Braun et al 2010, Brownie 2006, MacLennan et al 2006). In 2010, a national survey of over 1100 pharmacy customers found that 72% of them were using complementary medicine products and rated them as effective or effective enough. Additionally, over 50% of all customers thought pharmacies should employ naturopaths (Braun et al 2010). This signifies that much of the general public recognises the usefulness of naturopaths and don’t see the artificial ‘us’ and ‘them’ divide that used to exist. Another national survey of 479 naturopaths and Western herbalists found that 24% had worked in a community pharmacy in the past and some had their own herbal tinctures and private consulting space in this setting (Braun et al 2011).

**GREATER ACCEPTANCE**

Signs of greater acceptance of various complementary practices are also evident among conventional medicine practitioners. This is signified by the Australian Medical Association’s (AMA) formal position statement on complementary medicine recognising ‘that evidence-based aspects of Complementary Medicine are part of the repertoire of patient care and may have a role in mainstream medical practice’. This statement was endorsed by the Royal Australian College of General Practitioners (RACGP). The Australian Medical Students Association (AMSA) has over 17,000 members and also holds a position advocating for the education of CMs in medical programs across Australia, insofar as it is important for students to understand commonly-used CM practices to ensure a holistic approach to patient management and wellbeing. It also goes on to state that ‘At present the medical curriculum of most Australian Universities does not facilitate adequate opportunities for medical students to gain an appropriate awareness of CMs’ (AMSA 2014).

According to a Melbourne-based survey, over 70% of doctors, surgeons, anaesthetists and pharmacists (n = 127) at a Victorian public teaching hospital rated the following complementary medicine practices as effective: acupuncture, yoga, meditation, massage (Braun 2007). A similar finding was reported for Australian general practitioners (GPs) who thought acupuncture, meditation, yoga, hypnosis and massage were highly effective (Cohen et al 2005). In fact, surveys have estimated that 30–40% of Australian GPs practise a complementary therapy and more than 75% formally refer their patients for such therapies (Cohen et al 2005, Hall 2000, Pirotta et al 2000). It is also estimated that more than 80% of GPs think it appropriate to practise therapies such as hypnosis, meditation and acupuncture and that most GPs desire further training in various complementary therapies (Cohen et al 2005, Pirotta et al 2000).

The interest of GPs in CM is supported by the forming of links between the Australasian Integrative Medicine Association and the Royal Australian College of General Practitioners with the release of a joint position paper on
Starting in 2011, a group called ‘The Friends of Science in Medicine’ (FSM) undertook a campaign to condemn complementary medicine and push for universities to stop teaching any complementary medicine content, chiefly by labelling it as ‘pseudoscientific’ and suggesting that it would discredit genuine scientific pursuits (MacLennan & Morrison 2012). By April 2012, the focus on university education had broadened to include clinical practice and the legitimacy of complementary medicine in Australian society. Flatt (2013) reports that in multiple interviews the FSM ‘express incredulity at the willingness of the public to engage with “nonsensical” medicine and disbelief at the potential for intelligent people to suspend their normal judgement to pursue complementary medicine healthcare’. There are also continuous assertions by FSM representatives in the media that complementary medicine is un-testable using scientific processes and therefore cannot be evidence-based.

A response by Myers et al (2012) makes the point that removing CM programs from universities is short-sighted, will not have a significant impact on the demand for clinical services and may in fact decrease the educational rigour of these courses, to the detriment of patients (Myers et al 2012). Additionally, when the issue is viewed from a sociological perspective, the activities of FSM say much less about good science and much more about control and power. Komesaroff (2014) agrees and stated in The Conversation that there is a current tendency in Australia that may have crossed the line from reasoned discussion to the inappropriate use of power and authority.

FSM took on many different activities including a persistent letter-writing campaign to university vice-chancellors, articles in the professional medical press, internet postings and numerous media interviews. Responses also emerged from researchers and academics, professional associations and practitioners. In particular, associations argued that emotive reasoning based on anecdote was being used by FSM together with inaccurate definitions and out-dated information (National Herbalists Association of Australia 2012, Australian Traditional Medicine Society 2012). Some academics also argued that the depiction of CM by FSM was power-based and actually did nothing to advance science which should aim to explore new ways of thinking and enquiry. Komesaroff et al (2012) went even further, stating that medicine and science must strongly oppose the intolerance and censorship advocated by FSM and that the group was no friend of science at all.

Flatt (2013) undertook a critical analysis of 13 separate media events that took place in early 2012 and found that FSM tried to represent CM through a strategy of rhetoric and argumentation that contradicts the literature. The discourse used was symbolic and derived from a power-based ideological perspective that formed the basis for promoting exclusion of complementary medicine from university education and primary health care.

Despite the obviously emotive nature of their appeal and lack of research undertaken by FSM to portray complementary medicine accurately, there have been some overt and also less obvious responses by university authorities to either discontinue providing CM education or stop supporting CM research.

While the universities have been the main target of FSM, the Australian public has largely ignored their plea and continued to use CM and consult with practitioners.
WHY IS IT STILL POPULAR?

There appear to be many reasons for the popularity of complementary medicine. Certainly, conventional Western medicine does not have a monopoly on cure and, despite its effectiveness in treating trauma and acute disease, when it comes to chronic illness there are many people in the community who continue to suffer. The public is also demanding greater autonomy and involvement in their own healthcare, and wants to prevent or slow down ageing and achieve higher levels of functioning. Additionally, the exponential increase in scientific studies being published on complementary medicine therapies has no doubt added to the public’s interest and confidence in its use. Finally, in medical practice, what are often called ‘health outcomes’ are actually ‘illness outcomes’. Many medical practitioners are trained to detect and treat episodes of illness and often become interested in people only when they become unwell and then lose interest when they become well again. Some of these ‘well’ people are interested in preventing future disease, or are not feeling quite as well as they would like to. CM practitioners have a focus on health promotion and wellness in addition to providing symptomatic and curative treatment and may also be filling the gap left by medical doctors.

Despite its popularity and general acceptance, in practice it seems that there are two distinct healthcare systems operating in parallel, and collaboration is still in its infancy. It is estimated that of the patients who go to complementary practitioners, more than 57% do not inform their doctor they are doing so (MacLennan et al 2006). This lack of communication is potentially hazardous, as it raises the possibility of treatment interactions; this is even more significant when it is considered that in the USA more than 80% of people seeking complementary treatment for ‘serious medical conditions’ were found to be receiving treatment from a medical doctor for the same condition (Eisenberg et al 1993, 1998).

COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE IN NEW ZEALAND

Complementary medicine has been practised in New Zealand since the 19th century (Duke 2005). In 1908, the Quackery Prevention Act was enacted to prevent the sale of dubious medicines or medical devices and represents an early attempt to regulate the practice of CM. At the time, what is now termed CAM had achieved a level of acceptance among the medical profession; however, a division began to emerge between medical and complementary practices because of the Act.

Over the past decade, studies have indicated that conventional medical practitioners in New Zealand practise some form of complementary therapy or refer their patients to CM practitioners (Duke 2005). One study of 226 GPs in Wellington suggested that they saw their role as ranging from comprehensive provider of both conventional and complementary medicine to selective practitioner of some options (Hadley 1988). Of these GPs, 24% had received CM training, 54% wanted further training in a complementary therapy and 27% currently practised at least one therapy. The study also found that acupuncture, hypnosis and chiropractic were the most popular therapies among this group.

CM received a further boost when in 1992 the Australasian Integrative Medicine Association (AIMA) was set up in Australia by doctors to enable them to work with medical practitioners, medical students and complementary therapists in order to achieve their aims of integrated practice (AIMA 2014). Since AIMA came to New Zealand 10 years ago CM has benefited greatly from doctors affiliated to AIMA with several AIMA doctors forming good links with naturopaths and other CM practitioners.

In June 2001, the Ministerial Advisory Committee on Complementary and Alternative Health (MACCAH) was established in order to advise the New Zealand Minister of Health. Policies regarding regulation, consumer information needs, research evidence and efficacy and integration were investigated, together with a range of strategies to allow CM to contribute to the mainstream objectives of the New Zealand Health Strategy (MACCAH 2004).

Currently, the New Zealand Charter of Health Professionals estimates that there are 10,000 CM practitioners nationally. The 2002–03 New Zealand Health Survey (n = 12,000) indicated that approximately 24% of adults had visited a CM practitioner over the 12-month study period (MACCAH 2004). Massage therapists, chiropractors, osteopaths, homeopaths and naturopaths were the most commonly consulted CM practitioners. The
survey found that 32.5% of people seeing CM practitioners did so for the treatment of a chronic condition, long-term illness or disability, while 33% also saw a GP for the same condition. A belief that CM practitioners can provide help with conditions that other healthcare professionals are unable to treat was the main driving force behind their choice. Most referrals came from friends; however, 12% reported that they had been referred to the service by a medical doctor.

The 2002–03 health survey also revealed interesting data about those who chose to visit a CM practitioner. In a survey-related study (Pledger et al 2010) it was concluded that CAM users are more likely to be middle-aged, rich, well-educated, female and of European descent, with a greater likelihood of having 'hard to treat' conditions. The conclusion goes on to say they will generally be less well, but will actively try to stay healthy. Additionally, they will tend to use more health services, and seek information about their health and medicines.

More recent data derived from the New Zealand census of 2006 (Statistics New Zealand 2006) and 2013 (Statistics New Zealand 2013) indicate a general continued growth in the numbers of CM practitioners. In particular, figures reveal that between 2006 and 2013 the number of acupuncturists rose from 252 to 489, naturopaths from 435 to 492 and complementary health therapists from 654 to 804. The creation of degree courses in acupuncture, massage and naturopathy has signalled a positive trend in CM in the last few years and gives a good reflection of where future progress is likely to be achieved. Contrary to the general progress, homeopath numbers fell from 102 to 78 over the period, possibly reflecting the poor publicity that continues to affect homoeopathy worldwide.

Further evidence of the support for CM among doctors came in March 2011 when the Medical Council of New Zealand (MCNZ) released a statement on CM to advise doctors of their required standards of practice with their patients who use CM (Medical Council of New Zealand 2014). The council stated it did not oppose CM use, provided benefits had been demonstrated to the patients and that they have made an informed choice. The council added that CM therapies can adversely impact on conventional medical care, so practitioners need to be aware and record their patient’s use of CM to allow it to be taken into account when providing conventional care. Further, if a patient is making a choice between conventional medicine or CM, the doctor should present the information in a way that a patient would expect to learn of the options available, including risks, benefits and costs.

The general expansion in the use of CM practitioners in New Zealand is well summarised in a study by Gilbey (2009), who investigated CM use and concluded:

> It is clear from my brief investigation that the CAM industry in New Zealand is thriving and that our love affair with all things alternative is growing stronger over time. What is more, the increasingly high profile of CM may create yet more momentum to the industry and even raise the possibility that CM is viewed more as an alternative to orthodox treatment, than a complement (p. 113).

CM use is likely to continue to grow in New Zealand for the foreseeable future, particularly in the fields of naturopathy, herbalism, acupuncture and massage.

**THE MEDICAL SPECTRUM**

The range of available therapies is vast, but there are common benchmarks for all — reducing human suffering and improving health and quality of life. On this criterion, it is possible to classify all medicine into good and bad, with good medicine defined as safe, first and foremost, effective, practical and, ideally, evidence-based, while bad medicine is defined as harmful and/or ineffective.

Additionally, the different therapies can be seen to exist across a spectrum with multiple dimensions, such as safety, efficacy, practicality, availability, utility and cost-effectiveness. At one end of this spectrum is the science of medicine, which aims to understand and combat the disease process from a pathophysiological perspective. Therapies using this approach are often at the core of mainstream medicine, require practitioner intervention, target a specific organ, system, tissue or biochemical process and are usually subsidised by the public purse. At the opposite end is the art of medicine, which aims to support the body’s homeostatic processes to facilitate healing and
enhance the subjective sensation of wellness. Therapies using this approach often involve philosophical systems with a spiritual dimension, are highly individualised, consider the whole person and may require significant patient involvement and cost. When considering the different dimensions of medical practice, it becomes clear that best practice should incorporate both approaches, combining the art and science of medicine.

Health and disease can also be considered to inhabit opposite ends of an illness–wellness spectrum, with health being classified into three broad areas — ill-health, average health and enhanced health (Figure 1.1) (see also Chapter 12). In the past, Western medicine has traditionally focused on helping people move from ill-health to average health and has viewed the absence of disease as an ideal goal. In relatively recent times, preventive treatment has also been incorporated into medical management, in an attempt to reduce the incidence or exacerbation of disease states. By comparison, CM has always maintained a focus on preventive approaches and moving people from average health to a state of enhanced health. In Eastern medicine there is a concept of a ‘perfect health’ state, in which a person is totally balanced and ‘at one with the universe’, and hence in a state of perpetual bliss or ‘nirvana’.

INTEGRATIVE AND HOLISTIC MEDICINE

When complementary and conventional approaches to medicine are combined, their practice is often called holistic or integrative medicine (see Chapter 6). This combined approach aims to achieve a balance between art and science, theory and practice, mind and body and prevention and cure. The practice of integrative medicine is highly individualised and focuses on how medicine is practised rather than the use of any particular modalities. It embraces a philosophy that adheres to certain principles, such as the BEECH principles:

- **B** Balance between complementary aspects
- **E** Empowerment and self-healing
- **E** Evidence-based care supporting the concept ‘First, do no harm’
- **C** Collaboration between practitioner and patient, and between different practitioners
- **H** Holism and the recognition that health is multidimensional.

Integrative medicine focuses on patient self-healing and empowerment through education and health promotion, and aims for a collaborative approach through a partnership model. Overall, an evidence-based, patient-centred care approach is adopted that includes the fundamental principle of *primum non nocere* or ‘First, do no harm’. This approach considers the best available evidence on safety and efficacy, and recognises that each person is an individual whose health involves physical, psychological, social, spiritual and environmental dimensions. Integrative medicine also recognises that optimal healthcare requires a multidisciplinary approach, with each discipline having its own defined strengths, weaknesses and limitations.
Besides the use of disease-specific treatments, integrative medicine also incorporates general health-enhancing and supportive interventions to improve wellbeing. This may include stress management techniques, such as meditation and relaxation training; exercise programs to improve physical activity; dietary recommendations to improve nutritional status; and education to provide a greater sense of control and understanding of illness and health. These interventions form the pillars of a holistic approach to healthcare and can be summarised by the SENSE approach:

- Stress management
- Exercise
- Nutrition
- Social and spiritual interaction
- Education

HERBAL MEDICINES AND NATURAL SUPPLEMENTS

Since the beginning of time, humans have sought to ease pain, heal sickness and improve energy levels by using various substances as medicines. These attempts began by using things found in the local environment, such as plants, minerals and animal parts, and has now evolved to include many previously unknown chemical entities, such as vitamins, minerals and phytochemicals. Today, an unprecedented range of herbal and natural supplements and functional foods is available.

As with all treatments, the benefits of using a medicine, changing a diet or making lifestyle changes must be weighed against the potential for doing harm: that is, the risk of using/taking/doing something and causing harm, or of not using/taking/doing it and causing harm (Table 1.2). Adverse effects from the use of natural supplements can result from an inherent property of the substance itself, inappropriate use, product adulteration or contamination not related to the substance but found within the preparation and interactions with other substances or preexisting medical conditions.

These issues are discussed in greater depth in the following chapters.

PRODUCT QUALITY AND REGULATION

Risk assessments are a key factor in the decision to use any intervention. Australia has an international best-practice, risk-based, regulatory system for both complementary and prescription medicines. This system is regulated by the Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA), which aims to ensure safety, quality and truth in the labelling of therapeutic goods available to the Australian public. The TGA acts to control the supply of therapeutic goods, including complementary medicines, through three main processes — regulation of manufacturers, and pre- and post-marketing assessment and surveillance. These elements are supported by penalties for breaches of regulations.

The TGA acts to ensure that all therapeutic goods sold in Australia, including herbs and natural supplements as well as prescription medicines, are manufactured according to good manufacturing practice. It licenses manufacturers and conducts regular inspections to audit their compliance. High-risk products, such as prescription medicines, or low-risk products with high-level claims, are individually evaluated for safety, quality and efficacy in the pre-market period and are entered into the Australian Register of Therapeutic Goods (ARTG) as registered goods, thereby carrying an ‘AUST R’ number on their labels. Low-risk products, such as most herbs and natural supplements, are evaluated only for safety and quality in the pre-market period and are listed on the ARTG, carrying an identifying ‘AUST L’ number on their label. Audits of the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 1.2 REASONS FOR USING HERBAL MEDICINES AND NATURAL SUPPLEMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Efficacy</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Safety</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cost</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adjunct</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prevention</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enhance health</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enlists</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
evidence held by sponsoring companies for AUST L products occur in the post-market period.

Listed products are awarded low-risk status based on a number of controls, including assessment of the scientific evidence, the presence of label advisory information, dosage limits, mode of administration, restriction on the use of particular plant parts or other preparation restrictions and container type. These products are able to carry a wide range of low- and medium-level medicinal claims, which must be supported by the appropriate level of evidence (Table 1.3). It should be noted that the levels of evidence designated by the TGA are slightly different from the levels designated by the National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC 1999), because the TGA acknowledges evidence from traditional use, accepting that, if a substance has been used with good effect and apparent safety for three generations, it may be considered safer than a newly created substance that has never existed in nature (TGA 2001).

In addition to regulating manufacturing and the control over label claims, the TGA also conducts post-marketing surveillance such as:
• monitoring of adverse drug reactions
• targeted and random laboratory testing of products and ingredients
• audits of good manufacturing practice
• an effective co-regulatory approach to controlling advertising of therapeutic goods.

The regulation of complementary medicine products specifically is conducted by the Office of Complementary Medicine as part of the Therapeutic Goods Administration.

The Advisory Committee on Complementary Medicine (ACCM) is a ministerially appointed committee that advises the Office of Complementary Medicine within the TGA about matters relating to complementary medicine products.

Although Australia employs the same rigorous system for maintaining the quality of herbs and natural supplements as for prescription pharmaceuticals, this is not the case in many other countries. The problem of poor product quality has become a major concern in some Asian countries, where authorities have undertaken random sampling of suspected herbal products to determine whether adulteration has occurred. Huang et al (1997) report one survey in Taiwan where 2609 herbal samples were collected by eight major general hospitals. Analysis with thin-layer chromatography found an average of 23.7% of samples to be adulterated with chemical substances not stated on the label. Of these, more than half (52.8%) contained two or more adulterants (Awang 1996, Huang et al 1997).

**Government actions: the PAN Pharmaceuticals recall in Australia**

On 28 April 2003 the TGA suspended the licence of Pan Pharmaceuticals, Australia’s largest manufacturer of herbal, mineral and nutritional supplements at the time, and ordered the immediate withdrawal of hundreds of products it had manufactured. The company was accused of substituting ingredients, manipulating test results and having substandard manufacturing processes. The TGA was first alerted to possible manufacturing problems when dozens of adverse reaction reports were lodged relating to a pharmaceutical motion sickness tablet known as Travacalm. After some investigation, it was found that manufacture of this product was substandard and doses of the active ingredient varied enormously from that stated on the label.

Although the original product in question was a pharmaceutical drug, over the next few months media attention remained focused on natural medicine products, with some commentators seizing the opportunity to call into question the value of CAM in general. As a result, the federal government set up an expert committee to examine the role of complementary medicines in the healthcare system, including the supply of safe, high-quality complementary medicines, quality, use of and timely access to these medicines, and the maintenance of a responsible and viable complementary medicines industry. The terms of reference set for this committee were very broad, not unlike those of the White House Commission on Complementary Medicine. The recommendations made by the expert committee, which covered the regulation of complementary medicines and complementary healthcare practitioners, research and the information and education needs of healthcare practitioners and
### TABLE 1.3 LEVELS OF EVIDENCE USED BY THE AUSTRALIAN TGA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LEVEL OF EVIDENCE</th>
<th>TYPE OF EVIDENCE REQUIRED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| High-level scientific evidence  | Evidence obtained from a systematic review of all relevant RCTs, without significant variations in the direction or degree of results.  
OR Evidence obtained from at least one properly designed randomised, controlled (preferably multicentre), double-blind trial. It is preferable to have data from at least two trials independent of each other, but in some cases, one large well-conducted trial may suffice (advice should be sought from the TGA in such cases). |
| Medium-level scientific evidence | Evidence obtained from well-designed controlled trials without randomisation. In the case of a homeopathic preparation, evidence from a well-designed, controlled homeopathic proving.  
OR Evidence obtained from well-designed analytical studies, preferably from more than one centre or research group, including epidemiological cohort and case–control studies.  
OR Evidence obtained from multiple time series with or without intervention, including within-country and between-country population studies.  
Note: In practice, the sources of most medium-level evidence will be peer-reviewed published papers and evidence-based reference texts. However, other evidence that meets the requirements, including independently reviewed unpublished evidence, may also be acceptable. Websites evaluating peer-reviewed published evidence may be a source of suitable evidence. |
| Low-level or general scientific evidence | Descriptive studies, case series or reports of relevant expert committees.  
Texts, such as TGA-approved pharmacopoeias or monographs, or other evidence-based reference texts, may be included in this level.  
Evidence derived from non-human data, such as in vitro studies and animal studies, and non-clinical studies, such as biochemical, nutritional and microbiological studies, does not stand alone and may be used only as supporting evidence. |
| Traditional evidence            | Three or more generations of recorded use of a substance for a specific health-related or medicinal purpose that are documented by at least one of the following:  
TGA-approved pharmacopoeia  
TGA-approved monograph  
three independent written histories of use in the classical or traditional medical literature  
availability through any country’s government public dispensaries  
authenticated evidence of use from an oral tradition; modern texts that accurately report the classical or traditional literature may be used to support claims. |

Source: TGA 2001

consumers to improve community confidence in, and the viability of, the complementary medicines industry, can be viewed online (TGA 2013), along with the government’s response to these recommendations.

**National Institute of Complementary Medicine**

Following recommendations from this committee, and in recognition of the growing importance of complementary medicine in the Australian health system, the Federal Government and NSW state government established the National Institute for Complementary Medicine (NICM) in 2007, based at the University of Western Sydney. Its role is to provide leadership and support for complementary medicine research and the translation of evidence into clinical practice and policy, as well as to build research capacity and foster collaborations among researchers from different disciplines (see NICM 2014). NICM was provided with A$4.8 million for 2 years to achieve these goals. As part of its role in developing Australia’s complementary medicine research capacity, NICM established three NICM collaborative research centres after a competitive submission process. Despite significant government support during the first few years of its existence, NICM now has to rely largely on philanthropic and industry
support to meet its goals. Under the directorship of Professor Alan Benoussan, NICM now has the largest concentration of complementary medicine research academics in Australia and in 2013 was the only complementary medicine research department to be ranked as ‘better than international best practice’ by national university criteria (NICM 2014).

The establishment of NICM coincided with the National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) making complementary medicine a priority area for research in 2008 with over A$5 million of funding being allocated to CM research. This encouraged interdisciplinary collaboration, as many established researchers from other disciplines have become involved in funded projects in different areas of CM. Since then, NHMRC funding for complementary medicine research has declined considerably, with many in the complementary medicine research sector frustrated by the relative lack of funding opportunities provided by the government. This is particularly disappointing as complementary medicine continues to enjoy great popularity by the Australian public and both complementary medicine and general practitioners want to use scientific evidence to guide their practice.

The US government has probably made the greatest impact in regards to providing opportunities for complementary medicine research largely due to the establishment of the National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) as part of the National Institute of Health, with US$121 million in funding allocated in 2008 (NCCAM 2014). Complementary medicine also seems to be on the US policy agenda: the recent Senate Committee on Integrative Care: A Pathway to a Healthier Nation received testimony from leaders of integrative medicine (US Senate Committee 2014).

EVIDENCE-BASED COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE — THE BURGEONING SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE BASE

In complementary medicine, as with all medicine, knowledge was originally held by practitioners and based on careful observations collected over time in what we could call today longitudinal case series. Eventually, practitioners wrote down their findings and some produced textbooks, such as the famous Persian academic and physician Avicenna, who listed the traditional uses and actions of many herbs and natural ingredients in the Canon of Medicine (al-Qanun fi al-tib) (Hosseinazedeh & Nassiri-Asl 2013). Education and practice was based on apprenticeships, peer-group discussions and meetings. Now, with the advent of scientific research methodologies, electronic databases and other repositories of information, the amount of available information has exploded. These traditional sources of information guided the practice of medicine for centuries, in the absence of better quality information. Over the last century, scientific evidence and research methodologies in pharmaceutical science have changed dramatically, with much scientific investigation becoming laboratory-based in an effort to identify or create pharmacologically active molecules that may prevent or treat disease. Additionally, large-scale randomised studies have been performed, using larger patient numbers than ever seen before in history. Governments and industry have spent untold billions of dollars in this endeavour, which has helped to uncover many important insights about disease, novel treatments and safety issues.

In comparison to conventional medicine, CM continues to draw on traditional evidence, whereas scientific investigation is still an emerging field. This is largely due to extremely poor government funding or attention and the lack of incentives to attract millions of industry dollars into research. There is also a lack of opportunities for CM practitioners to pursue higher degree education and research, thereby under-utilising a workforce with a genuine interest in this field.

As a result, there are far fewer large-scale multicentre studies investigating complementary medicines and it is simply not possible to expect that many unpatentable CM treatments will have achieved the same level of investigation as pharmaceutical drug therapies. A more realistic expectation is that many treatments remain under-investigated and rely on a series of smaller studies backed up by preclinical tests or traditional evidence to provide a rationale for their use in practice. Importantly, lack of scientific evidence does not indicate
negative evidence but may indicate that further research is required. This is particularly imperative when preclinical research and traditional evidence align.

Regardless of these significant hurdles, numerous CM-specific databases have been established in the last decade to capture research findings and disseminate information. There has also been an exponential growth in the number of Medline-indexed articles being published which relate to treatments and recommendations used by CM practitioners. Scientific research conferences, such as those convened by the International Society for Complementary Medicine Research (ISCMR) and the Consortium of Academic Integrative Medicine Centres in North America, stimulate the conduct of research and scientific enquiry, provide opportunities for international collaborations and dissemination of findings to a broader academic audience (ISCMR 2014, Consortium of Academic Integrative Medicine Centers in North America 2014).

Forty-five databases for CM information were identified in a 2010 review published in Health Information and Libraries Journal (Boehm et al 2010). Of these, eleven databases focused on herbal therapies (206,456 entries), nine on Chinese medicine (606,664 entries) and eight contained information about a vast number of CM modalities (780,270 entries). Furthermore, three acupuncture databases were identified (48,000 entries) and two dietary supplement databases (764,894 entries). Fourteen databases originated in the USA, seven from the UK, six from Germany, four from China, three each from Australia and India. The amount of time the databases had been in existence ranged from four to 53 years and English was the main language in 42 of 45 databases, while two were available in German.

WHERE IS THE SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE CREATED?

IN VITRO STUDIES
In vitro testing generally looks at fundamental biological and biochemical processes and can provide important information about biochemical pathways, as well as pharmacokinetic data. Although in vitro tests are helpful, caution should be taken when extrapolating results from them, as these may not accurately reflect the biological effects seen in the human body.

An example of this is St John’s wort. In vitro tests have found that St John’s wort inhibits several cytochrome P450 isoenzymes (Budzinski et al 2000, Obach 2000). Clinical tests, however, show that the herb actually has enzyme inducer activity, which is the opposite finding to that of the in vitro tests (Durr et al 2000, Roby et al 2000, Ruschitzka et al 2000).

Anomalies such as this are not restricted to herbal preparations, but have been observed in regular drug-testing. Thus, while in vitro evidence may be useful, the most accurate method for determining biological activity of a substance is to test it directly on humans (Wienkers 2002).

IN VIVO STUDIES
Studies conducted in animals are able to examine dietary manipulations or administration of experimental agents in specific diseases and deficiency states, and to determine the effects on organ systems and physiological functions. These studies allow for a more rigorous investigation of pharmacological activity than in vitro testing. However, in vivo studies can never be more than suggestive when attempting to assess clinical significance because of interspecies differences. Additionally, the relevance of the dose used must be considered, and extrapolation to clinical relevance in humans is not always accurate.

HUMAN STUDIES
Studies conducted in humans range from anecdotal reports or individual case series, to case–control and cohort studies, and randomised placebo–controlled trials of specific interventions for particular diseases, as well as meta-analyses and systematic reviews of RCTs.

Case reports
Case reports supply informative and realistic information within a clinical setting involving the relevant patient population. Rather than providing definitive information, case reports are merely an investigative starting point for determining clinical relevance.

Extrapolating information from case reports presents some unique challenges and may lead to an overestimation of significance when confounders are not identified and considered carefully. Some of the confounding influences
that need to be considered include patient factors such as the placebo effect and concomitant illness and/or the administration or interactions of other agents, as well as factors concerning the substance itself, including errors in labelling, herbal substitution, product adulteration and contamination. It is therefore of prime importance that the product be chemically analysed to confirm its contents, especially when an adverse reaction or interaction is reported in this way.

Randomised controlled trials

Randomised controlled trials (RCTs) provide the most solid foundation for clinical decision making. Those trials performed on the population of patients likely to use the therapeutic agent being tested have the highest validity.

The conduct of an RCT is specifically designed to remove possible sources of bias so that the results are as impartial as they can be. The specific nature of RCTs means they cannot answer the general (and non-specific) question as to whether a certain intervention works. An RCT is a specific research tool designed to show whether a specific (active) intervention improves clearly defined outcomes for a specific group of patients suffering from a particular medical condition better than a comparative intervention. These trials are generally defined by four parameters designated by the mnemonic PICO:

- **P** a specifically-defined patient Population
- **I** a well-defined Intervention
- **C** a suitable Comparative intervention (often a placebo)
- **O** specific Outcome measures.

Although RCTs provide solid evidence, it must be realised that these trials do not always accurately reflect real life, because they are set in a controlled, experimental context with strict inclusion and exclusion criteria and standardised interventions and outcomes. Furthermore, individual variation still occurs, and it is imperative that a study has sufficient statistical power (largely determined by sample size) to be able to detect a clinically relevant result.

Systematic reviews and meta-analyses

When more than one randomised trial has been conducted to answer a particular question, it is possible to statistically combine their results and perform an analysis using the summary statistics from each study as data points. Such a meta-analysis requires that studies use similar measures. By accumulating the results of multiple studies a meta-analysis can provide greater statistical power and therefore a more accurate representation of the relationship under investigation than the individual studies.

Systematic reviews also provide a way of reviewing and summarising the result of multiple RCTs. These reviews attempt to identify all the individual RCTs conducted for an intervention. After systematically examining the methodology and results of each study, they provide a summary of the results and then reach an overall conclusion. Because systematic reviews rely on the results of RCTs, they must be updated regularly as new RCTs are constantly being published.

---

**THE COCHRANE COLLABORATION**

The Cochrane Collaboration is an international, not-for-profit collaborative effort that aims to produce up-to-date systematic reviews of all RCTs for both conventional and complementary therapies. The Cochrane Collaboration takes its name from doctor and humanitarian Archie Cochrane (1906–1988), who strongly advocated the production of critical summaries of research evidence as a way of creating ‘evidence-based medicine’.

A systematic review assembles all the RCTs on a given health topic and uses explicit methods to minimise bias (systematic errors) and random error (simple mistakes). It then critically reviews the evidence and summarises the results to determine the safety and effectiveness of an intervention. The Collaboration publishes its systematic reviews quarterly in the Cochrane Library, which are freely available through the National Institute of Clinical Studies.

The Cochrane Consumer Network aims to help healthcare consumers make sense of medical research. Its website provides useful information about research jargon and styles, explains how to tell a good study from a bad one and provides help in finding and understanding health and medical research results.
WHOLE SYSTEM PRACTICE RESEARCH
While it is tantalising to undertake scientific research with one clearly defined treatment, this does not reflect real-world practice. CM practice in particular consists of whole systems or disciplines of health care (such as naturopathy, Western herbal medicine, Ayurvedic medicine and Chinese medicine) which utilise a range of modalities (interventions), including diet and lifestyle recommendations, nutritional supplements, herbal medicines, massage and relaxation techniques. These different interventions are used together after individualised assessment and not usually in singular form.

Clinical research with single entity treatments is very useful, but is also limited because all the key components of the practitioner’s management plan working together to create an outcome have not been explored. This is easily understood when considering an obesity case whereby a multi-faceted management plan is required to promote weight-loss and the testing of one component does not demonstrate the full effects of a combined approach.

Assessing the efficacy of whole systems is more complex than assessing the efficacy of single modalities or treatments with RCTs. Realistically, RCTs may have powerful internal validity but poor external validity, meaning they don’t necessarily have relevance in real-life practice. Pragmatic trials and observational studies can have good external validity, as individualised treatments can be applied in real life settings to reflect everyday practice. Qualitative research methods, which employ patient interviews and focus groups among other methodologies, provide the opportunity to explore the meaning that patients ascribe to an intervention or system and allow better understanding about whether it is clinically effective for them (Verhoef et al 2005).

ASSESSING EVIDENCE
There are many dimensions to consider when assessing evidence from clinical studies. Thus, it is important not only to consider the level of evidence, but to determine the quality of the study (how well the investigators carried out the particular study design), as well as the certainty (statistical precision) of the results. Furthermore, it is important to assess whether the outcome measures and the size of the observed effect are clinically relevant. More specifically, in regards to herbal medicines, it is important to be certain that the test substance contained the suspected/known active constituents, and with all studies, that inert substances are used as placebos. In regards to nutritional studies, it would be helpful to understand volunteers’ baseline status, conduct diet intake surveys alongside the study to help determine the most likely responders and whether dietary intake is a potential confounder and ensure adequate bioavailability of supplements before testing. These dimensions are considered by the NHMRC (2000) and are summarised in Table 1.4.

LIMITATIONS OF EVIDENCE
The rational use of medicines has recently moved towards ‘evidence-based care’ and recognises that this relies on the conscientious,
Explicit and judicious use of the best available evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients (Sackett et al 1996). An evidence-based approach recognises different levels of evidence and that the most rigorous types are not always available. In the light of this, many clinical questions cannot be answered by reference to well-conducted trials and require additional information, such as that obtained from experience and historical use.

RCTs have been commonly performed only since the 1950s and are complex and costly processes that require large investments of time and money, as well as access to specialised infrastructure and technical and clinical skills. These hurdles are often even higher for herbs and natural supplements than for pharmaceutical medicines, because the lack of patent protection for these products means there is little incentive for companies to invest millions of dollars in research when they cannot obtain a commercial advantage from the results. The relative lack of funding also means that very few research centres are dedicated to exploring this field and few dedicated researchers with the necessary skills are available. Inevitably, there is a smaller scientific evidence base for herbal and natural substances than for synthetic pharmaceuticals.

There are several other serious limitations to the sole use of existing scientific evidence, as most are based on statistics that aim to produce results that can be applied to populations of people rather than individuals. Additionally, they are based on averages and probabilities, which also fail to account for individual factors. Thus, despite some recent studies that have attempted to address these issues through novel methodological approaches, the application of scientific evidence is often extremely limited when assessing the effectiveness of individualised therapy.

A further problem arises when trying to make decisions about health rather than disease. Most clinical trials are interested in studying movement across the line that separates ‘defined disease’ from ‘average health’ (see Fig 1.1; p. 7). While it is possible to define the particular disease in question through reference to objective parameters, such as biochemical and/or physiological variables, as well as to specific patterns of symptoms, defining optimal health and wellbeing is not as easy. Optimal or enhanced health is a subjective and highly individual state that does not lend itself easily to scientific scrutiny. It is therefore difficult to provide scientific evidence for measures designed to move people from ‘average health’ towards ‘enhanced health’ or ‘optimal health’.

**APPLYING EVIDENCE**

Despite the publication of the NHMRC and TGA guidelines for assessing scientific evidence, applying evidence in clinical practice can be extremely complex. Not only does evidence take many different forms, it can also be applied to answer many different types of questions, such as whether a particular therapy works in theory (a question of efficacy) or in clinical practice (a question of effectiveness), as well as whether the use of a therapy is safe and/or cost-effective. Furthermore, there is the question of how a therapy actually works: it is common for evidence to suggest that a therapy is beneficial, even though the mechanism of action remains unknown or, if it is known, for questions about whether the therapy provides clinical benefit to remain unanswered.

The complexity of applying evidence to clinical decision making is compounded by the tens of thousands of studies published every year, with varying degrees of clinical relevance and methodological rigour. Evaluating this evidence can be very confusing, as the results of studies are not always obvious, and their relevance to a particular clinical situation is not always clear. There may also be conflicting results and ongoing controversies in which even the experts disagree. Furthermore, it can be difficult to determine the independence of the information provided, as many influences may be involved: for example, governments, regulatory authorities, commercial interests, such as the pharmaceutical, natural medicine and food industries, disease advocacy and consumer groups, the personal interests of the individual researchers and the editorial board and publication bias.

**FINDING EVIDENCE**

Obtaining and assessing the available evidence can be both difficult and time-consuming for the busy clinician. Although general medical information is freely available on the internet and via electronic bibliographical databases, fees may need to be paid to access specialised resources for CAM. Additionally, the information available varies considerably in its scope, quality and practicality.
Collections of original research with bibliographical data and abstracts include services such as Medline, Embase, Science Direct and ProQuest. Other databases, such as Herbmed, MicroMedex and the Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database, provide summaries of current research for numerous herbal and natural medicines. Other collections, such as the Cochrane Collaboration Library, attempt to produce the most authoritative guide to medical research by providing only systematic reviews of RCTs.

Although databases that provide references to original research are extremely useful, there is a definite need for more summarised and critically reviewed material. This need is met to a certain extent by the publication of review articles in textbooks such as the German Commission E Monographs, or by commercially available databases, such as Integrative Medicine Gateway, Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database and the Natural Standard Database.

**MISLEADING HEADLINES**

Unfortunately, many health professionals do not have ready access to research papers or are too busy to be able to read through full reports and therefore rely on short summaries to provide information. As in the popular press, the medical press is prone to creating sensational headlines to attract interest, but this can lead to inaccurate assumptions. A good example is the case of an apparent coma state brought on by the combination of the herbal medicine kava kava and the benzodiazepine alprazolam. The case was reported with the headline ‘Coma from the health food store: interaction between kava and alprazolam’ (Almeida & Grimsley 1996). A closer look at the report reveals that the patient described was lethargic and disoriented, but at no time comatose. Additionally, he was also taking cimetidine, a CYP450 inhibitor that can affect alprazolam metabolism, resulting in raised serum levels and symptoms of lethargy. An interaction with kava kava is unlikely.

**FACTORS TO CONSIDER IN DECISION MAKING**

As previously discussed, scientific evidence provides useful and important information; however, it must be combined with several other important factors in clinical practice to be truly effective for the individual patient. An expanded approach, often discussed as ‘evidence-based patient-centred care’, is becoming more widely adopted, the chief principles of which are in unison with the integrative medicine approach to incorporating evidence into clinical practice. The key principles may be summarised by the PEACE mnemonic:

- **P** acknowledgment and respect for the **P**ersonal preferences of both the practitioner and the patient
- **E** the strength of the available scientific **E**vidence
- **A** the range of possible **A**lternatives
- **C** the associated **C**osts and risks versus the potential benefits of a proposed treatment
- **E** aspects of **E**xpedience, such as availability, accessibility and immediacy of treatment.

It is easy to become overwhelmed when reviewing the vast range of therapeutic options available, the complexities of accessing and appraising the different types of scientific evidence and the other factors that must be considered when making choices about treatment options. This evidence-based book is an attempt to provide some guidance through the current maze of information and evidence. Certainly, more...
information is needed: in an ideal world every therapy would have clear evidence to support or refute its use in different conditions, and this information would be freely available and without inherent bias. However, that time is still far away, and clinical decision making remains both a subtle art and an inexact science, where there is always room for more information, research and debate.

REFERENCES


Myers S P, Xue CC, Cohen MM, et al. The legitimacy of academic integrative therapy would have clear evidence to support or refute its use in different conditions, and this information would be freely available and without inherent bias. However, that time is still far away, and clinical decision making remains both a subtle art and an inexact science, where there is always room for more information, research and debate.


Herbal medicine, also known as phytomedicine, can be broadly defined as both the science and the art of using botanical medicines to prevent and treat illness, and the study and investigation of these medicines. The term ‘phytotherapy’ is used to describe the therapeutic application of herbal medicines and was first coined by the French physician Henri Leclerc (1870–1955), who published numerous essays on the use of medicinal plants (Weiss 1988).

Phytotherapy can be considered one of the oldest forms of medicine. Since the dawn of time, plants have been used by people of all races, religions and cultures to sustain life and alter the course of disease. Over this time, the medicinal use of plants has evolved along two parallel paths, with the comparatively recent evolution of modern medicine. One path involves the accumulation of empirical knowledge over centuries. Gathered through careful observation of nature and disease, and from cumulative experiences of informed trial and error, the empirical knowledge base for herbal medicines is large and diverse. For example, the Rig veda, a text from India, and the Egyptian papyri Antiquarium both date from 3000 BC and contain extensive lists of medicinal plants used to treat illness (Berman et al 1999). In South America, the use of herbal medicine has also been documented, such as in the Badianus manuscript, a text written by the Aztecs (Walcott 1940). Their use of herbs, such as datura and passionflower, has been adopted in modern European and American pharmacopoeias. Native Americans were particularly knowledgeable about the botanical medicines in their environment. It has been estimated that more than 200 medicines used by one or more Indian nations have been incorporated into the US Pharmacopoeia or National Formulary (Vogel 1970).

Two of the most prominent historical figures in European herbal medicine were Dioscorides and Galen, who were physicians in ancient Greece. Dioscorides was a Greek army surgeon in the service of the Roman emperor Nero (54–68 AD). He is best known for his De materia medica, which describes more than 600 herbs and their uses. Today this work is considered to be the first book ever written about medical botany as an applied science. Galen (131–201 AD) not only wrote several dozen books on pharmacy, but also developed an elaborate system of herbal polypharmacy in which herbal combinations were devised to produce more specific results. The modern term ‘galenicals’ is still used to describe herbal simples.

Alongside the ‘empirical knowledge’ approach a second path developed, which involved a more theoretical and formalised method of diagnosis and treatment. The resulting ‘healthcare’ systems were complex and often used herbal medicines as an important part of a more comprehensive approach to treatment that also included dietary control, lifestyle changes and spiritual practice. This approach reached its peak in the East with
traditional Chinese medicine and Ayurvedic medicine in India.

Although contemporary clinical practice of herbal medicine still relies heavily on traditional wisdom, this knowledge is now being re-examined with the aid of modern analytical methods and scientific methodology. The use of science to establish an evidence base in modern healthcare is changing the way herbalism is being practised and who is using herbs. An emphasis on phytochemistry and an assessment of risk are inherent features of contemporary research into herbs. While these are important gains in knowledge about the actions and uses of herbs, there is an accompanying shift in the practice of herbal medicine, with less emphasis on the importance of traditional and empirical knowledge, which in time may lead to a loss of the paradigm of holistic and individualised care (Evans 2008). Whether this improves patient outcomes remains to be seen.

**HERBS, DRUGS AND PHYTOCHEMICALS**

Most pharmaceutical medicines contain a single, highly purified, often artificially produced substance that has a well-known (and occasionally specifically designed) chemical structure that can be patented and owned by the company that developed it. The dosage of these chemicals can also be precisely calculated down to the microgram and can usually be characterised by a very clear pharmacokinetic profile. Additionally, pharmaceutical drugs tend to have a generally agreed upon mechanism of action and series of indications that guide their use within the Western medical model.

As most of these drugs do not exist in nature, they must go through extensive testing to ensure efficacy and safety. New drugs are assessed in test-tube and animal studies for their potential to cause cancer, fetal malformations and other toxic effects, and are ultimately tested on humans to further define the safety profile, pharmacokinetics and drug effectiveness in a targeted disease (Wierenga & Eaton 2003). This process is very costly and requires the application of highly specialised knowledge and infrastructure, as well as many years of concentrated effort. It is estimated that the development of a new drug requires the investment of approximately US$800 million, but it is also extremely lucrative (Di Masi & Grabowski 2003).

**PHARMACOGNOSY**

In 2001 and 2002, approximately one-quarter of the best-selling drugs worldwide were natural products or derived from natural products. Research on natural products further accounted for approximately 48% of the new chemical entities reported from 1981 to 2002.

Modern drug discovery from medicinal plants has evolved to become a sophisticated process that includes numerous fields of enquiry and various methods of analysis. Typically, the process begins with a botanist, ethnobotanist, ethnopharmacologist or plant ecologist collecting and identifying plants based on the biological activity suggested by their traditional use. Additionally, plants are randomly selected for inclusion in screening programs based on molecular targets identified through the human genome project (Balunas & Kinghorn 2005).

Pharmacognosy is the term used to refer to the study of botanical supplements and herbal remedies, as well as to the search for single-compound drugs from plants. Increasingly, pharmaceutical medicines and preclinical research into herbal medicines are focused on identifying suitable chemical entities that may form the basis for novel treatments (Balunas & Kinghorn 2005).

**CHEMICAL COMPLEXITY**

In contrast to pharmaceutical drugs, which are based on single molecules that may or may not be derived from natural substances, herbal medicines are chemically complex and may contain many hundreds or even thousands of different ‘phytochemicals’, including various macro- and micro-nutrients such as fats, carbohydrates and proteins, enzymes, vitamins and minerals. A group of important secondary metabolites are also present, which are generally chemicals used to defend against herbivores, pathogens, insect attack and microbial decomposition, or which are produced in response to injury or infection, or used for signalling and growth regulation. It is these compounds, such as tannins, isoflavones, saponins, flavonoids, glycosides, coumarins, bitters,
phyto-oestrogens etc, that are often responsible for the therapeutic properties of herbal medicines (Mills & Bone 2001).

As the secondary metabolites largely dictate a herb’s pharmacological nature, a knowledge of herbal chemistry is essential to understand a herb’s use and provide valuable insight into its clinical effects. It is sometimes tempting to take the modern reductionist approach and predict the pharmacological activity of a herbal medicine from an understanding of the effects of one key constituent or chemical group; however, this is unlikely to be entirely accurate. In practice, the overall pharmacological activity and safety of each herb is the result of the interaction of numerous constituents, some of which have demonstrated pharmacological effects, rather than the effect of a single active ingredient.

An example of this is the herb *Paullinia cupana*, commonly known as guarana. As there are limited clinical studies on guarana, it is often reported that the herb owes its pharmacological activity to one key constituent, caffeine, which may be present in concentrations as high as 10%. Studies referring to the isolate caffeine provide some clues about the effects of guarana, but are not entirely accurate, as other important constituents are also present in the remaining 90%. This has been borne out recently in clinical studies of low-caffeine-containing guarana preparations, which still demonstrated significant effects on cognitive function.

Because of the range of phytochemicals present in plants, herbal medicines often include many different active substances with different pharmacokinetics that work at different sites with different mechanisms of action. Herbal medicines therefore potentially have multiple pharmacological actions and many different clinical indications. Furthermore, in addition to the active ingredients, herbs may also contain substances that act to inhibit or promote the active properties, and/or potential unwanted side effects of the active agents. Thus, although specific components may not be active themselves, they may influence the activity of other components by altering their solubility, absorption, distribution or half-life.

For instance, berberine is a constituent of herbs such as goldenseal and barberry and exhibits numerous activities in vitro; however, in vivo, it has poor bioavailability (Pan et al 2002). Berberine has been shown to upregulate the expression and function of the drug transporter P-glycoprotein (P-gp) (Lin et al 1999), thereby reducing the absorption of P-gp substrates. Studies with the P-gp inhibitor cyclosporin have shown that it increases berberine absorption six-fold, as it counteracts the inducing effect of berberine (Pan et al 2002). P-gp inhibitors are also found in nature, such as the virtually ubiquitous quercetin, and when they are present in the same herb competing effects on P-gp expression and function will occur.

The herb St John’s wort provides yet another example. The extraction method used in Germany in the product’s commercial manufacture was modified in the late 1990s, resulting in higher concentrations of hyperforin than previously obtained (Madabushi et al 2006). Since then, numerous reports and studies have identified pharmacokinetic drug interactions with St John’s wort, based on its ability to induce cytochromes and P-gp. It is now well established that hyperforin is the key constituent responsible for these unwanted effects, and St John’s wort preparations manufactured with this newer extraction method, such as LI 160, can put people at risk of interactions. Meanwhile, studies with low-hyperforin preparations, such as Ze117, have found that it fails to induce the same interactions (Madabushi et al 2006). Unfortunately, this distinction between St John’s wort preparations is not well known, and many references and texts fail to mention this important point.

As these examples and many others in this book demonstrate, each herb is chemically complex and produces a pharmacological effect based on the total sum of actions produced by a myriad of constituents that may be acting in synergy. This complexity complicates the ability to test herbal medicines as they are most commonly used (that is, in their more natural states) and in combination with other herbal medicines.

**SYNERGISTIC INTERACTIONS**

The concept of synergistic interactions is another fundamental difference between herbs and drugs and explains how a single herb may have a number of seemingly unrelated mechanisms of actions and be indicated for a variety
of conditions. Intra-herbal interactions between active and apparently non-active constituents also mean that tests performed with single, isolated constituents will not accurately represent the actions and safety of the entire herbal medicine. As such, these tests provide limited information. By and large, it is suspected that it is the intra-herbal interactions that give herbs a broad therapeutic range and very good tolerability.

St John’s wort, popularised as a useful treatment for depression, is also an excellent example of intra-herbal interaction. It contains many different constituents, such as hypericin and pseudohypericin, flavonoids such as quercetin and rutin, vitamins C and A, phenolics such as hyperforin, sterols and an essential oil. Although many of the herb’s pharmacological activities appear to be attributable to hypericin and hyperforin, it is now known that the flavonoid content also contributes to its antidepressant activity. In other words, the antidepressant effects identified for isolated hypericin or hyperforin are greater when the whole herb is used.

In practice, synergistic interactions are used in another important way — herbal polypharmacy. This is the combining of different herbal medicines within the same treatment for a more specific outcome, and is similar to the method Galen described centuries ago. In Chinese medicine the concept of synergistic interactions has reached a great level of sophistication, with Chinese formulas containing as many as 20 different herbs. In that system, the herb possessing the primary action of the formula is considered the ‘emperor herb’, while ‘minister herbs’ support the primary action and ‘assistant herbs’ modify the formula according to the needs of the individual. Finally ‘messenger herbs’ are used to aid absorption or reduce side effects of the formula. The practice is also common in Ayurvedic medicine and, in fact, in all traditional systems of herbal practice. Although it may be common in conventional medicine to give certain drugs specifically to reduce the side effects of other drugs, such as the administration of antiemetics and laxatives together with opiates, generally the giving of multiple drugs in combination is discouraged. In contrast, in herbal medicine this practice is often considered essential to provide both safety and the best effects.

**KEY CONSTITUENT GROUPS**

To better understand a herb’s mechanisms of action, pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, interactions and side effects, a basic knowledge of the key constituent groups is helpful. Here is a brief outline of the main constituent groups found in popular herbal medicines.

**FLAVONOIDS**

Flavonoids are plant pigments that are largely responsible for the colour of flowers, fruits and berries. There are many different types of flavonoids, including flavones, flavonols, isoflavones and flavins. They are generally anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and anti-allergic, and may decrease capillary fragility. Herbs that are well known for their flavonoid content are ginkgo (*Ginkgo biloba*), St Mary’s thistle (*Silybum marianum*) and calendula (*Calendula officinalis*).

Flavanols may be further oxidised to yield anthrocyanins. These bluish/purplish compounds contribute to the colour of blueberries and red grapes. They are greatly revered for their antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties.

**TANNINS**

Tannins are astringent and often taste bitter. They can be divided into two groups, hydrolysable tannins and non-hydrolysable tannins (sometimes called condensed tannins or proanthocyanidins). Tannins have the ability to stabilise proteins and were used historically to tan or preserve animal hides. In herbal medicine, tannins are valued for their ability to dry and tone tissue. Some plants with appreciable levels of tannins include witch hazel (*Hamamelis virginiana*), oak bark (*Quercus robur*) and lady’s mantle (*Alchemilla vulgaris*).

**COUMARINS**

Coumarins have a limited distribution in plants and may be either naturally present or synthesised by the plant in response to a bacteria or fungus (Heinrich et al 2004). They are a heterogeneous group, and thus different compounds have various effects on the body. For example, some coumarins demonstrate anti-spasmodic activity (for example, scopeletin from *Viburnum* spp), others anticoagulant activity (for example dicoumarol from sweet clover), and others anti-oedema effects (for example, coumarins from clivers and red clover).
ALKALOIDS
Alkaloids are so named for their alkaline properties. This group of phytochemicals has contributed much to modern medicine, and more than 10,000 have been isolated (Evans 2002). Consequently, they are perhaps the best-known constituent group. There are many different types of alkaloids with many different therapeutic properties; however, they commonly contain nitrogen, usually in a heterocyclic ring. Below is a brief outline of the main subgroups:

- **Pyridine, piperidine & pyrrolizidine alkaloids.** Nicotine (Nicotiana tabacum) is perhaps the best-known example of the pyridine class. The very poisonous piperidine alkaloid coniine is isolated from hemlock (Conium maculatum) and the pyrrolizidine alkaloid senecionine is the reason comfrey (Symphytum officinale) was withdrawn from sale in Australia due to concerns over hepatotoxicity.

- **Phenylalkylamine alkaloids.** This group of alkaloids differ in that nitrogen is not part of the heterocyclic ring. The most commonly known example is ephedrine, a central nervous system stimulant, bronchodilator and vasoconstrictive agent from Ephedra sinica.

- **Quinoline alkaloids.** The antimalarial quinine from Cinchona spp belongs in this category. Quinine was used in the synthetic production of many antimalarial drugs against Plasmodium falciparum. Interestingly, Plasmodium has become resistant to the synthesised medications such as chloroquine, but not to naturally occurring quinine (Heinrich et al 2004).

- **Isoquinoline alkaloids.** Opium, from Papaver somniferum, contains over 30 alkaloids, including morphine, codeine, theba-ine, papaverine and noscapine. Morphine is well known for its pain-relieving effects. Other examples are the protoberberines, consisting of berberine, berbamime and hydrastine. Golden seal (Hydrastis canadensis) contains berberine and hydrastine; barberry (Berberis vulgaris) contains berberine and berbamime; and Oregon mountain grape (Mahonia aquifolium) contains all three. They are strongly antibacterial.

- **Indole alkaloids.** Examples include reserpine from Rauwolfia serpentina, which in the past has been used for hypertension; however, its use has largely been discontinued due to toxic side effects. The anticancer agents vincristine and vinblastine, from Cantharanthus roseus, are other notable examples.

- **Tropane alkaloids.** Hyoscyamine, from Atropa belladonna, is an anticholinergic agent. It has also been used to dilate the pupil of the eye for optical examinations.

- **Xanthine alkaloids.** These are the most widely known and used alkaloids, and include caffeine from tea (Camellia sinensis), coffee (Coffea arabica) and chocolate (Theobroma cacao), which is known to be beneficial to health in small amounts and detrimental in large amounts. Cocoa also contains theobromine and tea contains theophylline and theobromine, both of which are purine alkaloids.

TERPENES
Terpenes are widespread in the plant kingdom. There are many different types:

- **Monoterpene hydrocarbons.** Monoterpenes have a 10-carbon structure. They are major constituents of volatile oils and often have antimicrobial properties. Examples include limonene (lemon, caraway, peppermint and thyme) and alpha-pinene (rosemary, lemon, fennel and eucalyptus).

- **Sesquiterpene hydrocarbons.** Sesquiterpenes have a 15-carbon structure. They are also major constituents of volatile oils and are broadly antimicrobial and insecticidal. Subclasses include alcohols (linalool from lavender, menthol from peppermint), phenols (linalool from lavender), phenols (thymol from thyme, carvacrol from oregano), aldehydes (citronella from citronella), ketones (menthone from peppermint, thujone from wormwood), ethers (anethole from fennel) and esters (methyl salicylate from wintergreen).

- **Diterpene hydrocarbons.** Diterpenes have on average a 20-carbon structure and so are much denser molecules, with higher boiling points, than other hydrocarbons. They are often associated with volatile oils (oleoresins), gums (gum-resins) or with both (oleo-gum-resins) (Evans 2002). Examples include guaiacum resin obtained from Guaiacum officinale and gum-resins from frankincense (Boswellia serrata).
GLYCOSIDES

Glycosides are composed of two parts: the glycone (sugar molecule) and the aglycone (non-sugar molecule). The aglycone may be a terpene, a flavonoid or potentially any other natural compound (Heinrich et al 2004). Below are the most common classes:

- **Triterpene glycosides.** These may also be called saponins. They are a diverse group and exert many different effects on the human body. Depending on their structure, they may be anti-inflammatory (aescin from horse chestnut) or expectorant (senegen from snakeroot), or may demonstrate steroidal effects (glycyrrhetic acid from licorice, diosgenin from wild yam).

- **Glucosinolates.** Also called mustard oil glycosides, these important compounds are found in the Brassicaceae family of vegetables, such as broccoli, mustard and horseradish. They are topically mildly irritant and have digestive, circulatory and anticancer properties when ingested.

- **Cardiac glycosides.** These glycosides have a specific action on heart muscle. They are steroidal in structure and are related to steroidal saponins and phytosterols. A number of herbs contain cardioactive glycosides, including lily of the valley (Convallaria majus) and foxglove (Digitalis spp). Digoxin and digitoxin are naturally occurring compounds in digitalis, and digoxin is commonly used in drug form for heart failure.

- **Anthraquinone glycosides.** These compounds have osmotic and stimulant effects in the lower bowel and therefore have laxative properties. Examples of herbs that contain these compounds include cascara (Rhamnus purshiana), senna (Cassia senna), aloe (Aloe vera) and rhubarb root (Rheum palmatum).

CHEMOTHERAPEUTICS VERSUS HERBALISM

In practice, drugs and herbs are prescribed quite differently. Drug prescription is often based on the results obtained from clinical trials that measure the effects in populations and use averages to predict outcomes. Investigation and usage is based on the Western medical model and is replicated in almost identical ways by each practitioner who uses this system. By contrast, the same herb may be understood and prescribed in distinctly different ways by different practitioners, depending on the prescribing system being used, with an emphasis on individual prescribing. For example, in Chinese medicine, a herb such as andrographis (Andrographis paniculata) is used to clear ‘heat’ from the blood, because it is considered to be a ‘cold’ herb, whereas in Western herbalism, it is used to boost immune function and treat the common cold. Further, traditional herbal practice entails combining a number of herbs into a prescription that is tailored to the individual. This customised approach to herbal prescribing is guided by the underpinning paradigm of herbal practice — holism and vitalism. This philosophical basis is lost when herbs are viewed as vehicles for one or two active components or with the increasing cultural emphasis on self-prescribing.

Not only are herbs described and prescribed differently by different medical systems, the properties of herbal medicines are often defined using unique terms not found in drug pharmacology. These properties have traditionally been classified into herbal actions. Thus herbs that relax the gastrointestinal tract and reduce flatulence may be described as carminatives, or those that stimulate bile flow as cholagogues. These actions may be due to particular chemical constituent groups found within the herb or some other property of the herb. Throughout this book, terms specific to herbal medicine and not generally used in drug pharmacology are explained in Clinical notes.

In contrast to pharmaceutical medicine, the evidence available to support herbal medicines...
originally comes from traditional sources, and scientific investigation has only recently been added. Over the past two to three decades there has been an exponential increase in the amount of scientific research being conducted on herbal medicines, chiefly in Europe and Asia, where there are fewer political, economic and regulatory reasons for rejecting traditional medicines. For some herbs there is now sufficient clinical trial evidence to enable meta-analyses to be performed. For many of the popular herbs available over the counter, clinical trial evidence is now being published that can be used to further clarify and determine their place in practice. For others, research may still be in its infancy, with only in vitro testing or testing in experimental models having been conducted so far. Although a general lack of resources, infrastructure, government funding and financial incentive for companies to invest in non-patentable medicines has slowed down investigation, great public popularity continues to fuel further study. Despite the limitations of randomised controlled trials in evaluating complex interventions characterised by traditional herbal practice (Evans 2008), data collections such as the German Commission E monographs are widely cited as gold-standard references, because they use a combination of traditional and scientific evidence to interpret data and make recommendations.

**PRODUCT VARIATION AND STANDARDISATION**

The chemical complexity of herbal medicines is compounded by the variation that occurs in their production, which starts with the quality of the original plant material. This may be influenced by the identification methods used (and any misidentification or contamination), genetic variability in the original cultivar and the growing conditions, including the soil type, geographical location, aspect, altitude and climate. Other factors further modify a herb’s purity and quality, such as growing techniques (for example, wild harvesting, or organic or conventional farming methods), the timing and method of harvesting, drying, processing and storage, as well as the extraction techniques and solvents used. There are therefore numerous factors that determine the compositional profile of a given herbal extract, and attempts to ensure batch-to-batch consistency are confounded by the inherent chemical complexity of the herb and the natural variations that occur.

As a consequence, clinical research is never simply done on a herb itself. Rather, research must be done on a particular herbal preparation at a specific dose, and the evidence for the efficacy of herbal preparations must be related back to the preparation used in the research. The results of clinical trials are therefore only relevant to the specific herbal preparation that has been tested, at the specific dosage, dose form and route of administration used in the actual trial and cannot necessarily be used to support the use of other extracts or doses of the same herb. The challenge for manufacturers and clinicians, then, is to reproduce a particular preparation, administer it in the proven doses and achieve the expected result. More commonly in practice, herbs are used in variable ways, with different preparations, at a range of doses, and in combination with other herbs or treatments. It is thus hard to guarantee outcomes, either beneficial or adverse, based solely on controlled clinical trials.

**STANDARDISATION**

Efforts to ensure batch-to-batch reproducibility of herbal medicines have generated a great deal of controversy, particularly involving the term ‘standardisation’, or the production of so-called standardised extracts. The lack of an agreed definition and the variety of meanings attributed to these terms make them confusing to both consumers and health professionals. Yet they are still used as the basis for product labelling and promotion, where they are used by suppliers for marketing purposes to imply quality, safety or efficacy.

A commonly used (and some may say abused) definition of the term ‘standardised’ in relation to herbal extracts relies on measuring a specified concentration of an identified constituent or class of constituents known as ‘markers’. Markers are usually stable components of a herb that can easily be identified, analysed and measured, but they may or may not be pharmacologically active. An example of this is seen with Ginkgo biloba, which is standardised to contain 24% flavonoid glycosides and 6% terpenoids in commercial herbal products, although the active constituents are largely unknown. Sophisticated
laboratory techniques are now used to perform this analysis and measurement. Methods include chromatographic techniques, such as thin layer chromatography and high-performance liquid chromatography, both of which provide a visual characterisation of the presence of different chemical constituents, including ‘marker’ substances in the herb. The graphs produced from chromatographic testing are referred to as ‘fingerprints’ and are commonly used to determine the identity of herbal material and the integrity of the extraction process, as well as to measure quantities of individual constituents.

**LIMITATIONS**

Although it is generally accepted that herbal standardisation is a useful procedure, it does raise many problems and concerns. First, standardisation to non-active constituents does not necessarily reflect potency. Second, the more perplexing issue of identifying the exact active constituents in a herb is still the subject of much debate for many herbs. Lastly, individual chemical isolates do not fit the accepted definition of a herb, so if the concentration of an isolate is significantly altered for standardisation purposes, the final product may not be truly representative of the original herbal medicine and may even be considered to be ‘adulterated’ if marker substances are added. Furthermore, despite recent attempts to standardise herbal extracts, there are still no official standards, and herbal products can vary widely with regard to their quality and clinical effectiveness (American Herbal Products Association 2003).

Although conventional pharmaceutical thinking is based on milligrams of an active substance, such an approach is not appropriate for herbal medicines, which have many biologically active, often unmeasurable constituents. Because there can be hundreds of constituents in a complex herbal extract, standardisation is not possible by merely ensuring that one or two marker constituents are present in the same quantities from batch to batch. The therapeutic actions of herbal medicines rely on the complex combination and interactions of chemicals in the extract rather than on single constituents, and two total extracts can have very different profiles, despite there being a consistent level of one or two marker substances.

The biological activity of any compound, even a marker compound with demonstrated bioactivity, depends on the composition of the rest of the extract. Other components of the extract, even those with no direct physiological effect, may influence the uptake, distribution, metabolism and excretion of other components. Furthermore, this background matrix may affect the solubility, stability and bioavailability of any given compound (Eisner 2001). Thus the presence of chemical markers alone cannot be used to translate clinical evidence from one extract to another.

True standardisation requires more elegant procedures. The American Herbal Products Association has the following definition: ‘Standardization refers to the body of information and controls that ensure product consistency from one batch to the next. This is achieved through minimising the inherent variation of natural product composition through quality assurance practices applied to agricultural and manufacturing processes’ (American Herbal Products Association 2003). This definition accords more closely with the approach taken in Europe, where process control is an integral component of standardising herbal medicines. The methodology involves proceeding with the aim of standardising all the inputs and processes involved in making a particular extract, in order to ensure batch-to-batch consistency — from the genetic identity of the seed or plant, through to the agricultural processes employed and climatic factors (temperature, rainfall, sunlight), and finishing with drying, processing, extraction, solvent (or solvents), concentration, manufacture, storage, formulation and packaging of the finished product.

In addition to standardising the amount of certain chemical constituents in a herbal preparation, it is also necessary to have a means of standardising doses. Not only can different batches of the same herb have quite different potencies, there are many different formulations. Commercially available herbal preparations include fresh and dried herbs, teas, tinctures, fluid extracts, tablets, capsules and powders, as well as essential oils. When translating doses between different formulations, the amount of dried herb used to produce a set amount of the particular product is often used to give an indication of dosage strength. However, this may not give an accurate indication of potency; for example, fresh grapes,
sultanas, grape juice, wine and sherry may all contain the same equivalent dry weight of grapes, but yield very different products with different biological properties.

Because of the lack of formalised standards and the need to prove ‘phytoequivalence’ for scientific rigour, it is increasingly common for clinical trials to specify the exact dose and extract used and for this information to be used as a basis for government regulation and for marketing purposes. When standardised extracts have been used in clinical trials, this information is included in each monograph.

**HERBAL SAFETY**

As with all medicines, a risk–benefit profile should be considered before using any herbal medicine. The vast majority of herbal medicines are generally considered to be safe, whether commercially or domestically produced. Most have a wide therapeutic index and only a few have toxic potential. However, adverse reactions may arise from a number of factors and may or may not be predictable. These include inappropriate usage (for example, dose, indication, time frame, administration route) and idiosyncratic reactions such as allergic responses and anaphylaxis.

In addition to adverse reactions arising from the properties of the herb itself, it is also possible for adverse events to arise from contamination or adulteration of herbal products. Contamination occurs when additional substances are inadvertently included in a herbal product. Contaminants can include toxic substances such as heavy metals, pesticide residues and microorganisms, as well as plant material from species other than the intended species, arising from either misidentification or poor quality control. Adulteration, on the other hand, is the intentional inclusion of foreign substances in herbal products, such as pharmaceutical steroids, NSAIDs or synthetic hormones, and may have very serious consequences. The standard of manufacture of commercial herbal products in Australia is generally very high.

**INTERACTIONS WITH PHARMACEUTICAL DRUGS**

One safety issue that has become more recognised over the past decade is the potential for herbs to interact with pharmaceutical drugs. Evidence has emerged to suggest that some herb–drug interactions may be detrimental and have the potential to cause dangerous outcomes, whereas others may be beneficial when an interaction is manipulated to produce positive results (see Chapters 7 and 8).

The popularity of herbal medicine, and the increasing desire among patients for self-treatment and less use of pharmaceutical drugs, have meant that many medical doctors and pharmacists are now dealing with patients who regularly take these types of medicines. As neither doctors nor pharmacists receive comprehensive herbal training as part of their standard education, a potentially detrimental situation can arise in regard to not only patient safety but also negligence. Practical questions, such as whether a herb works in a particular scenario, or is dangerous in another, or compares favourably to a pharmaceutical drug, or can reasonably be expected to have an effect within a certain time frame, are important facts to know. It is hoped that resources such as this text will enable all health practitioners to ensure the safe and rational use of herbal medicines.

**REFERENCES**


**REPRESENTING WESTERN HERBALISTS IN AUSTRALIA**

In Australia, the knowledge and practice of contemporary herbal medicine has been preserved and nurtured mainly by Western herbalists. In fact, the National Herbalists Association of Australia (NHAA) has represented medical herbalists since 1920. Today, many industry insiders consider NHAA to be the industry standard setter for education in medical herbalism. Clinicians are encouraged to check whether herbal practitioners to whom they refer have undergone accredited courses. Further information can be found by contacting the association or accessing the website [www.nhaa.org.au](http://www.nhaa.org.au).
Walcott EE, transl. The Badianus Manuscript: An Aztec Herbal of 1552. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins Press, 1940.
CHAPTER 3

INTRODUCTION TO CLINICAL NUTRITION

Nutrition may be defined as the science of food, its nutrients and substances, and their association with the body in relation to health and disease. In every stage of life nutrition is important and influences clinical practice in many branches of healthcare. Clinical nutrition is the use of this information in the diagnosis, treatment and prevention of disease that may be caused by deficiency, excess or imbalance of nutrients, and in the maintenance of good health.

CONSEQUENCES OF POOR NUTRITION

Nutrition plays a vital role in the health of both individuals and society, with poor nutrition and inadequate intake having a devastating effect. Overall, it has been estimated that more than 60% of all deaths in Australia result from nutrition-related disorders, such as cardiovascular disease, diabetes and cancer (Sydney-Smith 2000).

MORTALITY RISK: CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE AND CANCER

Atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease is the most common cause of death in most Western countries (Anderson 2003). In Australia, it is the leading cause of death, accounting for 34% of all deaths in 2006. Cardiovascular disease kills one Australian nearly every 10 minutes according to the Australian Heart Foundation website. It is well known that dietary factors such as carbohydrate and fat intake affect several important physiological parameters, along with risk factors, such as hypertension, lipid levels, diabetes and antioxidant status. With the exception of tobacco consumption, diet is probably the most important factor in the aetiology of human cancers, responsible for around one-third of all cases (Ferguson 2002). Diet-related cancers have often been considered to relate to exogenous carcinogens; however, it is increasingly apparent that many carcinogens may be endogenously generated, and that diet plays an important role in modifying this process (Ferguson 1999).

Overeating and poorly balanced meals have also led to significant increases in metabolic syndrome (syndrome X) and obesity, which are now major health concerns. A 2003 review stated that the World Health Organization (WHO) estimates there are 1 billion people around the world who are now overweight or obese, and that 20–25% of the adult population in the USA have metabolic syndrome (Keller & Lemberg 2003).

Although overweight and obesity in adulthood is associated with decreased longevity, and the link with cardiovascular disease is well known, a recent series of meta-analyses revealed statistically significant associations for overweight with the incidence of type II diabetes, all cancers (except oesophageal [female], pancreatic and prostate), asthma, gall-bladder disease, osteoarthritis and chronic back pain (Guh et al 2009). It has further been established that obesity is associated with increased death rates from cancer (Peeters et al 2003). A
large prospective study of more than 900,000 people found that a BMI above 40 was associated with a higher combined death rate from all cancers of 52% for obese men and 62% for obese women, compared with people of normal weight (Calle et al 2003). The adverse effects of obesity on health are not limited to adults. Overweight children and adolescents are now being diagnosed with impaired glucose tolerance and type 2 diabetes, and show early signs of insulin resistance syndrome and cardiovascular risk (Goran et al 2003).

A large body of research exists that attempts to isolate the influence of individual food groups and nutrients on morbidity and mortality. Research with macronutrients has found that the consumption of diets rich in plant-derived foods, wholegrains and fish reduces the risk of morbidity and mortality. However, numerous surveys have identified inadequate intakes of these foods in many Australian sub-populations (Barzi et al 2003, He et al 2002, Mozaffarian et al 2003, Rissanen et al 2003, Slavin 2003). The relative roles of micronutrients, phytochemicals and non-nutrients are still under debate.

**FOOD UNDER THE MICROSCOPE**

More than 25,000 different bioactive components are thought to occur in the foods consumed by human beings (Milner 2008). These components represent a veritable cocktail of chemicals that includes macronutrients (such as carbohydrates, protein, fat, water and fibre) and micronutrients (such as vitamins and minerals as well as phytochemicals), many of which are health-promoting, plant-based compounds (Table 3.1). Additives, such as preservatives, colourings and flavourings, together with contaminants introduced through farming or processing techniques, may also be present.

Nutrients can be divided into two main subgroups — essential and non-essential. Essential nutrients are those that cannot be synthesised

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 3.1 THE CHEMICAL COMPLEXITY OF FOOD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NUTRIENTS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micronutrients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamins: A, B complex, C, D, E, K, coenzyme Q10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals: iron, iodine, fluoride, zinc, chromium, selenium, manganese, molybdenum and copper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macronutrients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrates: simple and complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteins: amino acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipids: saturated, monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fatty acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibre: soluble and insoluble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals: sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, phosphorus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytochemicals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioflavonoids, carotenoids, isoflavones, glutathione, lipoic acid, caffeic acid, ferulic acid, lignans, allyl sulfides, indoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NON-NUTRIENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food additives: natural or synthetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colourings: restore colours lost during processing or alter natural colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavourings: alter natural flavours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservatives: prolong shelf-life by reducing bacterial, mould and yeast growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thickeners: modify texture and consistency of food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humectants: control moisture levels and keep food moist (mainly used in baked foods)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food acids: used to standardise acid levels between different food batches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antioxidants: used to preserve foods mainly containing fats and oils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contaminants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural contaminants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial pollutants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processing contaminants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Protein
Protein is formed by linking individual amino acids together, with the order of the amino acid sequence determining the protein’s ultimate form and function. Proteins are crucial to the regulation and maintenance of many vital body processes, such as blood clotting and fluid balance, cell repair and hormone and enzyme production.

Amino acids can be divided into two broad groups: essential or non-essential. There are nine essential amino acids that must be ingested through the diet to maintain health. Protein foods that contain all nine essential amino acids are also referred to as complete protein sources (e.g. animal protein). By contrast, almost all plant foods are incomplete protein sources, with the possible exception of spirulina and soy. During times of growth, tissue repair or pronounced catabolism, such as after surgery, the body requires additional protein for efficient new tissue growth to occur. There is also emerging evidence that supplementation with individual amino acids produces a variety of pharmacological effects that can be manipulated to provide therapeutic benefits. Several of these amino acids are reviewed in the monograph section.

Minerals
Some minerals fall into the category of macronutrients because they are required in gram amounts every day, although they do not directly produce energy. These include sodium, potassium, calcium, phosphorus and magnesium.

Lipids
The term ‘lipid’ is a generic one used to describe a number of chemicals that share two main characteristics: they are insoluble in water and contain fatty acids. When they are solid at room temperature they are called fats, whereas those that are liquid are called oils. Fatty acids are the simplest form of lipids, and more than 40 different types occur in nature (Wahlqvist et al 1997). Of all the various classes of lipids, only precursors of the omega-3 and omega-6 fatty acids are considered essential, meaning they are necessary in the diet to maintain health. The amount of dietary fat ingested and the ratios between saturated, monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fatty acids are important influences on overall health and disease.
complex (B1, B2, B3, B5, B6, B12, biotin and folic acid) are defined as water-soluble vitamins, whereas vitamins A, D, E and K are fat-soluble. Levels in the body need to be replenished on a regular basis, as only vitamins A, E and B12 are stored to any significant extent. Just as a vitamin deficiency causes adverse outcomes, high doses of these supplements can also do so if used inappropriately.

**Essential trace minerals**
These are minerals required by the body, usually in milligram or microgram amounts. They include iron, iodine, fluoride, zinc, chromium, selenium, manganese, molybdenum and copper. All trace minerals have the potential to be toxic when consumed in high doses.

**Phytochemicals**
Phytochemicals are components in plant foods that appear to provide significant health benefits, yet are not essential. Considerable research has been undertaken in the past few decades to understand the role they play in maintaining health and preventing certain diseases, such as cancer, but there is still much to learn. Some of the better known phytochemicals include isoflavones (e.g. genistein), bioflavonoids (e.g. procyanidins), carotenoids (e.g. lycopene), glutathione and alpha-lipoic acid. Many of the phytochemicals found in food are also found in medicinal herbs and may partly explain their therapeutic qualities.

**FOOD LABELS**
According to Nutrition Australia, by law all packaged foods must carry labels that state the following information:

- name of food
- name and business address of manufacturer
- country of origin
- ingredients, listed by weight from greatest to smallest (including added water)
- percentage of the key ingredient or component present in the food product
- warnings about the presence of major allergens in the food, such as nuts, seafood, eggs, gluten and soy
- a nutrition information panel, unless the food is not packaged or the package is too small (e.g. tea bags)
- an expiry date.

For further information about labelling, see Food Standards Australia New Zealand (FSANZ) website.

Currently, more than 35 genetically modified (GM) foods have been approved for sale in Australia and New Zealand (FSANZ 2014), including foods derived from soy, sugar beet, corn, cottonseed oil, canola and potatoes. As from December 2001, labels must also state whether a food contains a GM-derived component or protein introduced through genetic modification.

Additives are listed as either numbers, known as additive codes, or by name. Up-to-date lists of the food additives found in Australian and New Zealand food products can be located on the FSANZ website.

**NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES**
Malnutrition and other deficiency states, such as kwashiorkor (protein deficiency), scurvy or rickets, are major causes of morbidity and mortality in both developing and developed countries under conditions of deprivation. Malnutrition can occur as a result of alcoholism, medication use, fussy eating, anorexia, small bowel obstruction and numerous other medical conditions.

More specific or individual nutritional deficiencies can be classified as either a ‘primary deficiency’ or a ‘secondary deficiency’, according to their aetiology.

**PRIMARY DEFICIENCY**
Primary deficiency is defined as a state arising from inadequate dietary intake. Although considered to be rare in developed countries, inadequate intake and primary deficiency states are not uncommon, as evidenced by numerous dietary surveys both here and overseas.

**Inadequate dietary intake**
The Australian National Nutrition Survey (NNS), conducted in 1995, found that approximately 30% of 2–7-year-old children ate no fruit or vegetables. Among 8–11-year-olds, 44% of boys and 38% of girls ate no fruit on the previous day and approximately one in four older children consumed no vegetables. Additionally, neither age group consumed the minimum number of serves of dairy products (Cashel 2000). Later results from the Australian
Institute of Health and Welfare in 1998 reported that approximately one in two Australian children under 12 were not eating fruit or fruit products, and more than one in five consumed no vegetables in a typical day.

The dietary intakes of adults are also far from ideal. The 1995 NNS also found that approximately 44% of adult males and 34% of females did not consume fruit in the 24 hours preceding the survey, and 20% of males and 17% of females did not consume vegetables (Giskes et al 2002).

Interestingly, dietary intakes were influenced by income level, with lower-income adults consuming a smaller variety of fruits and vegetables than their higher-income counterparts. Additional research has consistently identified other groups at risk of poor dietary habits, such as the elderly, institutionalised individuals and the indigenous population.

Surveys of individual vitamin and mineral intakes also identify a number of at-risk subpopulations. Calcium intakes for 1045 randomly selected Australian women (20–92 years), as estimated by questionnaire, showed that 76% of women aged 20–54 years, 87% of older women and 82% of lactating women had intakes below the recommended dietary intake (Pasco et al 2000). Of these, 14% had less than the minimum requirement of 300 mg/day and would, therefore, be in negative calcium balance and at risk of bone loss. The 1997 New Zealand National Nutrition Survey found that 20% of all New Zealanders and one in four women had calcium intakes below the UK estimated average requirements, and 15–20% of women aged 15–18 years were considered to have frank deficiency (Horwath et al 2001).

Surveys in Australia and New Zealand report that many adolescent girls have insufficient dietary intakes of iron and zinc to meet their high physiological requirements for growing body tissues, expanding red cell mass and onset of menarche (Gibson et al 2002).

More recent surveys do not show the situation improving. The 2007 Children’s Survey, which assessed vegetable and fruit intakes against the recommendations for children aged 2–16 (1–3 serves fruit; 2–4 serves of vegetables) found a total of 22% of boys and girls aged 4–8 years met the recommended serves of vegetables, but this decreased to 11% of boys and 1% of girls aged 14–16 years (CSIRO & University of South Australia 2008).

About 9 in 10 children aged 2–13 years met the recommendation for fruit serves compared with only 1 in 4 boys aged 14–16 (25%) and about 1 in 5 girls (19%). This decreased substantially when fruit juice was excluded from the analysis, with only 2% of boys and 1% of girls aged 14–16 years meeting the recommendation.

According to a 2012 government publication, ‘Australia’s Food and Nutrition’, more than 9 in 10 (91%) people aged 16 years and over do not consume sufficient serves of vegetables, and about 50% do not consume sufficient serves of fruit (Australian Institute of Health and Welfare 2012). When measures of sufficient serves of fruit and vegetables are combined, only 6% of people consume enough fruit and vegetables on a regular basis.

Evidence of deficiency in Australia and New Zealand

It is a common perception that although dietary intakes are not ideal, vitamin and mineral deficiencies are not a major health concern; however, research has shown that several subpopulations, such as children, pregnant and lactating women, older adults, institutionalised individuals, indigenous peoples and vegetarians, are at real risk.

For example, although severe iodine deficiency is rare in Australia and New Zealand, the Australian Population Health Development Principal Committee reports a high incidence of mild to moderate iodine deficiency in primary school aged children in Australia and New Zealand (APHDPC 2007).

This is of great concern because mild iodine deficiency during childhood and pregnancy has the potential to impair neurological development. One survey of Sydney schoolchildren, healthy adult volunteers, pregnant women and patients with diabetes found that all four groups had urinary iodine excretion values below those set by the WHO for iodine repletion (Li et al 2001). Another survey of 225 children in Tasmania identified evidence of mild iodine deficiency in 25% of boys and 21% of girls (Guttikonda et al 2002). A research group at Monash Medical Centre in Melbourne screened 802 pregnant women and found that 48.4% of Caucasian women had urinary iodine...
concentrations below 50 micrograms/L compared to 38.4% of Vietnamese women and 40.8% of Indian/Sri Lankan women (Hamrosi et al 2005). These figures are disturbing when one considers that normal levels are over 100 micrograms/L, mild deficiency is diagnosed at 51–100 micrograms/L and moderate to severe deficiency at < 50 micrograms/L (Gunton et al 1999). A study conducted at a Sydney hospital involving 81 women attending a ‘high-risk’ clinic found moderate to severe iodine deficiency in 19.8% of volunteers and mild iodine deficiency in another 29.6% (Gunton et al 1999).

In Australia and New Zealand, the prevalence of vitamin D deficiency varies, but it is now acknowledged to be much higher than previously thought (Nowson & Margerison 2002). The groups at greatest risk are dark-skinned and veiled women (particularly in pregnancy), their infants and older persons living in residential care. The study by Nowson and Margerison found marginal deficiency in 23% of women, and another frank deficiency in 80% of dark-skinned women in Australia. A study conducted in a large aged-care facility in Auckland identified frank vitamin D deficiency in 49% of elderly participants in midwinter and in 33% in midsummer (Ley et al 1999). Even in studies of ‘healthy’ adults, vitamin D insufficiency has been found to affect more than 40% of residents in Queensland (Kimlin et al 2007, van der Mei et al 2007) and over 65% of Tasmanians (van der Mei et al 2007).

Barriers to good nutrition
Clearly, living in a developed country is not a guarantee of healthy nutrition. Western first-world countries have a wide range of good-quality foods available at affordable prices, yet healthy eating is not commonplace. There are four key levels of influence on dietary behaviours:

1. individual factors
2. interpersonal factors
3. organisational factors
4. environmental factors.

At each level, barriers to healthy eating behaviours exist. Table 3.2 lists some of the more common barriers. Successful nutritional interventions that aim to modify individuals’ eating patterns should help people develop new routines and simple internalised rules that they can use to navigate sensibly through the multitude of food choices and personal influences.

Nutritional intervention is a central component of disease prevention and management. Health professionals play a pivotal role in undertaking nutritional interventions with patients because of their knowledge, access to information and credibility as patient educators.

SECONDARY DEFICIENCY
Secondary deficiency may develop when there is reduced nutrient absorption, or increased metabolism or excretion of any given nutrient.

Of these, malabsorption states are the most common and associated with many diseases such as those characterised by chronic diarrhoea (e.g. Crohn’s disease), alterations to gastrointestinal tract architecture (e.g. coeliac disease) and liver cirrhosis. In these cases, malabsorption may be specific to certain nutrients and fats or may be more generalised.

The effects of pharmaceutical medicines on nutritional status must not be forgotten. A significant number of drugs affect appetite, nutrient absorption and synthesis, transport and storage, metabolism and excretion. In fact, some of the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 3.2 INFLUENCES OVER FOOD CHOICES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Nutritional knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Religious beliefs and practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Family beliefs and practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cultural beliefs and practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ethnicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Peer and social influences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Advertising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Emotional factors: e.g. indulging in ‘comfort’ foods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Medication: dietary alterations may be necessary; side effects may alter appetite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Food: flavour, texture, appearance, odour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Income: food choices based on affordability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Childhood experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dental health: e.g. ill-fitting dentures, sensitive teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Availability and convenience: e.g. convenience of fast food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Muscle weakness or joint pain: problems with shopping and cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Problems chewing and swallowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gastrointestinal problems: e.g. nausea, diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Following a specific diet: e.g. fad diets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Psychosocial problems: loneliness, depression, confusion, isolation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
side effects of medicines may not be related to the medicine directly, but rather to the nutritional deficiencies that develop with their use over time. These will not always produce clinically significant adverse effects, but when combined with a poor diet, or when several medicines affecting the same nutrients are taken, the risk of deficiency is heightened.

Medicines that can reduce intake of nutrients include those that induce nausea, dyspepsia or decrease appetite, such as non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), and opioid drugs such as codeine and morphine. Medicines with the potential to reduce nutrient absorption include those that reduce gastric motility (e.g. opioid drugs), greatly increase gastric motility (e.g. metoclopramide), compromise digestive enzyme output and function (e.g. proton pump inhibitors) and bind nutrients, preventing their traversal across gastrointestinal membranes, such as anion exchange resins (e.g. cholestyramine). Certain medicines can also increase nutrient excretion, such as thiazide diuretics, which increase potassium excretion. Others can reduce vitamin biosynthesis, such as statins, which reduce the production of coenzyme Q10.

In each of these cases, either increased nutritional intakes may be required to offset possible depletions, or medicines should not be administered with meals or supplements to reduce the likelihood of more direct interactions.

**RDA AND RDI REFERENCE VALUES FOR AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND**

The concept of recommended daily allowances (RDAs) originated in the United States in the 1940s as a basis for setting the poverty threshold and food-stamp allocations for the military and civilian populations during times of war and/or economic depression (Russell 2007). At this time, the first RDAs were determined by observing a healthy population’s usual dietary intakes and extrapolating RDAs from this information. Over subsequent decades, scientific research into health and nutrition became more sophisticated, rendering the original concept of RDAs incomplete and in need of modification.

The main findings to emerge were as follows:

- Many additional nutrients found in food are important for health, so a longer list of nutrients with recommended levels will be required.
- Nutrient intake recommendations need to be related to a specific use, as requirements will vary for different subpopulations.
- Nutritional intake recommendations need to take into account longer-term disease prevention, not just deficiency prevention.
- Clearer endpoints will be required by which to set adequacy levels.
- Risk assessment of nutrients will be necessary.

In the mid-1990s a new framework was developed to address these issues. It aimed to establish new nutrient intake recommendations to meet a variety of uses and to base nutrient requirements on the reduction of chronic disease risk, with a clear rationale for the endpoints chosen. The new guidelines still contain RDAs, but have been expanded to include three new intake recommendations: estimated average requirements (EARs), adequate daily intake (ADI) and upper level (UL) of intake.

Revisions to the nutrient intake framework occurred all around the world and in 2006 the National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) of Australia published its adjusted nutritional guidelines for the adequate intake of vitamins and minerals (NHMRC 2006). These guidelines were far more comprehensive than previous versions and incorporated some of the initiatives developed in the United States.

The NHMRC guidelines are intended for healthy people and specify requirements based on both gender and age, while assuming average body weights of 76 kg for the adult male and 61 kg for the adult female.

Four key dietary reference value terms are defined here:

1. Estimated average requirement (EAR). A daily nutrient level estimated to meet the needs of 50% of the healthy population in a particular life cycle and gender.
2. Recommended daily intake (RDI). A daily nutrient intake estimated to meet the needs of up to 98% of healthy people in a particular life cycle and gender. This remains the most common benchmark of individual nutrient adequacy.
3. Adequate daily intake (ADI). When RDI cannot be determined, this is based on observed or experimentally derived estimates
5. Upper level (UL) of intake. An estimate of the highest level of regular intake that carries no appreciable risk of adverse health effects to almost all people in the general population. It is meant to apply to all groups of the general population, including sensitive individuals, throughout the life stages.

In some instances, the 2006 RDI values for specific nutrients represented a substantial increase (e.g. iron and folate), whereas others increased only marginally (e.g. calcium) or decreased (e.g. zinc requirements for adult females).

**RDI and nutritional deficiencies**

Although the RDIs provide a guide to preventing nutrient deficiency signs and symptoms in a ‘healthy’ population, they are only general recommendations and do not take into account each individual’s requirements or specific circumstances. As a result, seemingly adequate food intake can provide false security, owing to a number of factors that influence the nutritional content of food and the way important nutrients are absorbed, utilised and excreted.

Unfavourable cooking and storage conditions can significantly reduce the nutritional content of food before it is consumed, no longer providing the expected vitamins and minerals. Many vitamins and minerals are sensitive to changes in temperature, light and oxygen. Up to 50% of vitamins A, D and E and 100% of vitamin C and folate can be lost during cooking (Wahlqvist et al. 1997).

Issues relating to various farming techniques have often been cited as affecting the nutritional content of food and are readily reflected in the variability of resulting mineral composition. A good illustration of this is selenium, which, like most other minerals, enters the food chain through incorporation into plants from the soil. Plants grown in soils with low selenium levels are likely to contain smaller quantities than those grown in selenium-rich soils. Acid soils and complexation with metals, such as iron or aluminium, also reduce plant selenium content.

Beyond the actual quantities of nutrients provided by our food, reduced bioavailability of nutrients can occur as a result of interactions between food constituents. Phytates found in dietary fibre and tannins found in tea (and several herbal medicines) are able to bind to iron, zinc and other minerals, impairing the body’s ability to absorb them. Therefore, adequate intake of mineral-rich food does not necessarily prevent deficiency. In addition to this, there are other potential contributors to secondary nutrient deficiencies, such as impaired absorption, compromised or accelerated utilisation and increased excretion of individual nutrients as well as genetic variables.

**Serious deficiencies of reference values**

Setting nutrient reference values is a complex task, which produces only approximate values. Robert Russell from the Human Nutrition Research Centre on Aging at Tufts University has outlined eight different obstacles that prevent accurate determination of reference values (Russell 2007):

1. Few long-term studies are available, so information is extrapolated from short-term studies (e.g. 1–2 weeks).
2. Little good-quality information is available about individual variability in response to the indicators in question.
3. Most research fails to consider the interaction between nutrients (which may be important for good health).
4. Many databases used when determining reference values provided information from studies that evaluated only dietary intakes and ignored supplemental intakes.
5. Most studies fail to consider the variation in nutrient bioavailability that is influenced by the food matrixes in which the nutrient presents.
6. Little good-quality information is available about children, adolescents and the elderly from which to establish reference values with any degree of certainty.
7. Little good-quality dose-response information is available (i.e. responses to multiple levels of the same nutrient in the same individual).
8. The cause and effect of a nutrient on a specific outcome is sometimes still speculative, as multiple factors may affect an outcome, not simply a single nutrient.

The obstacles outlined here clearly indicate that the scientific basis for many of the reference...
values is weak. They also indicate that for many nutrients and food components the RDI and UL levels are only approximations that are loosely relevant to the general healthy population, and even less relevant to the individual with comorbidities or special needs. Substantial research would be required to create a set of reference values with greater accuracy and relevance, but even then some values, such as ULs, may never be entirely accurate, as ethical considerations would prevent such research from ever being conducted.

**OPTIMAL NUTRITION: A STATE BEYOND RDI**

Dietary reference values are based on the concept of nutrient requirement. When considering these, it is important to keep in mind how we define or identify ‘adequacy’. Historically, one measure of adequacy has been the dose of nutrient required to prevent the clinical manifestations of the corresponding deficiency. This method has yielded RDI reference values, which prevent overt deficiency presentations in most healthy people but do not guarantee the prevention of a less well-defined suboptimal intake which may over time contribute to other pathology.

There is considerable evidence that some nutrients may have health benefits at intake levels greater than the RDI. Higher intake levels appear to play a role in the prevention of many degenerative diseases such as cancer, cardiovascular disease, macular degeneration and cataract, cognitive decline and Alzheimer’s dementia, as well as of developmental conditions such as neural tube defect. The NHMRC guidelines for the adequate intake of vitamins and minerals acknowledge this fact and state that ‘there is some evidence that a range of nutrients could have benefits in chronic disease aetiology at levels above the RDI or AI’ (NHMRC 2006). This has given rise to a new concept, ‘suboptimal nutrition’.

The phrase ‘suboptimal nutrition’ was first coined by Fairfield and Fletcher in their 2002 systematic review evaluating the evidence indicating that certain nutrients had long-term disease prevention properties (Fairfield et al 2002, Fletcher et al 2002). They defined suboptimal nutrition as a state in which nutritional intake is sufficient to prevent the classical symptoms and signs of deficiency, yet insufficient to significantly reduce the risk of developmental or degenerative diseases. As such, avoiding a state of suboptimal nutrition requires adequate dietary intakes of all key food groups with an emphasis on health-promoting foods, and possibly the use of additional nutritional supplements. Furthermore, the balance between micronutrients or macronutrients is important, such as the ratio of omega-3 to omega-6 fatty acids and of high to low glycaemic carbohydrates.

As a reflection of these new developments, the term ‘suggested dietary target’ has been adopted by the NHMRC to describe the ‘daily average intake from food and beverages for certain nutrients that may help in prevention of chronic disease’. It is a move that recognises food components offer more than just deficiency prevention; however, the general recommendations still relate only to the general healthy population.

Theoretically, it can be imagined that there is a level of intake that could be considered to provide optimal nutrition that is above the RDI yet below the UL levels. Figure 3.1 illustrates a theoretical description of beneficial health effects of a nutrient as a function of level of intake. The solid line in the figure represents risk of inadequacy in preventing nutritional deficiency and the broken line represents the risk of inadequacy in achieving a health benefit, that is, disease risk reduction (Renwick et al 2004). As intake falls below the RDI, the risk of adverse effects due to inadequate intake increases, and as intake increases beyond an optimal level, there is an increased risk of adverse effects due to toxicity. Naturally,
however, such an optimal intake may be highly individualistic, based on the previous discussion of confounding factors.

**REDEFINING AN ESSENTIAL NUTRIENT**

Clearly the line between essential and non-essential nutrients has blurred as a result of modern scientific inquiry and experimentation (Yates 2005). In the first half of the 20th century, nutrients were termed ‘essential’ when their removal from the diet caused severe organ dysfunction or death. Since then, modern scientific techniques have enabled us to detect finer gradations of inadequacy well before organic pathology, such as a decline in health status or ability to function optimally, sets in. They have also allowed us to glimpse the potential of nutrients and certain food compounds to prevent genomic mutations, alter metabolic processes and ultimately prevent disease, possibly even extending longevity concurrently. If we broaden the aim of nutrition beyond prevention of deficiency to include the promotion of wellness and optimal health, many additional nutrients and food components are also likely to be able to be termed ‘essential’.

**NUTRITIONAL GENOMICS**

Nutritional genomics is a field that has emerged alongside the Human Genome Project. It has a unique focus on disease prevention and healthy ageing through the manipulation of gene–diet interactions. Several key scientific domains in nutritional genomics focus on specific areas of this interaction.

Nutrigenomics, also known as nutritional epigenetics, refers to the effect of nutrients and other food components on gene expression and gene regulation, i.e. diet–gene regulation. In contrast, nutrigenetics refers to the genetic makeup of an individual that affects their response to various dietary nutrients and can reveal why different people respond differently to the same nutrient. When understood together, these two emerging fields can help us understand how diet and nutrition affect human health and eventually lead to individualised dietary recommendations to reduce the risk of disease, possibly improve recovery and promote wellness (Gaboon 2011). In other words, from a clinical perspective, nutritional genomics may help clinicians bridge the gap from overarching public health messages aimed at the broader community to more individualised dietary guidance.

Another concept in nutritional genomics is systems biology, or nutritional engineering. This involves the identification, classification and characterisation of human genetic variants or polymorphisms (mutations) that modify individual responses to nutrients (Fig 3.2) and its application in the manipulation of biological pathways to produce health benefits.

From a public health and research perspective, it is possible that nutritional genomics could play an important role in the conduct and interpretation of clinical trials and epidemiological studies that investigate the associations between diet and/or nutritional supplementation and disease. This knowledge can be used to distinguish between responders and non-responders, and to determine which populations are most likely to benefit from nutritional intervention and which may be at increased risk of harm.

It has further been suggested that there is a need to establish genome-informed nutrient and food-based dietary guidelines for disease prevention and healthy ageing, and better targeted public health nutrition interventions.
(including micronutrient fortification and supplementation) that maximise benefit and minimise adverse outcomes in genetically diverse human populations (Stover & Caudill 2008).

Whilst a better understanding of an individual’s family history and genetic makeup may help inform practice in future, complex disorders, such as cancer, CVD and diabetes, are caused by genetic and environmental factors, and genetic mutations are only partially predictive of risk (Camp & Trujillo 2014). Our understanding of this complicated interplay between genetic variations, diet, lifestyle, environmental and even psychological influences is still far from clear.

The development of nutrigenomics holds great promise for individualised medicine and tailoring nutritional interventions for the individual; however, the science is still developing. The knowledge gained from nutritional genomics requires an evidence-based approach to validate that personalised recommendations result in health benefits to individuals and do not cause harm (Camp & Trujillo 2014). In addition, as with all emerging areas, ethical, legal and social issues need to be addressed, particularly with respect to how the public may access nutrigenetic tests and associated nutritional and lifestyle advice. There are five key areas identified by international experts in the context of both basic nutrigenomics research and its clinical and commercial uses:

1. health claims benefits arising from nutrigenomics
2. managing nutrigenomic information
3. delivery methods of nutrigenomics services
4. nutrigenomics products
5. equitable accessibility to nutrigenomics (Gaboon 2011).

NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCY, GENOME DAMAGE AND CLINICAL PRACTICE

There is overwhelming evidence that several micronutrients (vitamins and minerals) are required as co-factors for enzymes or as part of the structure of proteins (metalloenzymes) involved in DNA synthesis and repair, prevention of oxidative damage to DNA as well as maintenance methylation of DNA. The main point is that genome damage caused by moderate micronutrient deficiency is of the same order of magnitude as the genome damage levels caused by exposure to significant doses of environmental genotoxins, such as chemical carcinogens, ultraviolet radiation and ionising radiation (Fenech 2008). For example, deficiency of vitamins B₁₂, folic acid, B₉, C, E or iron or zinc appears to damage DNA in the same way as radiation, by causing single- and double-strand breaks, oxidative lesions or both. Half of the population may be deficient in at least one of these micronutrients (Ames 2004). If moderate deficiency in just one micronutrient can cause significant DNA damage, it is possible that multiple moderate deficiencies may have additive or synergistic effects on genome stability.

Current research indicates the amount of micronutrients that appear to be protective against genome damage varies greatly between foods, and careful choice is needed to design dietary patterns optimised for genome health maintenance. Because dietary choices vary between individuals, several interventional options are required, and nutritional supplements may be necessary to fill in gaps not met by food intake, or to elevate intake levels beyond dietary intake to influence key metabolic pathways.

As the field of nutritional genomics matures, healthcare practitioners will have the opportunity to make genetically individualised dietary recommendations aimed at improving human health and preventing disease (Milner 2008). It is possible to envisage preventive medicine being practised in ‘genome health clinics’, where clinicians would diagnose and nutritionally prevent the most fundamental initiating cause of developmental and degenerative disease — genome damage itself (Fenech 2008).

NUTRITIONAL SUPPLEMENTATION

Nutritional supplements have traditionally been recommended only in cases of established deficiency; however, scientific evidence is accumulating to suggest they may be an important extension of healthy eating and necessary to achieve a level of health and disease prevention beyond what is possible through diet alone. As a consequence, many conservative medical bodies are being forced to reassess their long-established views.

SAFETY ISSUES

Nutritional supplements can be viewed as medicines that have both subtherapeutic and
toxic doses, as well as the potential to induce adverse reactions and interactions.

**Adverse reactions and interactions**
The same subpopulations that have been identified to be at greater risk of adverse reactions to pharmaceutical medicines may be used for the safety assessment of nutritional supplements. These groups are the elderly, atopic patients, people with compromised liver or kidney function, anxiety or depression or serious illness, and those already taking many medicines. In clinical practice, the risk-versus-benefit decision of recommending a supplement or not is always considered and should be discussed with patients. In many cases, the risk of experiencing a minor adverse reaction that is short-lived and not serious may be an acceptable risk, whereas the risk of a more serious adverse reaction is not.

**Toxicity**
If a toxic dose is defined as one that is capable of causing death or a serious adverse reaction, then only a few nutrients are of special concern. In everyday practice, vitamins A, D and B₆ require special attention, as do the minerals iron, zinc, copper and selenium. Obviously, effects are dose-related and, in some cases, the doses are so large that they cannot practically be achieved in real life (see Appendix 6).

**Natural versus synthetic**
It is often asked whether natural and synthetic vitamins differ, and whether one is superior to and safer than the other. At this stage, very little research has been conducted to compare natural and synthetic forms, but some investigation into vitamin E has been undertaken.

The biological activity of vitamin E is based on the ‘fetal resorption–gestation’ method in rats. Using this test, the minimum amount of vitamin E required to sustain fetal growth in pregnant rats is determined. In the case of D-alpha tocopherol (RRR–alpha), which is considered to be the natural form, the highest activity is observed and therefore valued at 100%, whereas the biological activity of other vitamin E isomers has been estimated to be as low as 21% (Acuff et al 1998). Studies in humans have indicated that natural vitamin E has roughly twice the bioavailability of synthetic vitamin E; however, whether this also means that it has greater efficacy has yet to be clarified (Burton et al 1998).

It has also been speculated that the natural beta-carotene used in supplements, which is derived from algae and contains a mixture of carotenoids, may be safer and possibly more effective than synthetic beta-carotene.

**RATIONAL USE OF SUPPLEMENTS**
Nutritional supplements can never take the place of a balanced diet or provide all the health benefits of a whole food, but they can provide nutritional assistance and therapeutic effects in three different ways:

1. **Supplementation to correct a gross deficiency.** A patient presenting with clinical signs and symptoms of a nutritional deficiency will require nutritional counselling and possibly supplementation to quickly redress the situation (e.g. vitamin C supplementation and dietary education for patients with scurvy).

2. **Supplementation to address a sub-clinical deficiency.** A patient may not be presenting with overt clinical signs or symptoms of deficiency, but may benefit from an increased intake of certain nutrients or food components to prevent disease or reduce the incidence of other adverse outcomes (e.g. maternal folic acid supplementation and gestational health and development).

3. **Supplementation to address symptoms not associated with nutrient deficiency.** A patient presents with symptoms or disease unrelated to nutritional deficiency, but evidence indicates that nutritional supplementation can provide health benefits. This describes the use of nutritional supplements in pharmacological doses to achieve a specific health-related purpose, much like a therapeutic drug (e.g. high-dose riboflavin supplementation for migraine prophylaxis or coenzyme Q10 supplementation in hypertension). Many more examples are found in the monograph section of this book.

Table 3.3 provides a general guide for healthcare professionals when considering nutritional aspects of their patients’ situation and nutritional supplementation.
TABLE 3.3 THE RATIONAL USE OF NUTRITIONAL SUPPLEMENTS

- Be informed and seek out unbiased information — do not rely on label claims, product information manuals or other commercial sources of information alone.
- Know the common nutrient deficiency signs and symptoms.
- Know the RDIs and where relevant suggested dietary targets.
- Know the benefits and risks of nutrients at levels beyond RDI and upper-limit levels (ULs) that increase the risk of adverse effects.
- Be able to detect inadequate dietary intakes or refer to a healthcare professional who can do so.
- Ensure that all healthcare professionals involved in a patient’s care remain informed of nutritional supplement use.
- Take care with children, the elderly and pregnant or lactating women.
- Take care when high-risk medicines are being taken.
- Take care with HIV, cancer and other serious illnesses.
- Know the manufacturer or supplier details.
- Store medicines appropriately.

REFERENCES

FSANZ (Food Standards Australia New Zealand). Food Standards Code, Standard 1.5.2 Available at: http://www.foodstandards.gov.au/code/Pages/default.aspx, 20/07/2014.
CHAPTER 4
INTRODUCTION TO AROMATHERAPY

The term ‘aromatherapy’ refers to the use of essential oils and is an aspect of phytotherapy (botanical medicine). Essential oils are volatile liquid substances extracted from plant material by a variety of methods. However, ‘aromatherapy’ is frequently associated with cosmetic products that often do not contain any essential oils, even though the term ‘aromatherapy’ is included on the labels and advertising material of such products. There are several definitions of aromatherapy. Hirsch, for example, defines it as ‘the use of odorants as inhalants to treat underlying medical or psychiatric symptoms’ (Hirsch 2001), but this definition does not mention essential oils or differentiate between essential and fragrant (synthetic) oils, which are not usually recommended for use in healthcare. In addition, for the administration method Hirsch refers only to inhalation. Thus, Hirsch’s definition does not accurately define aromatherapy nor does it describe the way it is practised. For the purposes of this chapter, aromatherapy is defined as follows:

*The controlled use of essential oils from named botanical sources using a variety of application (external) or administration (internal) methods to promote and support health and wellbeing using a patient-centred evidence based approach.*

Dunning 2005

In this context ‘controlled’ encompasses:

- quality use of essential oils (QUEO) (Dunning 2005), which is based on the principles of the Quality Use of Medicines (Department of Health and Aged Care 1999)
- qualifications and competence of practitioners
- accurate diagnosis
- appropriate selection of essential oils based on a thorough assessment, stating the botanical name of the plant and plant part from which the oil was extracted and evidence for use where possible, and the administration/application, dose and dose frequency method
- appropriate documentation, including adverse-event reporting when relevant, and monitoring the effects according to the aims of the treatment
- appropriate storage and handling of essential oils to reduce deterioration and oxidation and meet infection control and disposal standards
- regulatory standards, including scheduling, manufacturing and advertising processes.

HISTORICAL OVERVIEW

Use of essential oils is recorded in most ancient civilisations in healthcare, religion and cosmetics, and to enhance the environment. For example, the ancient Egyptians used them to embalm the dead as well as in healthcare. Almost all cultures used odorants, including plant oils, as preventive measures and to fumigate people and environments during illnesses, such as the plague. In the Middle East, Avicenna (AD 980–1037) is credited with developing the original steam distillation process for extracting essential oils. In the late 1800s, Chamerland undertook research into
the antiseptic properties of essential oils and in the 20th century Cavel, who studied the antiseptic properties of 35 essential oils in sewage cultures, extended Chamerland’s work.

A great deal of modern research concerns the relationship between odours and emotional states, cognitive performance (Jellinek 1998/99, Svoboda 2002, Van Toller & Dodd 1988) and stress management. It also focuses on the management of common health problems, such as upper respiratory tract infection (URTI) and acute and chronic pain, in a range of healthcare settings that include aged care, midwifery and acute care such as coronary care units. Often the research is conducted upon isolated chemical components of the essential oil, which does not reflect usual aromatherapy practice.

René Gattéfossé is credited with coining the term ‘aromatherapy’. After burning his hand in a laboratory fire, he immersed it in a vat of lavender essential oil, which reduced the pain, and his hand subsequently healed without scarring or infection. Gattéfossé went on to use essential oils in military hospitals in World War I. Essential oils also played a major role in wound care during World War II, where Dr Jean Valnet used them in military hospitals in Europe and IndoChina. Marguerite Maury is largely responsible for the popularity of essential oils in modern beauty care. She introduced aromatherapy into the UK in the 1960s, and her technique of using low doses of essential oils dispersed in a carrier oil and applied in a massage strongly influenced aromatherapy practice in the UK and Australia (Price & Price 1995). Research into the therapeutic application of essential oils is continuing in many countries on animal and human subjects.

AROMATHERAPY PRACTICE MODELS

There are three main aromatherapy practice models, which have implications for the administration/application method, dose, dose intervals and safety. Essential oils are often combined with other conventional and complementary therapies such as massage and acupressure.

MEDICAL AROMATHERAPY

This is also known as aromatic medicine or aromatology. It is used in France and increasingly in the UK, and there is growing interest in Australia. An education program encompassing the internal use of essential oils was recently approved by the Australian National Training Authority. Medical aromatherapy utilises the internal administration of essential oils via the oral, rectal and vaginal routes, as well as in dressings, ointments and fumigation. Only steam-distilled and expressed essential oils are used internally. In France prescribing for internal use is regulated and restricted to medically qualified doctors with the relevant training. A pharmacist often formulates the prescriptions. Aromatherapists may work under the direction of a doctor. In some other countries, other practitioners can prescribe essential oils if they have the relevant qualifications.

SUBTLE AROMATHERAPY OR AROMACOLOGY

This is the German model of practice, which largely uses inhalation to influence psychological and spiritual states.

POPULAR, OR TRADITIONAL, AROMATHERAPY

Largely based on the UK model, this involves inhalation and massage. Touch, an essential aspect of massage, has its own health benefits, and this model uses topical application in massage, gels, creams and lotions, as well as inhalation for physical, psychological and spiritual effects. There are two subgroups: therapeutic aromatherapy, which is used in healthcare, and cosmetic or beauty care aromatherapy. Australian aromatherapists largely follow the UK model, but some incorporate aspects of all three models.

All three models use essential oils as the main medicinal substance. Essential oils are rarely used undiluted, but rather are incorporated into various carrier substances, depending on the administration/application route. Most aromatherapists formulate blends for individual patients, but fixed-formulation blends are available: for example, massage blends for pain relief. Aromatherapy is very popular with the general public and self-prescribing by following the directions in self-care books, magazine articles and short education courses is common. In Australia some health insurance funds reimburse the costs of aromatherapy treatments, provided the aromatherapist is qualified through an approved training facility.
ESSENTIAL OILS
CHEMISTRY

Essential oils are secondary plant metabolites and are complex chemical compounds that have a different composition from the herb extract of the same plant. Essential oils are stored in specific secretory structures in leaves, twigs, seeds, petals, bark and roots, often with resins and gums in oil cells, sacs, resin canals, ducts and hairs, and are extracted from these structures by steam distillation, expression, enfleurage, solvent extraction, maceration and more recently supercritical carbon dioxide extraction, depending on the plant source (Guba 2002, Price & Price 1995). More than 3000 odour molecules have been identified.

Chemical variations are common in plants of the same genus and these are known as chemotypes. The best known chemotypes occur in the essential oils of Thymus vulgaris (thyme), Rosmarinus officinalis (rosemary), Ocimum basilicum (basil) and Melaleuca alternifolia (tea tree). Growing conditions, harvesting, storage and handling are known to affect the chemical composition of essential oils (Guba 2004, Price & Price 1995). Common phytochemicals in essential oils are terpenes, sesquiterpenes, alcohols, phenols, aldehydes, ketones, esters, acids, phenolic ethers, oxides, lactones and coumarins (Bowles 2003, Clarke 2002). It is necessary to understand the chemical composition of essential oils in order to understand their application in healthcare and the safety aspects associated with their use.

Of the many chemicals present, the alcohols, lactones, phenols and sesquiterpenes are considered to have a major impact on the odour of the oil and are of particular significance in the cosmetic and perfumery applications of aromatherapy. Of these chemicals, alcohols are considered to be among the most important for therapeutic effect and pleasant fragrance. They often have antimicrobial properties and low toxicity, and are described as warming, uplifting and good general tonics. Two examples of alcohols found in essential oils are:
- linalool, found in the essential oils of lemon, rosemary, sage, thyme and mandarin, and which has anaesthetic, antiseptic and sedative effects
- terpineol found in the essential oils of frankincense and tea tree, and which has antiseptic activity.

The sesquiterpenes consist of three isoprene units and make up the largest group of terpenes found in the plant world. They tend to have strong odours and a variety of pharmacological effects. Two examples of sesquiterpenes found in essential oils are:
- caryophyllene, found in oil of cloves, eucalyptus, ginger, lavender, marjoram, sage, thyme, ylang ylang and valerian. It has a strong spicy, woody odour and anti-inflammatory, antispasmodic, antibacterial, fungicidal and sedative effects.
- chamazulene, found in German chamomile, which gives it the characteristic blue colour. It has analgesic, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, antiseptic and antipyretic effects.

Optical isomerism also influences the odour of a substance, so two different oils containing the same specific chemical may have different odours because the chemicals are stereoisomers. For example, d-limonene found in citrus oils, pine leaves and peppermint has a citrus odour, whereas its stereoisomer l-limonene has a turpentine-like odour and is found in citronella and lemon verbena.

Although the pharmacological effects of many of the constituents found in essential oils have not yet been fully investigated, a few that have been investigated are notable for their significant activity. For example, eugenol is a phenol found in cinnamon, oil of cloves and ylang ylang, giving the oils a spicy, pungent odour and significant antimicrobial activity. Cinnamaldehyde, chiefly found in cinnamon oil, has also been well investigated. It has antispasmodic, antimicrobial and fungicidal activities and is described as having a warm, spicy and balsamic odour.

Most of the essential oils produced are used in the food, cosmetic and, to a lesser extent, medicine industries, where strict composition standards ensure products meet relevant standards. Organisations such as the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO), Research Institute for Fragrance Materials (RIFM), International Fragrance Association (IFRA) and Association Française de Normalisation (AFNOR) have developed composition
standards for many essential oil products used in the food and perfume industries, and this is an important aspect of quality control. The ISO and AFNOR standards are often accepted as the most reliable indicators of quality.

The need to achieve compositional consistency has led some manufacturers to artificially manipulate chemical composition, using adulteration, substitution and rectification, to ensure essential oils meet the standard and to reduce the cost of expensive oils such as rose and jasmine. Plant conservation issues have also affected aromatherapy practice: for example, the sale of essential oils from some endangered species is banned in Europe. In some cases synthetic products have been developed, which may increase the potential to cause adverse events and bring aromatherapy into disrepute.

The European Federation of Essential Oils was formed in 2002 to increase awareness of the need for sustainable harvesting to benefit both local communities and aromatherapy, as well as to conserve endangered plants.

Analytical techniques such as gas chromatography, mass spectrometry, infrared spectroscopy, optical rotation and refractive index are used to assess the composition and purity of essential oils. Frequently mass spectrometry and infrared spectroscopy are considered together. The analytical information, together with other safety information, is detailed in material safety data sheets, which are available from essential oil suppliers and manufacturers. More recently, the cosmetic industry has begun to examine the peroxide value (POV) of both essential and fixed vegetable oil carrier oils. POV is an indicator of the potential of an essential oil to cause skin irritation and sensitivity (Wabner 2002). In addition, the physical appearance (colour and consistency) and odour of the oil are important aspects of quality.

Currently, there is no standard for ‘therapeutic-grade essential oils’ (Guba 2004). However, some suppliers undertake independent quality-control tests to ensure essential oils meet aromatherapy requirements and to guarantee that their essential oils are:

- • 100% pure, which means they are not adulterated in any way
- • 100% natural, which means they are made from plant material and do not contain any synthetic substances
- • 100% complete, which means they are single-distilled and have not had any chemical constituents removed or added.

In Australia most essential oils are listed in schedule 14 of the medicines scheduling system of the Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA). However, TGA listing does not necessarily indicate benefit or efficacy, but does indicate that the risks associated with listed products are low. Manufacturers are not permitted to make therapeutic claims for listed products.

Aromatherapists prefer to use the entire essential oils rather than isolated compounds or synthetic oils, because the chemicals present in individual essential oils and blends have synergistic and quenching properties that enhance the beneficial effects and reduce unwanted effects. These beneficial interactions occur among the individual constituents within an oil and among the essential oils in a blend of oils (Clarke 2002, Price & Price 1995, Opdyke 1976). In most cases a blend of essential oils is used to suit the condition being treated, and the composition of the blend is modified according to the individual’s response in much the same way as herbal medicines are used.

Common application/administration methods and doses are shown in Table 4.2 at the end of this chapter. Recommended doses are based on a long history of traditional use and the recommendations of experts, rather than on dose-finding trials. A number of factors need to be considered when deciding on an application method, dose and dose interval, including:

- • the aromatherapy model being used
- • the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of the essential oils
- • the mode of administration/application
- • the patient’s age and gender, presenting health issues and medical history, including allergies
- • other conventional and herbal medicines being used
- • the qualifications of the practitioner.

Most aromatherapists do not recommend using fragrant oils for therapeutic purposes, although most accept they may have a role as environmental fragrances and may have psychological effects.
CARRIER SUBSTANCES
In most cases essential oils are dispersed in another substance known as a carrier. Carrier substances for massage are usually cold-pressed or fixed vegetable oils, such as sweet almond, grapeseed and macadamia nut oil, depending on the aims of treatment. In massage, the carrier oils primarily provide lubrication for the therapist’s hands to allow smooth movement over the skin and to enhance absorption of the essential oils; however, some fixed oils, such as those of calendula (*Calendula officinalis*) or St John’s wort (*Hypericum perforatum*), also have therapeutic properties.

Other carriers include honey, Aloe vera, shea and cocoa butter, and waxes, which are used for capsules, ointments and suppositories intended for internal use. Purified clays such as bentonite are also used as carriers for essential oils to be applied in compresses, poultices and face and body masks/packs in beauty care. Incipients (dispersants) are usually required if essential oils are added to water to keep them in solution because essential oils are generally insoluble in water.

HYDROSOLS
A hydrosol is the condensed water co-produced with the essential oil during steam distillation (*Catty 2001*). Each litre of hydrosol contains low doses of essential oils, between 0.05 and 0.02 mL, depending on the solubility of the constituents in the oil being distilled, the duration of the distillation process and the hydrophilic/lipophilic nature of the constituents. Therefore, the chemical profile is different from the essential oil obtained from the same distillation. Hydrosols can be used as carrier substances or prepared as tinctures, spritzers and compresses; frequently, they can also be drunk (*Catty 2001*).

PHARMACOKINETICS AND PHARMACODYNAMICS
Essential oils are absorbed, metabolised and excreted in a similar way to fat-soluble medicines (*Tisserand & Balacs 1995*). They have a short life span in the blood, from where they are distributed to muscle and adipose tissues over a longer period. They may bind to plasma proteins for transportation, and detoxification primarily occurs in the liver. The exact pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics depend on many factors, including the route of administration.

Research into the pharmacodynamics and pharmacokinetics of essential oils indicates that they are metabolised and excreted between 72 and 120 hours after administration/application depending on the:
- body size of the subject
- chemical composition of the carrier substance of the essential oil/s
- carrier substance
- application/administration route
- dose, dose form and dose interval
- individual’s health status.

Essential oils are absorbed through the skin, but the absorption rate of the various chemical components in a particular essential oil depends on a number of factors, including the size of the individual molecules, the percentage of essential oils in the blend, total dose applied, the area covered and the state of the circulation. *Jager et al* (1992) detected linalool and linalyl acetate (components of lavender) in the blood at 5 minutes after a 10-minute abdominal massage using 2% *Lavandula angustifolia* in peanut oil.

Likewise, salicylate was detected in subcutaneous tissue within 30 minutes and for up to 60 minutes after the application of 20% methyl salicylate to the forearm (*Cross et al 1997*). Larger molecules, such as the coumarins, take up to 1 hour to penetrate (*Ford et al 2001*). Covering the area after applying the essential oils enhances absorption. Absorption is usually rapid from the rectal and buccal mucosa. Gastrointestinal factors such as diarrhoea and vomiting can affect absorption of oral doses.

Research is currently underway to ascertain whether essential oils enhance the absorption of topically applied medicines. Components such as limonene, 1,8-cineole and nerolidol enhance the penetration of both hydrophilic and lipophilic substances (*Cornwall et al 1996, Duke 1998*). Such research suggests topical application of essential oils may be contraindicated or caution required if conventional topical medicines such as anti-anginal agents, nicotine patches or hormone replacement therapy (HRT) are used at the same time.
SAFE USE
Safe use of essential oils is a complex topic that includes similar issues to those concerning herbal medicine safety. It is largely based on the long history of safe traditional use, case reports and animal studies to determine lethal doses (e.g. LD₅₀). The lethal dose (LD) may not provide useful information about topical applications. Even less is known about effective doses (ED) or the effects of organ disease, such as liver, renal or cardiac disease, on the metabolism and elimination of essential oils, although it is reasonable to expect these would be important considerations for internal dosing, as would the state of the skin for absorption of topical applications. Safety information can be found in the essential oil material data sheets, The complete German Commission E monographs (Blumenthal et al 1998) and the ESCOP monographs: The scientific foundation for herbal medicinal products (ESCOP 2003), as well as Poisons Information Centres (see Appendix 3).

Common potential risks are:
- skin, eye and mucous membrane irritation to the person using the oils and people in the vicinity (this is also an occupational hazard for practitioners)
- phototoxicity
- local irritation
- allergy (regular use of the same essential oils increases the risk of cumulative effects and allergy)
- respiratory difficulties, asthma or migraines in susceptible individuals triggered by odours
- unwanted psychological effects (e.g. euphoria in people with dementia).

Essential oils that contain aldehydes, phenols and furocoumarins — especially citrus oils such as bergamot (Citrus bergamia) — are more likely to irritate the eyes, mucous membranes and skin, and cause sensitisation. Contact sensitisation related to monoterpene oxidation (Tisserand & Balacs 1995) is frequently the result of poor storage conditions (Burfield 2000). If a skin reaction occurs, the area should be blotted with tissue to remove or dilute the oils and a carrier substance applied and removed with tissue. The process may need to be repeated several times. Removing with soap and water may exacerbate the reaction (Bensouilah & Buck 2006). The reaction should be noted in the individual’s health history and an adverse event notification filed depending on its severity.

Cross-sensitisation to other essential oil components and foods has also been reported: for example, between Thai food and Cymbopogon flexuosus (East Indian lemongrass) (Bleaser et al 2002, Clarke 2002). Perfume and fragrant products found in candles, aerosols, incense and soaps are common irritants and often contain limonene, coumarin, geraniol and cinnamaldehyde (Harris 2005). Some also contain carcinogenic substances such as styrene or naphthalene, and some contain formaldehyde in amounts many times the safe limit, which is < 2 micrograms/m³ of air (Harris 2005).

Patch testing of susceptible individuals (e.g. those with atopy) is recommended. Allergy from inhaled essential oils is known to occur, but data about exposure levels are limited and many of the reports concern perfumes rather than essential oils (Burfield 2000). Cumulative effects can occur. Essential oils that are not commonly used in aromatherapy have been associated with cancer, neurotoxicity (ketones) and hepatotoxicity in large doses in animals, and these adverse events are most likely to occur with internal use (Tisserand & Balacs 1995).

Potentially carcinogenic essential oils
There is no evidence that essential oils cause cancer in humans, although some constituents are potentially carcinogenic, particularly safrole, iso-safrole, oestagole, methyl chavicol, methyl eugenol, elemicin, asarone and d-limonene (Tisserand & Balacs 1995). High doses and prolonged use of essential oils containing these constituents should be avoided; however, most of these are not commonly used in aromatherapy.

Use in pregnancy
Essential oils are widely used in midwifery units in Australia, the UK and USA. Women use them largely to manage backache, nausea, discomfort from varicose veins, prevent or reduce stretch marks and reduce perineal discomfort. Essential oil massages are often used in the last trimester to relieve backache and to aid relaxation and mental wellbeing. In Australia there is little internal use of aromatherapy oils; however, the practice is starting to attract interest. Internal use of essential oils should be undertaken with caution in pregnancy, as there are a number of
reports of adverse effects following oral ingestion or vaginal use. This may be because higher doses achieved with oral dosing are likely to reach the fetus, as the placenta is permeable to essential oils because of their small molecular size (< 500 molecular units). This does not necessarily represent a risk to the fetus, but the fetal liver may not be mature enough to detoxify the oils or their components. In contrast, there are no case reports of topically applied or inhaled essential oils causing harm, but there is also no definitive evidence confirming safety in the first 16 weeks of pregnancy. A low dose, ~2%, is therefore recommended for full body massage during pregnancy, based on expert opinion rather than definitive evidence.

Although there is good evidence that fetal organs and tissues are sensitive to different chemicals at different stages of development, no such data is available for essential oils (Tisserand & Balacs 1995). When deciding about the risks and benefits of using essential oils during pregnancy the woman’s medical history, obstetric history, weeks of gestation and current health need to be considered. Table 4.1 shows essential oils that should be used with caution, those that should be avoided throughout pregnancy and those generally considered safe to use. Taking a cautious view, aromatherapy experts recommend that essential oils with the potential to cause fetal damage be avoided throughout pregnancy. Essential oils containing sabinyl acetate and apiol represent the greatest risk to the fetus. Essential oils with a high proportion of antheol have mild oestrogenic effects, therefore internal use of these oils is not recommended. Many aromatherapists recommend emmenagogue essential oils be avoided, although there is little scientific evidence to indicate they cause adverse outcomes when used topically or inhaled.

Some of the current recommendations are based on contraindications for the herb extract; however, as has already been pointed out, essential oils and herbs may contain very different chemical components, even when they are derived from the same plant. Until more is known, caution is recommended.

### INTERACTIONS

It is difficult to determine whether interactions between conventional medicines, herbal medicines and essential oils occur. Most texts focus on interactions with conventional medicines, and there is little information about interactions with herbal medicines. Interactions between topically applied essential oils and medicines are most likely if they are both applied to the same local site. Only very small amounts are absorbed from topical application, so clinically significant interactions are unlikely, but the potential for interactions increases with internal use (see Table 4.2). The

| USE OF ESSENTIAL OILS DURING PREGNANCY |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| GENERALLY CONSIDERED SAFE | GENERALLY CONSIDERED SAFE TO USE EXTERNALLY | USE WITH CAUTION | AVOID, THESE CONTAIN CAMPHOR, APIOL, SABINYL ACETATE OR PINOCAMPHONE |
| Cardamom | Anise | Artemisia | Camphor |
| Roman and German chamomile | Fennel | Cangerana | Ho leaf |
| Clary sage | Lavandin | Cotton lavender | Hyssop |
| Coriander | Lavender spike | Oak moss | Indian dill |
| Geranium | Lavandula stoechas | Perilla | Juniperus pfitzeriana |
| Ginger | Rosemary | Rue | Parsley leaf |
| Lavender | Star anise | | Plectranthus |
| Neroli | Yarrow | | Spanish sage |
| Palmarosa | Mace | | Savin |
| Patchouli | | | |
### TABLE 4.2 COMMON APPLICATION METHODS, RECOMMENDED DOSES AND SAFETY TIPS FOR ESSENTIAL OILS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APPLICATION METHOD</th>
<th>DOSES (USING A STANDARD ESSENTIAL OIL DROPPER TOP)</th>
<th>SAFETY TIPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Massage</td>
<td><strong>Adults</strong>&lt;br&gt;The recommended dose is between 3.5% and 5% of an essential oil blend in a carrier oil. However, larger doses can be used safely (e.g. 15% in an aqueous cream, 10% in a gel). The dose also depends on the presenting problem (e.g. undiluted tea tree or lavender oil might be applied to an insect bite or a small burn, whereas lower doses would be used for chronic diseases).&lt;br&gt;&lt;br&gt;<strong>Children</strong>&lt;br&gt;Children &gt; 7 years and the elderly: 1–1.5%. Children 2–7 years: 0.5%.&lt;br&gt;&lt;br&gt;<strong>Babies</strong>&lt;br&gt;0–1 year: no essential oils. Approximately 25–30 mL of a carrier substance is needed for a full adult body massage, depending on size of the individual, skin condition and amount of body hair.</td>
<td>To avoid cumulative effects and reduce the likelihood of sensitivity developing over time, the same essential oils should not used for long periods. Essential oils containing aldehydes, phenols and furocoumarins, especially cinnamon (or cassia) and citrus oils such as bergamot (<em>Citrus bergamia</em>), are more likely to irritate the eyes, mucous membranes and skin, and cause sensitisation. Geranium, ginger, pine and citronella should be avoided by people with sensitive skin or a history of dermatitis. Essential oils are not recommended for use on babies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Bath</strong>&lt;br&gt;4–7 drops of essential oils added to a warm bath directly or first mixed in a carrier substance and agitated into the bath water.</td>
<td>Take care that bath water with oils is not ingested and does not enter eyes. The oil must be mixed into the water before the person gets into the bath, not left floating on the surface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Vaporiser</strong>&lt;br&gt;4–7 drops applied onto the surface of the water that is to be vaporised.</td>
<td>Keep vaporisers out of the reach of children and confused people who might drink from them. Poisoning has been reported in children drinking from vaporisers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>On a tissue, cotton ball, pillowcase or clothing</strong>&lt;br&gt;1–2 drops applied directly and inhaled from these items.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Steam inhalation</strong>&lt;br&gt;Fill a bowl with 2 cups of almost boiling water and add 2–4 drops of essential oils. The scented steam should be inhaled for 5–10 minutes. Low doses of essential oils should be used to reduce the risk of irritating the respiratory mucous membranes and the eyes, especially when the oils are highly volatile (i.e. top notes). Five drops of essential oil yields approximately 35 mg of essential oil from a nebuliser.</td>
<td>Take care with people who have asthma because some oils can exacerbate symptoms. High doses, and some essential oils such as eucalyptus, can irritate the eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Unscented lotions, creams or ointments</strong>&lt;br&gt;4–5 drops/60 mL of vehicle such as aqueous cream, white soft paraffin or vitamin E cream.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Gargle and mouth wash</strong>&lt;br&gt;2–3 drops in 30 mL of distilled or spring water; for children, 1 drop mixed in honey before adding to water. Hydrosols can be used as mouthwashes and gargles.</td>
<td>Not to be ingested orally.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APPLICATION METHOD</th>
<th>DOSES (USING A STANDARD ESSENTIAL OIL DROPPER TOP)</th>
<th>SAFETY TIPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room sprays and spritzers</td>
<td>8–10 drops in 500 mL of distilled water. Spritzers are useful when the person cannot be massaged (e.g. for herpes zoster 15–20 drops in 50 mL can be used to relieve pain and itch). Hydrosols can be used as spritzers.</td>
<td>Use glass bottles or stainless steel spray cans, not plastic containers. Do not spray into the eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poultice</td>
<td>2–3 drops in $\frac{1}{2}$ cup of chopped up solid or semi-solid medium, e.g. clay, oatmeal, linseeds, chopped comfrey. Hot water can be added to the mixture to make a paste, which is then spread onto a piece of gauze and covered with a second piece of gauze. Fold over the ends to secure the contents and apply warm to the affected area.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compress — hot or cold</td>
<td>Cold compresses are used when there is inflammation, swelling or headache; hot compresses for muscle aches and pains, menstrual pain or boils.</td>
<td>2–6 drops, depending on the size of the area to be covered by the compress: 2–3 drops for a finger; 5–6 drops for a knee. A soft piece of fabric (e.g. flannel, towelling) is sufficient for both types. Put 6–10 drops of essential oil into 0.5 L of water (ice-cold or hot) and place the fabric on top of the water. Squeeze the fabric to prevent it from dripping when lifted out; however, don’t allow the fabric to become too dry. Place the compress on the area to be treated and reapply when it has warmed or cooled to body temperature.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undiluted on the skin (tea tree, lavender)</td>
<td>1–2 drops onto a cotton bud and applied directly to the affected area.</td>
<td>Essential oils should not be applied directly to the skin unless under the direction of an aromatherapist. Some low-irritant essential oils, such as lavender and rosewood, are generally safe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral, buccal (not generally used in Australia or New Zealand)</td>
<td>30 mg/dose for adults in a gel, capsule or lozenge. <em>Acute conditions</em> 60 mg three times daily for 3 days. <em>Chronic conditions</em> 30–45 mg three times daily for 15 days.</td>
<td>Essential oils should be used orally only under the direction of an aromatherapist qualified in this method of use. Many essential oils irritate mucous membranes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectal suppositories (not generally used in Australia or New Zealand)</td>
<td>Adults 150–450 mg/day three times daily for 3 days. <em>Chronic conditions</em> 150 mg/day for 15 days.</td>
<td>Essential oils should be used only under the direction of an aromatherapist qualified in this method of use. Many essential oils irritate mucous membranes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaginal suppositories (not generally used in Australia or New Zealand)</td>
<td>150 mg on 1 g suppository. 1–5% with an excipient in a douche. Up to 10% in a carrier substance on tampons.</td>
<td>Essential oils should be used only under the direction of an aromatherapist qualified in this method of use. Many essential oils irritate mucous membranes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
exact mechanism of actual or potential interactions is difficult to define. Most are theoretical, largely based on animal studies, and most are not thoroughly researched.

**SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

- Most available essential oils are considered safe and present few risks when used appropriately.
- Most essential oils should not be applied undiluted to the skin.
- Susceptible individuals, such as those with a history of allergies or eczema, can develop a sensitivity to any essential oil.
- The risk of serious adverse events is higher with internal administration methods, especially oral.
- Essential oils containing aldehydes and phenols are more likely to cause allergic reactions. Patch testing before using essential oils for the first time may be indicated, especially in at-risk individuals.
- Using the same essential oils for long periods may lead to cumulative effects and cause sensitivity after a period of time. After 3 weeks of use, cessation for at least 24 hours is recommended.
- Although there is not any quality evidence to support recommendations for the use of essential oils in certain groups of people, traditional precautions and contraindications concerning pregnancy and lactation, epilepsy, asthma, people with alcohol or other addictions, certain age groups and disease states should be considered.
- Use traditional doses and dose intervals. Most aromatherapists use low doses, although effective therapeutic doses and dose ranges for specific situations are unclear.
- Some essential oils are not used in aromatherapy because of their known toxicity: for example, wormwood, rue, camphor, bitter almond and sassafras. Oil of wintergreen is sometimes on the exclusion list, but if it is used appropriately, it is an effective analgesic in a massage blend for muscular aches and arthritic pain.
- Essential oils must be appropriately stored and kept out of the reach of children, the cognitively impaired or suicidal patients to avoid inadvertent or deliberate overdose. Vaporisers should also be placed out of reach.
- Essential oils are highly flammable. Products must be used and disposed of appropriately to reduce the fire risk.
- Educating patients who self-apply essential oils is an important aspect of safe use.

For safety and medicolegal reasons healthcare professionals and the general public are advised to buy essential oils from reputable sources that label and store their products correctly. Labels are an important source of information and should contain the following information:

- botanical name, species, and if relevant the chemotype of the plant from which the oil was extracted or, in the case of a blend, for all the oils in the blend
- part or parts of the plant from which the essential oil was extracted
- country where the plants were grown (country of origin)
- extraction method
- statement of purity (however, this is not a regulatory requirement and not all suppliers make such statements)
- batch number, so that the batch can be identified if an adverse event occurs to determine whether the reaction was idiosyncratic or occurred because of the manufacturing process
- expiry date and storage precautions
- in some cases, specific warnings: for example, phototoxicity risk in Australia
- supplier details.

**STORAGE**

Essential oils are volatile and readily evaporate, so they should be stored in airtight amber glass bottles to protect them from light and air. Plastic is usually avoided because there can be transference of chemicals in the oil to the plastic and vice versa, thereby changing the chemical composition of the oil. Essential oils should also be stored in a cool place, preferably away from direct sunlight. Some aromatherapists store oils in a refrigerator. The 'top notes' of the oil have the lowest boiling points and are highly volatile and evaporate first, thereby altering the aroma of the oil. In general, oils
should be used within 1 year of opening; however, their shelf-life can be extended with careful use and storage.

AROMATHERAPY IN PRACTICE

The level of evidence for aromatherapy use is an important aspect given the current focus on evidence-based care. The level of evidence is judged according to the quality of the research, considering factors such as statistical power, study design, accuracy of the measurements and the outcomes. Overall, most clinical aromatherapy research is low-level evidence (Dana-Farber Cancer Institute 2008). In addition, individual practice varies considerably, which means that the management of specific health conditions varies considerably.

As with all clinical practice, it is important to be clear about the goals of treatment and decide what treatment/s and forms of administration will achieve those goals. For aromatherapy, this means choosing the correct essential oils and whether the topical and/or inhaled method of administration is suitable. Psychological, physical and practical requirements are also assessed, together with relevant safety information. When using oils topically in children, the elderly or allergic people, it is recommended that a skin test be performed first. One drop of oil applied with a cotton ball or swab to the inside of the elbow or wrist is usually sufficient. The application area should be marked and left unwashed for 24 hours. If a reaction occurs (redness and itch) the offending oil should be avoided. See Table 4.2 (p. 50) for more information about using oils in practice.

CHOOSING AN AROMATHERAPIST

Aromatherapy may be particularly beneficial for managing stress and inducing relaxation. It can also be useful in skin care, for managing topical fungal and bacterial infections, to relieve respiratory symptoms, as topical analgesia, and to reduce muscle spasm, especially when combined with massage. A key aspect of safe, effective aromatherapy treatment is choosing a knowledgeable and competent aromatherapist.

EDUCATION AND COMPETENCE

The aromatherapist should belong to a professional association, such as the International Federation of Aromatherapists (IFA) or the Australian Aromatic Medicine Association (AAMA), that has defined membership criteria, including the expectation that the aromatherapy training curriculum was approved by the Australian National Training Authority and/or state training authorities, whose competencies are consistent with national competency standards for aromatherapy, continuing professional development requirements and a code of professional conduct. These associations maintain membership lists and can be accessed via the telephone directory or their respective websites. Aromatherapists in Australia are not regulated, but membership of such an association suggests self-regulatory processes are in place. Undertaking short courses is adequate for self-care, but not for the therapeutic application of essential oils, even by healthcare professionals such as doctors and nurses.

PROFESSIONAL COURTESY

The aromatherapist should communicate with other relevant healthcare providers, document the care provided, including monitoring outcomes and adverse events, provide advice that includes the benefits and risks of using essential oils and recommend that people with serious conditions seek medical advice.

Safety

The aromatherapist should adhere to relevant occupational health and safety standards and other relevant Acts and regulations: although aromatherapists are not regulated, regulations apply to the products they use and their premises.

Clarity of outcome

The aromatherapist should be clear about what aromatherapy can offer and their personal competencies.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 5
INTRODUCTION TO FOOD AS MEDICINE

Let food be your medicine and medicine be your food.

(Hippocrates)

The maxim coined by Hippocrates, the father of Western medicine, around the 5th century BC, is as true today as it was then. Hippocrates observed that certain foods had the potential to both prevent and treat disease, and recognised the effects of nutritional deficiencies and excesses on health (Jensen 1993). Hippocrates’ axiom went largely ignored in the evolution of Western medicine, but the pioneering work of researchers such as Linus Pauling and Victor Rocine in the early 20th century created a renewed interest in the therapeutic value of food and its influence, both positive and negative, on health.

Over the last 100 years a number of significant developments have been made in nutritional science, including:

- identifying essential nutrients and documenting their associated biochemical pathways
- defining nutrient reference values and RDIs required to prevent nutritional deficiencies
- establishing dietary guidelines that include increasing consumption of fruits, vegetables and fibre, and reducing fat
- developing food guides, such as food pyramids, that can be used for daily meal planning.

Nutritional science has also led to the recognition that diet plays a major role in the chronic diseases that cause the bulk of morbidity and mortality in modern societies, such as heart disease, diabetes, hypertension and cancer.

Together with an increasing understanding of the potential benefits and negative consequences of food choices comes an unprecedented availability of different foods. Despite this, a problem of oversupply has arisen in developed countries and many Australians are consuming vast amounts of kilojoule-laden, yet nutrient-deficient, foods resulting in nutritional depletion and suboptimal nutrition. Largely as a result of this phenomenon, nutrition research has shifted from focusing exclusively on deficiency states to investigating the association between disease prevention, healthy ageing and adequate dietary intake in order to optimise quality of life and long-term health (Kennedy 2006).

FUNCTIONAL FOODS

The foods and substances we ingest affect us even at the most basic cellular level. In recent years scientists have discovered many thousands of previously unidentified substances in food and described their therapeutic actions. Currently around 50,000 (of a likely 200,000 substances) have been identified and described, yet
for the most part we know very little about their functions (Hounsome 2008). These substances are known as phytonutrients, secondary metabolites, phytochemicals or a-nutrients.

Phytonutrients are generally classified according to their chemical structures, and major classes include phenolic and polyphenolic compounds (flavonoids, phenolic acids, lignins, anthocyanidins, catechins, isoflavones), terpenoids (carotenoids, tocopherols and tocotrienols, quinines, sterols), alkaloids (including saponins) and sulfur-containing compounds (glucosinolates, indoles, allylic sulfides) (Goldberg 2003). They impart colour, taste and smell, as well as possessing therapeutic properties such as antioxidant, anticarcinogenic, antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory and cholesterol lowering properties.

When plants are under stress they produce these chemicals to defend themselves against infection or predation. In the absence of synthetic pesticides and fertilisers organic farming practices encourage these endogenous plant defence mechanisms and therefore result in higher levels of many phytonutrients (Brandt et al 2011). An example is salicylic acid, a phenolic compound that acts as a signalling molecule when a plant is under attack. It is also the active compound in aspirin which exerts anti-inflammatory and anti-platelet effects (Baxter et al 2001).

A brief summary of some of the better known phytonutrients, their major actions and therapeutic uses is shown in Table 5.1. Although thousands of studies have already been conducted to identify phytonutrients in foods and understand their properties and influence on human health, much remains unknown.

In parallel with the advances in nutritional science, there has been growing consumer interest in food’s potential to have a positive impact on health and wellbeing, as well as in developments in food technology that allow foods to be produced, processed, preserved and fortified so as to maximise their nutritional values. This has led to changes in food-labelling laws that permit certain foods to make claims about health benefits, and has given rise to the development of functional foods.

The concept of a ‘functional’ food originated in Japan and is now being further developed, mainly in Japan, the United States and Europe. Functional foods are foods or dietary components that provide a health benefit that goes beyond their nutritional value, such as improving wellbeing and/or reducing the risk of disease. These may include traditional foods that have been shown to impart a positive biological effect or foods that have been modified to impart health benefits. Other terms that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS/PHYTONUTRIENT</th>
<th>MAIN FOOD SOURCES</th>
<th>MAIN ACTIONS</th>
<th>CLINICAL USE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-carotene</td>
<td>Carrots, sweet potatoes, spinach, pumpkin, apricots, rockmelon (cantaloupe)</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic Antioxidant</td>
<td>May reduce the risk of lung cancer in smokers May protect against UV radiation (Stahl &amp; Sies 2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein, zeaxanthin</td>
<td>Green leafy vegetables such as kale, chard, spinach Egg yolk</td>
<td>Antitumour (breast, colon)</td>
<td>May reduce the risk of macular degeneration and cataracts, cardiovascular disease and some cancers (Koushan et al 2013, Ribaya-Mercado &amp; Blumberg 2004)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene</td>
<td>Tomatoes cooked with oil Watermelon, guava, pink grapefruit, papaya</td>
<td>Antioxidant Anticarcinogenic (bladder, breast, cervix, prostate) Anti-inflammatory Hypocholesterolaemic</td>
<td>May reduce the risk of some cancers (especially prostate) and atherosclerosis (Bommareddy et al 2013, Bhuvaneswari &amp; Nagini 2005)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
### TABLE 5.1 EXAMPLES OF PHYTONUTRIENTS FOUND IN FUNCTIONAL FOODS AND THEIR MAIN ACTIONS AND USES (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS/PHYTONUTRIENT</th>
<th>MAIN FOOD SOURCES</th>
<th>MAIN ACTIONS</th>
<th>CLINICAL USE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thiols/dithiols</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha-lipoic acid</td>
<td>Potato, spinach, spinach, potato, liver</td>
<td>Hypoglycaemic</td>
<td>May assist in the prevention of diabetes complications and cardiovascular disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hypotensive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>May assist in the prevention of diabetic complications and cardiovascular disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutathione (thiol)</td>
<td>Garlic, fruits, vegetables, meat (found in all cells of plants and animals)</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td>Important endogenous antioxidant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chemoprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phenolic compounds (including flavonoids)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenolic acids</td>
<td>Most fruits and vegetables, especially the cruciferous family (cabbage family), tomatoes, berries</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inhibits platelet activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyphenols</td>
<td>Fruits and vegetables, wine, green tea, extra virgin olive oil, dark chocolate and other cocoa products</td>
<td>Anti-allergenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthocyanins</td>
<td>Fruits and berries</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td>May reduce the risk of cancer and cardiovascular disease (Domitrovic 2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(anthocyanins,</td>
<td></td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glycosides, and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their aglycons,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anthocyanidins)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caffeic acid</td>
<td>Fruits (apples, pears, citrus fruits), some grains and vegetables</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td>May contribute to maintenance of healthy vision and cardiovascular health (Jiang et al 2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(phenolic acid)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-hypertensive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antithrombotic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antitumour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antiviral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellagic acid</td>
<td>Fruits, nuts and vegetables (e.g. pomegranate, strawberries, raspberries, grape seeds, onions)</td>
<td>Aldose reductase inhibitor (Duke 2003)</td>
<td>Counteracts synthetic and naturally occurring carcinogens (Stoner &amp; Mukhtar 1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(polyphenol)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td>(cervix, colon, oesophagus, mouth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proanthocyanidins</td>
<td>Fruits (e.g. apples, pears, grape seeds and peaches), vegetables, nuts, beans (e.g. cocoa), seeds, flowers and bark (e.g. pine), tea, cocoa, chocolate</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td>May stabilise capillary walls and enhance wound healing May assist in the treatment of pancreatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(catechin and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>epicatechin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 5.1 EXAMPLES OF PHYTONUTRIENTS FOUND IN FUNCTIONAL FOODS AND THEIR MAIN ACTIONS AND USES (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS/PHYTONUTRIENT</th>
<th>MAIN FOOD SOURCES</th>
<th>MAIN ACTIONS</th>
<th>CLINICAL USE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quercetin</strong></td>
<td>Onions, beans</td>
<td>Anti-allergic</td>
<td>May assist in the treatment of allergies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red wine</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td>Prevention of diabetic complications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Green tea, black tea</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Apples, berries</td>
<td>Antiviral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antifungal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antithrombotic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diphenols (phyto-oestrogens)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isoflavones (daidzein, genistein, glycitein)</td>
<td>Soybeans and soy-based products</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic (breast) (Duke 2003)</td>
<td>May ameliorate menopausal symptoms and contribute to the maintenance of bone and cardiovascular health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Phyto-oestrogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lignans</strong></td>
<td>Flax/linseed</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td>May contribute to maintenance of cardiovascular and immune function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some legumes and grains</td>
<td>Antioxidant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Phyto-oestrogenic</td>
<td>May reduce risk of breast and prostate cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ISOTHIOCYANATES</strong></td>
<td>Broccoli (especially young), broccoli sprouts, cauliflower, cabbage, kale, horseradish</td>
<td>Anti-apoptotic</td>
<td>May reduce the risk of cancer and degeneration of the nervous system (Tarozzi et al 2013, Fimognari et al 2005, Gills et al 2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDOLES</strong></td>
<td>Cabbage, broccoli, Brussels sprouts, Chinese cabbage, Chinese greens, kale</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td>May induce the metabolism of a cancer-preventive form of oestrogen and reduce the risk of cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FATTY ACIDS</strong></td>
<td>Dairy products and cooked meats</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td>May assist with fat loss and cardiovascular disease prevention (Dilzer &amp; Park 2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjugated linoleic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono-unsaturated fatty acids</td>
<td>Olives, olive oil Canola oil</td>
<td>Anti-atherogenic</td>
<td>May reduce risk of cardiovascular disease and diabetes (Schwingshackl &amp; Hoffmann 2012, Eddey 2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omega-3 PUFAs (ALA, DHA, EPA)</td>
<td>Fish (deep sea/cold water) Flax/linseed, walnuts</td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td>May reduce risk of cardiovascular disease (Lorente-Cebrián et al 2013, Eddey 2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Antihypertensive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-arrhythmic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cardioprotective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| (Continued)
### TABLE 5.1 EXAMPLES OF PHYTONUTRIENTS FOUND IN FUNCTIONAL FOODS AND THEIR MAIN ACTIONS AND USES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS/PHYTONUTRIENT</th>
<th>MAIN FOOD SOURCES</th>
<th>MAIN ACTIONS</th>
<th>CLINICAL USE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dietary fibre</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-glucan</td>
<td>Oat bran, wholegrain oats</td>
<td>Antihypertensive Hypocholesterolaemic</td>
<td>May reduce risk of cardiovascular disease, reduces GI of meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insoluble fibre</td>
<td>Wheat bran, celery, dried beans</td>
<td>Anticarcinogenic</td>
<td>May contribute to the maintenance of a healthy digestive tract, may reduce the risk of colon, lung, breast, cervical cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soluble fibre</td>
<td>Psyllium seed husk, pectin, oat bran, broccoli</td>
<td>Hypocholesterolaemic Modulates bowel function</td>
<td>May lower cholesterol and reduce risk of cardiovascular disease, may improve gastrointestinal health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prebiotics/probiotics</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inulin, oligofructose</td>
<td>Globe artichoke, garlic, onions, leeks, asparagus, Whole grains Some fruits Honey</td>
<td>Anti-inflammatory Modulates immune function Prebiotic</td>
<td>Stimulates colonic production of short-chain fatty acids and favours the growth of lactobacilli and/or bifidobacteria (Guarner 2005), increases calcium and magnesium absorption, influences blood glucose levels and reduces the levels of cholesterol and serum lipids (Lopez-Molina et al 2005)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactobacilli/ bifidobacteria</td>
<td>Yoghurt; some other fermented foods</td>
<td>Probiotic</td>
<td>May reduce diarrhoea (Guandalini 2011), improve gastrointestinal health and systemic immunity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


See respective monographs for more detail.

are used for functional foods are super foods, designer foods, fortified foods, nutraceuticals, cosmeceuticals, medifoods, vitalfoods and Foods for Specified Health Use (FOSHU) (Ashwell 2002).

Many commonly prescribed ‘herbal medicines’ can also be considered as functional foods and are commonly used for both medicinal and culinary purposes. Many of these foods and food derivatives are included in the monographs in this book: for example, celery seed, chamomile, cloves, cranberry, dandelion, fenugreek, fish oils, garlic, ginger, green tea, honey, horseradish, lemon balm, licorice, linseeds, noni, oats, peppermint, probiotics, raspberry, rosemary, sage, stinging nettle, thyme and turmeric.

There is some disagreement regarding how functional foods should be defined and the standards of scientific evidence required to support health claims (Verschuren 2002). Functional foods can be foods in which a component has been enhanced through special growing conditions or foods in which a component has been added, removed, modified or had its bioavailability increased. Functional foods cannot be marketed as medicines because they cannot make therapeutic claims for treating specific diseases; rather, they are designed to be marketed to healthy consumers to enhance health and
SUPPLEMENTS VERSUS FOOD

Food, not nutrients, is the fundamental unit in nutrition.

Jacobs & Tapsell 2007

The actions of a whole food cannot be completely understood by studying its various components in isolation, because phytonutrients often interact with one another and, when used together, can produce different outcomes from those predicted for an isolated compound. Thus supplementation with individual food components may produce different effects from those produced by the consumption of the whole food. For example, epidemiological studies supporting the use of foods containing beta-carotene for the prevention of lung cancer in smokers have not been supported by clinical trials of supplementation with synthetic beta-carotene (Ziegler et al. 1996) (see Monographs: Beta-carotene). Similarly, there is strong evidence to suggest that eating a variety of fibre-rich foods is beneficial in the prevention and management of diabetes; however, studies using fibre supplements have produced contradictory results (Venn & Mann 2004).

The results of these and other studies substantiate the value of ‘whole foods’ as medicine and suggest that epidemiological studies supporting the use of certain foods cannot necessarily be extrapolated to confirm the benefits of isolated supplementary nutrients. Furthermore, the practice of refining foods and then enriching them with synthetic versions of some of the lost nutrients cannot be deemed to be the equivalent of the whole food.

Nutritional supplements may prove lifesaving in an overt deficiency state and may enhance the individual’s nutritional status when dietary intake is insufficient to meet physiological requirements, such as during periods of increased biological demand. Fundamentally the body uses nutrients as building blocks to create the tissues and structures of the body, and as chemicals in reactions that drive the functions of the body. Problems may arise when the availability of these nutrients is insufficient to meet the structural and functional demands of the body.

Some of the isolated nutritional supplements discussed in this book are used at doses unattainable through dietary modification alone. In
such cases they are not only used to correct a deficiency/insufficiency state, but may also have direct pharmacological activity. However, such studies often elicit contradictory results and this may be because the prime benefit of nutrients is to ensure that the biological demands are met and actual pharmacological benefits may be less common. An individual’s nutritional status is dependent upon supply and demand. Supply will be affected not only by the intake of nutrients from the diet (or supplementary sources), but also on how well those nutrients are absorbed. This is dependent on a number of factors including digestive function and the structural form of the nutrient. Demands may vary between individuals and during times of increased physiological need, such as infection or stress, and may also be compounded by losses that occur as a result of factors, including medication use, bleeding, etc. As such individuals will vary in their nutritional requirements, so studies that do not assess baseline nutritional status may fail to recognise that participants who commence a study with depleted stores of the nutrient/s in question may respond while others who may be depleted in other nutrients may not respond. Just as with building materials or chemicals in a laboratory, having excess stockpiles of select individual nutrients doesn’t make up for a lack of others.

A further issue is that nutrients do not generally work in isolation and require cofactors. Some nutritional supplements may not produce the desired or anticipated effect because of the absence of significant but as yet unidentified cofactors that are important for bioavailability, pharmacological activity or safety of the individual constituent. While a nutritional supplement will contain a limited number of nutrients at specific doses it may not contain, or the individual taking it may not be replete in, other nutrients required as cofactors. An individual food will contain many different nutrients and phytonutrients, those that science has identified and others that science has yet to identify. These individual foods will generally also be consumed in combination with other foods as part of a whole meal and a whole diet. As a result, the likelihood that an individual will attain the specific nutrients they require is increased with the intake of a varied whole food diet.

**INDIVIDUALISING FOOD**

An old Chinese proverb states ‘Whatsoever was the father of disease, an ill diet was the mother’. Traditional medicine systems such as traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) and Ayurvedic medicine continue to understand and practise using food as medicine, and view food within a conceptual framework that includes the energetic value of food in addition to its physical qualities. An assessment of different foods may be based on the food’s ‘vitality’ or ‘life force’, otherwise known as ‘chi’ in TCM and ‘prana’ in Ayurvedic medicine. The type of food and its biological, nutritional and sensory properties, together with the many agricultural practices, production processes and preparation methods, make a contribution to this force. Every step in the process of producing a food may potentially affect the energetic value, net nutritional content and overall therapeutic benefits.

In traditional medicine systems, foods may be classified as having properties such as ‘heating’, ‘cooling’, ‘drying’ or ‘moistening’, and may be considered to be energetically aligned with one or more of five phases of transformation, or ‘elements’, that correspond to the different organ systems and tissues within the body, as well as to the different emotions, seasons, colours and so on. These properties, as well as constitutional typing of the patient, may be used to make a sophisticated assessment of an individual and to design dietary prescriptions based on an individual’s constitution, propensities for disease development and/or responses to different foods. Thus traditional medicine systems can be seen to practise ‘nutriphenomics’, whereby a food is used as a medicine based on a person’s phenotype.

Biomedical science has not matched the same degree of sophistication in individualising diet as traditional medicines; however, it is moving in this direction. Just as in pharmaceutical medicine the emerging science of pharmacogenomics promises to provide drugs best suited to a person’s genetic makeup, the emerging science of nutrigenomics promises to deliver an understanding of how different nutrients affect genes to cause specific conditions, and the ability to design foods and dietary recommendations based on an assessment of an individual’s genotype (see also Chapter 3). The success of such developments and their impact
in human health, however, are yet to be determined.

**FOOD QUALITY ISSUES**

The health benefits of different foods must be considered in relation to the many agricultural farming practices and production processes that are involved. As soon as produce is picked or an animal is killed, it starts to decompose and lose nutritional value. When a ripe organic apple is picked in season directly from the tree and eaten immediately its nutritional value is at its maximum. How does this compare to the apple grown in nutritionally depleted soil, using pesticides and synthetic fertilisers, out of season, picked before ripening and kept in cold storage to extend its shelf life, potentially for months, even years?

Every step in the process, from paddock to plate and beyond, may potentially affect the nutrients, as well as the ‘energetic’ quality and therapeutic benefits of the food. Thus food quality can be affected by multiple factors:

- farming conditions, which include genetic variety (seed/animal species), chemical exposure (e.g. pesticides, fertilisers), maturity at harvest, location, water availability, soil composition, animal care and feeding practices, climate, seasons, aspect and sunlight exposure
- transport and handling conditions
- processing, such as milling, refining and enriching
- preservation methods, which may include chemical additives, cold storage, drying, salting, irradiation
- packaging methods and the conditions and length of storage
- meal preparation methods, such as cutting, crushing or tossing
- cooking methods, such as no cooking (i.e. food is raw), steaming, frying, microwaving
- how food is consumed, which includes duration of mastication, food combinations and the biochemical individuality of the person consuming the food (Gliszczynska-Swiglo et al 2005, Jeffery et al 2003, Podsedek 2005).

**PESTICIDE RESIDUES**

The creation of a global food industry and the emergence of agribusiness have led to the increasing use of pesticides in food production. At the same time there is growing worldwide public concern about the impact of these pesticides on human health. Currently, it is reasonable to expect that most animals on the planet have accumulated pesticide residues through water, air or the food chain and, although acute effects of pesticides are well documented, the chronic effects of pesticide exposure are more difficult to assess.

Given that the intended purpose of pesticides is to damage or kill living organisms, it is not surprising that there are many published studies attesting to a link between pesticide exposure and health risks. In a systematic review conducted for the Ontario College of General Physicians in 2004 (Sanborn et al 2004) a positive relationship was identified between exposure to pesticides and the development of many cancers (Bassil et al 2007); as well as the risk of genotoxic, immunotoxic, neurotoxic and reproductive effects; and an increased incidence of psychiatric and dermatological conditions (Sanborn 2007). The review was updated in 2012 with a focus on reproductive, neurodevelopmental, behavioural and respiratory health outcomes (Sanborn et al 2012). It highlighted specific concerns for elevated risk of preterm birth as well as birth defects, including hypospadias, neural tube defects and diaphragmatic hernia; and called for measures to reduce exposure of pregnant women to pesticides. It also found that prenatal pesticide exposure is consistently associated with measurable deficits in child neurodevelopment from impaired mental development in newborns, to attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and reduced IQ in older children. The review further highlighted multiple studies reporting associations between pesticide exposure and asthma, chronic obstructive lung diseases and reduced lung function. An earlier review, which focused on the effects of pesticides on children, indicated that pesticide residues have been implicated in causing reproductive problems, including miscarriages and spontaneous abortion, birth defects, childhood cancer and neurological, neurobehavioural and endocrine effects (Garry 2004).

Children appear to be particularly vulnerable to the effects of pesticides because they eat and drink more per kilogram of body weight than adults, and their diets are often rich in foods
that contain higher levels of pesticides, such as fresh fruits, vegetables and juices. It should be noted that such contaminants are often bio-accumulated in the fatty tissue of animals, and that concerns over pesticide exposure should not lead to the removal of nutrient-rich foods from the diet, but rather to minimising exposure by choosing organic foods whenever possible.

Children’s exposure to pesticides may also be increased through breast milk. This provides many immunological, physiological, nutritional and psychological advantages, but is nevertheless commonly contaminated with high levels of pesticides. For example, it has been found that serum concentrations of organochloride compounds are significantly higher ($P < 0.0001$) in breastfed infants than in bottle-fed infants (Lackmann et al 2004), and that an infant’s measured intake of organochlorines from breast milk may greatly exceed the adult acceptable daily intake (ADI) (Quinsey et al 1995, 1996). The fact that children born today have a longer life expectancy in which to develop diseases with long latency periods places them at further risk (Sanborn et al 2004). In addition, children have less developed detoxification pathways; for example, newborn infants have low levels of the enzymes carboxylesterase and paraoxonase-1 (PON-1), which detoxify certain pesticides (Chen et al 2003, Yang et al 2009) and in childhood there can be a reduced activity of PON-1, although the extent of this effect appears to vary depending on the genotype (Huen et al 2009). Serum PON-1 levels and activity also vary widely between different ethnic populations due to polymorphisms (Mohamed Ali & Chia 2008).

The dietary exposure of the Australian population to pesticides and other food contaminants was previously monitored every 2 years via the Australia Total Diet Survey (ATDS) conducted by Food Standards Australia New Zealand (FSANZ). The 23rd ATDS was released in November 2011. Pesticides were tested for the first time since the 20th ATDS, which was conducted in 2001 and published in early 2003. The survey examined dietary exposure to 214 agricultural and veterinary chemicals in 92 foods and beverages. This represented a wider range than the 88 pesticides and 65 foods previously surveyed. A total of 46 agricultural chemicals were detected in this study. Seven had dietary exposures exceeding 10% of the Acceptable Daily Intake (ADI) and estimated dietary exposures tended to be highest in 2–5-year-olds (FSANZ 2011, 2014). Other residue testing is also conducted on fresh produce in Australia (e.g. FreshTest and the National Residue Survey), but this is largely funded and directed by industry bodies.

Although safety assessments are conducted on pesticides and guidelines are set for maximum residue levels (MRLs), this does not necessarily guarantee food safety as numerous other factors need to be considered. Safety assessments usually examine only single chemicals at high doses and often only in animals, which may lead to a significant underestimation of the potential risk associated with the numerous mixtures of compounds that consumers are typically exposed to. The actual pesticide formulations used may be several hundred times more toxic than the active principle that has been tested (Mesnage et al 2014). The combined toxic effect of multiple chemicals is not necessarily predictable by adding up the toxic potential of each chemical; mixtures of chemicals can also interact to produce synergistic toxic effects (Laetz et al 2009). Thus it is possible that there may be greatly enhanced toxicity of these compounds when they are combined, and this is supported by research documenting reproductive, immune and nervous system effects not expected from the individual compounds acting alone (Boyd et al 1990, Porter et al 1993, 1999, Thiruchelvam et al 2000). Pregnant and lactating women require specific consideration to minimise exposure of the fetus or infant during critical periods of development and consistent research on the risks to children have led to calls to limit children’s exposures to pesticides as much as possible (Roberts & Karr 2012). A report for the American Academy of Pediatrics expressed concern about the subclinical effects of long-term, low-dose exposure and recommended ongoing research describing toxicological vulnerabilities and exposure factors across the life span to inform regulation and allow for appropriate interventions (AAP 2012).

**GENETIC MODIFICATION (TRANSGENIC FOODS)**

Conventional methods of selective breeding and cross-breeding have been used for
centuries to alter the genetic makeup of the foods we consume; for example, the wheat that we consume today is significantly different from the wheat consumed by our ancestors. However, these methods allow only for the selective enhancement of characteristics that already exist within a species or compatible species. In recent years transgenic technology, commonly (if not entirely accurately) known as ‘genetic engineering’, has been developed. This allows for the introduction of genetic material from unrelated species, which would not be possible using conventional methods. Transgenic crops have been grown commercially since the mid-1990s, but at present no livestock or fish have been commercially released for food or agricultural purposes.

While advocates maintain that there is the potential for biotechnology to have a positive impact on the nutritional properties of transgenic foods and to allow for their cultivation in areas where farming is difficult, it has been argued that most transgenic foods have so far produced greater benefits for producers than consumers. The Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations has expressed concerns that developments in biotechnology ‘have not sufficiently benefited smallholder farmers and producers and consumers’ (FAO 2014a).

As yet, the long-term safety implications of genetically modified organisms (GMOs) are unclear and most of the published studies have been conducted by biotechnology companies responsible for commercialising these products (Domingo & Gine Bordonaba 2011). In 2013 the FAO established the GM Foods Platform to share information on safety assessment of foods derived from recombinant-DNA plants (FAO 2014b). The long-term safety implications of genetic engineering, a self-regulated industry, are being hotly debated by activists and the public alike. Some of the issues under discussion focus on:

- the consequences of introducing into the food chain questionable genetic material that may produce unpredictable results
- the introduction of lectins, causing immunological effects, such as allergic reactions
- the use of bacteria and viruses to introduce foreign material into cells
- the use and potential spread of antibiotic-resistant genes
- the greater use of pesticides and herbicides with transgenic crops
- the contamination of non-transgenic crops with modified genes
- the use of terminator genes and prevention of seed-saving.

Consequently, many communities are divided as to whether transgenic foods should be allowed in their country. The prospect that transgenic crops could be used for mass medication and vaccination programs also raises concern in some circles. In reality, the ultimate benefits and detriments of genetic engineering are unlikely to be known for several generations.

A number of GM crops have been approved for sale in Australia and New Zealand: canola, corn, cotton/cottonseed oil, lucerne, potatoes, rice, soybeans and sugar beet. In Australia, to enable consumer choice, food producers are required to label foods that contain a GM-derived component or a GM protein introduced through genetic engineering; however, there are numerous exceptions and the genetic material that has been used is not specified (FSANZ 2014).

ANTIBIOTIC RESISTANCE

The use of antibiotics in conventional agriculture has led to the fear that widespread antibiotic-resistant bacteria have emerged that can cause disease in humans and animals that will be difficult to treat (Forman & Silverstein 2012). There are also concerns about the impact of chronic cumulative exposure to antibiotics, the risk of allergic reactions to antibiotics and the disruption of gut microbiota (Dolliver & Gupta 2008).

Although the widespread use of antibiotics in animal production ceased in Europe in 2006, it remains commonplace in countries such as Australia. On last count, approximately two-thirds of the antibiotics used in Australia were used in intensive animal production (JETACAR 1999).

Sub-therapeutic doses of antibiotics are utilised on conventional farms for the control of infection, which is a particular concern in large-scale animal confinement operations, but they are also used as growth promotants (Dolliver & Gupta 2008). Antibiotics are routinely added to the food and water of healthy livestock and may be retained in animal products.
and therefore consumed by humans. Alternatively they may be excreted unaltered and then contaminate groundwater (Blackwell et al 2009) or soil used for growing human (or livestock) food, and accumulate up the food chain (Rosenblatt-Farrell 2009); and affect soil quality by inhibiting microbial and enzyme activities (Liu et al 2009). Furthermore, antibiotic-resistant genes are sometimes added as marker genes to GM food.

As such practices are largely restricted in organic agriculture (AQIS 2009) the presence of antibiotic-resistant bacteria is significantly lower in organic produce (Smith-Spangler et al 2012). Antibiotic residues have been reported in animal tissue samples collected as part of the National Residue Survey (NRS) as have ractopamine (a beta-agonist used as a growth promotant) and antiparasitics (anthelmintics, anticoccidials) (DAFF 2012).

**FOOD ADDITIVES AND IRRADIATION**

Additives are listed as either numbers, known as additive codes, or by name; ‘de-coders’ are readily available in many bookshops and online. Up-to-date lists of the food additives used in Australian and New Zealand food products are available from the FSANZ website (FSANZ 2012). Food additives include preservatives, artificial sweeteners, colourings, flavourings and hydrogenated fats. The prevalence of food additive intolerance in school-aged children is estimated to be around 1–2% (Fuglsang et al 1993). Reactions may occur to preservatives (atopic dermatitis, asthma, rhinitis), colouring agents (atopic dermatitis, asthma, urticaria, gastrointestinal symptoms) or other substances (Fuglsang et al 1994). Artificial colourings and preservatives have been associated with hyperactivity in some children, and a UK study reported that the proportion of hyperactive children halved when additives were removed from their diets (Bateman et al 2004).

A further concern is the long-term safety of consuming irradiated foods. Currently irradiation is used for the purpose of food preservation, to control microbes and to protect against critical quarantine pests. Irradiated food is exposed to gamma rays from a radioactive source, which kill insects, eggs, larvae and pathogenic microorganisms.

The Food Standards Code in Australia allows for the irradiation of a select number of products including spices, herbs, herbal teas, tomatoes, capsicum and some tropical fruits (FSANZ 2013) as a disinfestation measure for pests such as the fruit fly. However, the practice is not common in Australia because it is expensive and the dose required to inactivate pathogens is often too high to be tolerated by the fresh produce without undesirable changes in nutrients and quality (Gomes et al 2011). The safety data from toxicological analysis of irradiated food and animal feeding experiments is relatively strong, but the issue remains controversial due to concerns about nutrient impairment, effects on beneficial gut microbiota and the use of nuclear technology (Shea 2000).

**PROCESSING AND PREPARATION**

While production and preservation methods may affect food quality, processing techniques may also significantly affect the therapeutic value of a food, and both benefits and detrimental effects are possible. For example, as both fibre and other nutrients are concentrated in the outer part of the grain, significant losses of not only fibre, but also of B vitamins, fat-soluble vitamins and other nutrients occur when grain is refined (Jamison 2006). Similarly, food preparation methods can significantly affect a food’s therapeutic qualities. Consider the potentially different nutritional and energetic effects of the same food consumed raw, juiced, steamed, boiled, fried, barbecued or microwaved. For example, steaming and drying may actually increase the sulforaphane content and antioxidant activity of broccoli, while freezing and boiling diminishes the polyphenol concentration (Mahn & Reyes 2012). The microwaving of broccoli has been found to destroy 97% of the flavonoids; conventional boiling destroys 66% and high-pressure boiling causes considerable leaching into the cooking water, whereas steaming produces minimal loss (Vallejo et al 2003).

Cooking does not always have detrimental effects and can sometimes increase the bioavailability of bioactive compounds; for example, the lycopene in tomatoes is more bioavailable when tomatoes are cooked in oil. The concentration of phenolic compounds in a food may also be increased by thermal processing, resulting in a significant increase in overall antioxidant status, despite some loss of heat-sensitive
antioxidant nutrients such as vitamin C (Jamison 2006).

Food combination is another factor that influences the therapeutic value of a meal; for example, consuming red meat with leafy greens and a citrus salad dressing synergistically improves iron absorption. The consumption of antioxidants in the diet, such as the tocopherols, coenzyme Q10, carotenoids, vitamin A, ascorbic acid, reduced glutathione, selenomethionine, flavonoids and other polyphenolic compounds, together with spices and synthetic antioxidants added to food, may counteract the effects of pro-oxidants found in food and the environment. Applying this concept, it could be suggested that foods containing high levels of pro-oxidants (e.g. meat) should be served with plenty of antioxidant-containing vegetables, together with sauces, juices, fruits and teas high in antioxidants (Surai et al 2004). This is supported by a study of 2814 male smokers who participated in the Belgian Interuniversity Research on Nutrition and Health study. This found that men with the highest oxidative balance score had a higher relative risk of all-cause mortality (RR = 1.44, 95% confidence interval [CI]: 1.13–1.82) and of total cancer mortality (RR = 1.62, 95% CI: 1.07–2.45), compared with men in the lowest-score group (Van Hoydonck et al 2002).

Glycaemic index

The glycaemic index (GI) ranks carbohydrates based on their immediate effects on blood glucose levels. Carbohydrate-containing foods that cause a rapid rise in blood glucose are said to have a high GI (> 70), whereas those that cause a slow, steady rise in blood glucose, a more ideal situation, have a low GI (< 55). As insulin is released in response to circulating glucose levels, foods with a high GI will cause a rapid rise in insulin levels. In the presence of chronically-elevated levels of circulating glucose and insulin, cells begin to shut down receptor sites, resulting in insulin resistance. Foods that have a low GI rating cause a much slower rise in blood glucose levels and therefore less insulin is secreted in response.

Observational studies indicate that a low-GI diet reduces elevated low-density lipoprotein (LDL) and triglyceride levels, raises high-density lipoprotein (HDL) levels (Dushay & Abrahamson 2005) and improves fasting glucose and glycated protein values (Anderson et al 2004). Recent reviews also reveal beneficial effects on fasting insulin and pro-inflammatory markers such as C-reactive protein (Schwingshackl et al 2013). In addition to beneficial effects in diabetes and obesity, low-glycaemic-load diets have also demonstrated benefits in conditions such as acne (Smith et al 2007).

As some foods have a low GI because of their fat content, the GI rating should not be used in isolation, but as part of a sensible approach that limits the amount of saturated and trans-fatty acids in the diet. Additionally, other foods that have a high GI, such as potatoes, may also contain substances such as lipoic acid, which is beneficial for the prevention of the long-term complications of diabetes. As such, it is more important to consider the GI or glycaemic load (GL) of the entire meal than to eliminate all foods with a high GI. The GL is calculated by multiplying the number of grams of carbohydrate in a serving of food by the GI value, and is expressed as a percentage: GL = GI (%) × grams of carbohydrate per serving.

Social, cultural and environmental aspects

In addition to being influenced by physico-chemical properties, the therapeutic qualities of food may further be affected by a person’s psychological state and/or intention while preparing and eating food, as well as by the social, cultural, economic, ethical, religious and environmental impact of the food. It has been said that ‘eating is essentially an act of communion with the living forces of nature’ (Robbins 1992). Indeed, most cultures and traditions have developed mealtime rituals that acknowledge the source of their food and attempt to align mind and body with the greater forces of nature. Food also features prominently in many spiritual traditions and practices. Thus, the idea of saying grace before meals and then eating ‘gracefully’ and mindfully, without rushing, may make significant contributions to psychological and spiritual health.

The effects of ‘un-mindful’ eating have been demonstrated in a study that revealed that television viewing increases energy intake by delaying normal mealtime satiation and reducing satiety signals from previously consumed
foods (Bellissimo et al 2007). The boys in the study consumed on average an extra 228 kcal (approximately one and a half pieces of pizza) over a 30-minute period while watching an episode of *The Simpsons*. When we are not eating mindfully we are not able to recognise when we have had enough. In contrast, studies have shown that an eating-focused mindfulness-based intervention can result in statistically significant decreases in weight, eating disinhibition, binge eating and psychological distress in obese individuals (Dalen et al 2010). Benefits have also been noted in people with eating disorders (Hepworth 2011).

Food and health are both multidimensional and interrelated. Food choices not only influence physiological functioning, but have much broader social, economic, ethical and environmental ramifications, which may in turn affect personal health and wellbeing. Some of these aspects are becoming acknowledged in wider food-related social movements, such as the Fair Trade Federation, International Slow Food Movement and Food Miles.

Food is not just a means of providing nutrition and sustaining health, it is also a global industry that affects everyone. In the new global economy, there is a fear that the production, trade and retailing of most goods and services are being increasingly concentrated under the control of a small number of corporations that have enormous influence. It is questionable whether all corporations take sufficiently seriously the responsibility of providing quality foods while protecting workers and their environment, and whether free-trade agreements do any more than just offer global protection for a company’s intellectual and property rights. For example, global trade in coffee and cocoa has led to social disruption, environmental damage and the mistreatment of workers, including children, who earn meagre wages while corporations make huge profits (Cavanagh 2006).

To counter this trend, the Fair Trade Federation (2014) sets standards for commodities, such as coffee, tea, sugar, cocoa and fruits, that will support living wages and safe, healthy conditions for workers in the developing world. Fair Trade standards stipulate that traders must pay a price to cover the costs of sustainable production and living, and the organisation attempts to support food-producing communities by paying a premium that producers can invest in development, making partial advance payments when requested by producers and signing contracts that allow for long-term planning and sustainable production practices.

The environmental, economic, social and health consequences of the global trade in food are not only influenced by how food is produced, but also by its transportation. Nutrients have their best chance to develop under certain climatic conditions; this means that foods grown and harvested seasonally have an advantage and are also more appropriate for eating at those times of year. The ability to transport food around the world allows seasonal food to be eaten year round and creates an enormous economic, social and environmental burden.

The environmental and social implications of the rapid escalation in ‘food miles’, which is the distance that food travels before being consumed, have been reviewed by Sustain (2011), which also considers the effects of food on behaviour and mental health.

The interests of the food industry and agribusiness are not always aligned with the interests and needs of consumers; for example, the widespread availability of fast foods and their enormous popularity threatens gastronomic traditions, traditional cultivation and processing techniques, while standardising taste. The Slow Food Movement is an international movement that originated in Italy; it attempts to address these concerns by:

- promoting regional food and wine cultures, while defending food and agricultural biodiversity worldwide
- opposing the standardisation of taste
- defending the need for consumer information
- protecting cultural identities tied to food and gastronomic traditions
- safeguarding traditional foods (Slow Foods Movement 2014).

Unfortunately the exploitation of natural and human resources comes at a cost. For too long, the external costs of agribusiness have been delayed, resulting in the availability of artificially ‘cheap’ but nutritionally depleted food. The food production industry is now faced with new challenges: the results of years of...
CHAPTER 5 INTRODUCTION TO FOOD AS MEDICINE

PRINCIPLES OF USING FOOD AS MEDICINE

It is often said that ‘you are what you eat’; however, it may be more accurate to say that ‘you are what you absorb in relation to your individual demands’. Differences in flavonoid bioavailability may result from variations in gut physiology and flora (Grinder-Pedersen et al 2003). Demand for nutrients may also vary both between and within individuals depending on their circumstances. Additional nutrients may be required to support the body during times of stress, infection, blood loss, etc. Demand may also be increased to support the metabolism of environmental toxins.

Food choices can exert a profound positive or negative influence on individual health, as well as on the health of communities and the environment. While the research community establishes the mechanisms by which foods exert their biological effects, there are some general recommendations that can enhance the positive impact of food, summarised by the mnemonic SLOW: consume food that is:

S Seasonal
L Locally produced with Lots of colour and variety
O Organic
W Whole, fresh and with minimal processing.

THERAPEUTIC POTENTIAL OF COMMON FOODS

When consuming or prescribing functional foods, consideration should be given not only to the selection of foods for their potential therapeutic benefits, but also to the quality of the food consumed (as discussed earlier), and to the digestive function and health status of the individual. It should be noted that no single food should be eaten to the exclusion of others, and the inclusion of functional foods should form part of an otherwise balanced diet. Several examples of foods that may be incorporated into the diet for physiological benefit are discussed here, but a range of foods are covered in greater depth in the monographs.

Blueberries (and other berries)

A growing body of research suggests that the dietary intake of berry fruits has a ‘positive and profound impact on human health, performance, and disease’ (Sceram 2008). Berry cousins — blueberry (Vaccinium corymbosum), cranberry (Vaccinium macrocarpon) and bilberry (Vaccinium myrtillus) — have demonstrated significant benefits in the past, and there has recently been increased interest in other berry-type fruits, such as pomegranate (Punica granatum), goji berry (Lycium barbarum), mangosteen (Garcinia mangostana) and the Brazilian acai berry (Euterpe oleracea).

Blueberries, native to East Asia and the United States (Natoli 2005), are readily available fresh during the warmer months and frozen or juiced year round. They were traditionally used by the North American Indians for the treatment of diarrhoea and labour pains (Pratt & Matthews 2004a) and are an excellent source of antioxidant nutrients and phenolic compounds that work synergistically within the body (including vitamin C, beta-carotene, flavonoids, anthocyanins and resveratrol) (Natoli 2005, Pratt & Matthews 2004a). The anthocyanins are powerful antioxidant and anti-inflammatory agents, responsible for the deep blue-purple colour of blueberries; the deeper the colour, the greater the anthocyanin content (Pratt & Matthews 2004a).

The majority of studies to date rely on in vitro, animal and epidemiological evidence. Blueberry and its cousins appear to ‘limit the development and severity of certain cancers and vascular diseases, including atherosclerosis, ischaemic stroke and neurodegenerative diseases of ageing’ (Neto 2007). Anticarcinogenic properties have been demonstrated in prostate cell lines, and blueberry extracts have been shown to suppress tumour growth, protect the integrity of DNA (Natoli 2005), reduce angiogenesis (Atalay et al 2003), inhibit the proliferation of androgen-dependent prostate cancer cells (Schmidt et al 2006), prevent oestrogen-induced mammary tumours (Jeyabalan et al...

Choose dark blue-purple berries that move freely in the container. Damaged berries will inhibit movement and be prone to mould and should be discarded before storage. Organic fruit is preferable because it has higher concentrations of malic acid, phenolics, anthocyanins and overall higher antioxidant activity (Wang et al 2008). Although the vitamin C content degrades rapidly during heating and storage, many of the phenolic compounds may actually become more bioavailable, improving the overall antioxidant capacity (Wehrmeister et al 2005). Frozen berries maintain the phenolic compounds and provide an excellent source for year-round availability (Srivastava 2007). As blueberries contain salicylates, those with a known sensitivity should be cautious about consuming them (Natoli 2005).

**Broccoli (and cruciferous vegetables)**

Broccoli, originally grown in the Mediterranean region and cultivated by the ancient Romans, belongs to the cruciferous family of vegetables (Brassicaceae), so-called because of the cross-shaped structure of the leaves and flowers (Pratt & Matthews 2004b). The family also includes cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, cabbage and kale, which have also demonstrated significant therapeutic potential. Broccoli is low in kilojoules and an excellent source of fibre; calcium; folate; vitamins C, E and K; coenzyme Q10; iron; sulforaphane; indoles; phenolic compounds (quercetin, kaempferol, hydroxycinnamoyl acids); and the carotenoids beta-carotene, cryptoxanthin, lutein and zeaxanthin (Damon et al 2005, Lucarini et al 1999, Podsedek 2005, Pratt & Matthews 2004b). The antioxidant nutrients in broccoli work in synergy to reduce reactive oxygen species and recycle each other (Podsedek 2005); however, significant variations occur in nutrient levels because of differences in variety, maturity at harvest, soil quality, sunlight exposure, growing environment, processing and storage conditions (Jeffery et al 2003, Gliszczynska-Swiglo et al 2005, Podsedek 2005).

Numerous epidemiological studies have established an inverse association between the consumption of cruciferous vegetables and the incidence of cancer (especially lung, colon, stomach, rectal, bladder and premenopausal breast cancers) (Brennan et al 2005, Cortizo & Vitetta 2004, Kim et al 2003, Pratt & Matthews 2004b, Tang 2008). A possible explanation for this is the effect of glucoraphanin (a glucosinolate) on mitochondrial function (Armah et al 2013). When broccoli is crushed or chewed, glucoraphanin is converted by the action of myrosinase into isothiocyanates, the most studied of which is the powerful anticarcinogenic compound known as sulforaphane (Matusheski et al 2004). Young broccoli shoots are the best source of the chemoprotective glucosinolates, containing 20–50-fold the content of the more mature vegetable (Cortizo & Vitetta 2004). In animal and in vitro studies, isothiocyanates have demonstrated chemoprotective activity against different types of tumours, enhancing detoxification of carcinogens, blocking the initiation of chemically-induced carcinogens, inducing apoptosis and modulating cell-cycle progression in highly proliferative cancer cells (Cortizo & Vitetta 2004, Fimognari et al 2005, Gills et al 2005, Hintze et al 2003, Jadhav et al 2007, Rose...
et al 2005). Indoles, such as indole-3-carbinol, have also been shown to exert chemopreventive effects in liver, colon and mammary tissue (Kang et al 2001) and to arrest human tumour cells in the G1 phase of the cell cycle (Matsuzaki et al 2004). They may also block oestrogen receptors in breast cancer cells (Pratt & Matthews 2004b).

Although the anticarcinogenic, antioxidant and anti-inflammatory benefits of broccoli compounds help to explain their therapeutic effects, the exact mechanisms are still unclear and contradictory evidence exists for a role in inhibiting phase I and inducing phase II enzymes (Cortizo & Vitetta 2004, Knize et al 2002, Myzak & Dashwood 2005, Perocco et al 2006, Steinkellner et al 2001, Vang et al 2001). Furthermore, several authors warn of potential risks resulting from uncontrolled use of isolated compounds from broccoli (Fimognari et al 2005, Perocco et al 2006, Wiseman 2005); therefore, consumption of the plant itself is currently more advisable than isolated extracts.

Human clinical trials have demonstrated improvements in HDL-cholesterol in overweight subjects (Jeon et al 2013) and a reduction in LDL-cholesterol in hypercholesterolaemic patients (Takai et al 2003). The consumption of broccoli sprouts has also been shown to improve insulin resistance in people with type 2 diabetes (Bahadoran et al 2012). Additional benefits for cardiovascular health are suggested by in vitro evidence indicating that broccoli compounds may bind to bile acids (Kahlon et al 2007) and have an ACE inhibitor activity (Lee et al 2005). Broccoli contains high amounts of selenium and glucosinolates, which can exert a cardioprotective effect (Mukherjee et al 2008). Because of its known nutrient content, broccoli may support the immune system; it may also reduce the risk of cataracts, osteoporosis and neural tube birth defects (Podsedek 2005, Pratt & Matthews 2004b).

Choose young plants or shoots with a dark-green–purplish colour. As broccoli is prone to infestation and has a large surface area, agricultural chemical residue can be an issue, and ideally organic broccoli should be purchased and inspected for pests. Broccoli will store at 5°C (non-packaged) for 1–3 weeks without significant nutrient loss (Favell 1998, Leja et al 2001), although processing methods may affect nutrient quality (Podsedek 2005). The bioavailability of sulforaphane is around ten times higher in soups made from fresh compared to frozen broccoli (Saha et al 2012). Although cooking degrades the vitamin C and isothiocyanate content, the carotenoids may become more bioavailable, increasing the potential overall antioxidant activity (Bernhardt & Schlich 2005, Pratt & Matthews 2004b, Turkmen et al 2005, Tang et al 2008). Light steaming (approximately 1 minute) of raw broccoli is likely to maintain the best nutritional profile. Despite concerns that goitrogenic compounds in broccoli may increase the risk of thyroid cancer, a meta-analysis found no correlation (Cortizo & Vitetta 2004); nevertheless, broccoli should not be consumed in excess by those with known thyroid disease. A serving size of half to 1 cup per day is associated with a significant reduction in cancer risk (Pratt & Matthews 2004b).

**Single-cell foods**

Microalgae are both single cells and whole plants that are at the bottom of the food chain and are the most productive organisms on the planet, using light approximately three times more efficiently than higher plants (Pirt 1980). Gram for gram, microalgae may also be the most nutrient-dense food on earth (Passwater & Solomon 1997), with minimal indigestible structures in contrast to higher plants or animals, in which less than half their dry weight is typically nutritionally useful (Bruno 2001).

Microalgae, which include *Spirulina* and *Chlorella* species, and the ‘red-orange’ algae *Dunaliella salina*, contain a range of macro- and micronutrients, such as chlorophyll, carotenoids, phytonutrients, amino acids, polysaccharides, essential fatty acids, carbohydrates and vitamins and bioavailable minerals (Cases et al 1999, Chamorro et al 2002, Kay 1991). They may also promote the growth of lactic acid bacteria in the gastrointestinal tract (Parada et al 1998).

These organisms can be considered to be a mix of food, supplement and medicine. As single-cell plants, they represent ‘whole’ foods; however, they are often marketed in capsules and can be taken as supplements and/or medicines. In contrast to the reductionist approach to nutrition, which leads to supplementation with only a few specific nutrients, microalgae provide...
a complex mix of nutrients developed over millions of years of evolution. Although accumulating research suggests that microalgae have many health benefits, further research is required to determine their clinical applications.

The cyanobacteria *Spirulina* spp (usually *Spirulina platensis* or *S. maxima*) contains pigments, called phycobilins or phycobiliproteins (including phycocyanin and allophycocyanin), that are similar in structure to bile pigments (Pino Estrada et al 2001). *Spirulina* spp are said to possess antiviral, hypcholesterolaemic, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, hepatoprotective, anti-allergic and immunomodulatory activities and have been used to treat certain allergies, anaemia, cancer, viruses, cardiovascular diseases, hyperlipidaemia, immune deficiency and inflammatory processes (Chamorro et al 2002, Hirahashi et al 2002).

In vitro studies of spirulina suggest antiviral and antiretroviral activity by inhibiting the penetration of viruses into host cells and also the replication of several enveloped viruses, including human cytomegalovirus, measles virus, mumps virus, influenza A virus and HIV-1 (Ayeahunie et al 1998, Hayashi & Hayashi 1996, Hernandez-Corona et al 2002).

*Spirulina* extracts enhance macrophage activity (Qureshi & Ali 1996), and humoral and cell-mediated immune functions in animal studies (Quereshi et al 1996), and may also act as anticlastogenic (Ruiz Flores et al 2003) and antitumour agents (Li et al 2005). They inhibit mast-cell-mediated immediate-type allergic reactions in vivo and in vitro (Kim et al 1998), possibly by inhibiting mast-cell degranulation.

Animal studies have demonstrated that spirulina reduces vascular reactivity (Mascher et al 2006), possesses hypcholesterolaemic (Devi & Venkataraman 1983), anti-atherogenic (Kaji et al 2002, 2004) and antioxidant activity (Pino Estrada et al 2001), reduces chromosomal damage and lipid peroxidation and increases liver enzymes and non-enzymatic antioxidants (Premkumar et al 2004). The hepatoprotective effects are likely to be caused by the antioxidant activity. Although some green foods are touted as being a good source of vitamin B₁₂ for vegetarians, and this is true of chlorella, the B₁₂ in spirulina appears to be in a largely inactive form (Watanabe et al 2002). Spirulina extract is an excellent selenium carrier and therefore enriched sources can provide a highly bioavailable source of selenium (Cases et al 1999).

Chlorella (usually *Chlorella vulgaris* or *C. pyrenoidosa*) has been promoted as an anticarcinogenic, immunomodulatory, hypolipidaemic and gastric mucosa-protective agent. As with other green foods, the antitumour activity is thought to be mediated by an immunopotentiation mechanism (Noda et al 1996), and extracts of chlorella have demonstrated antitumour activity against both spontaneous and experimentally-induced metastasis in the lymphoid organs of mice (Tanaka et al 1998). Based on animal studies, chlorella may also ameliorate some of the side effects of 5-fluouracil chemotherapy treatment (Konishi et al 1996).

*Chlorella vulgaris* extract enhances resistance to *Listeria monocytogenes* through augmentation of Th1 responses, producing gamma-interferon (Hasegawa et al 1999). It may be useful for the prevention of allergic diseases (Kralovec et al 2005), especially in those people with a predominantly Th2 response (Hasegawa et al 1999).

In some animal experiments, chlorella appears to possess hypolipidaemic (Sano et al 1988) and anti-atherogenic effects (Sano & Tanaka 1987). It may prevent dyslipidaemia in animals chronically fed a high-fat diet by preventing intestinal absorption of redundant lipids and thus reducing triglyceride, and total and LDL-cholesterol levels (Cherng & Shih 2005). In addition, inhibition of advanced glycation end products in vitro suggests a possible role for reducing atherogenesis, diabetic microangiopathy and Alzheimer’s dementia (Yamagishi et al 2005).

Chlorella may also exhibit hypoglycaemic activity (Cherng & Shih 2006), improve insulin sensitivity (Jong-Yuh & Mei-Fen 2005) and prevent stress-induced ulcers (Tanaka et al 1997), according to animal studies.

Although it has been suggested that a diet high in spirulina may be a risk for kidney stones, this may be the case only with a high or excessive intake of oxalic acid (e.g. beetroot leaves or rhubarb) (Farooq et al 2005), as the antioxidant activity of phycocyanin appears to aid in the prevention of calcium oxalate stones (Farooq et al 2004). Occasional gastrointestinal symptoms and allergic reactions have been reported for spirulina and chlorella, and those...
taking warfarin should avoid chlorella, which can be high in vitamin K.

Doses of spirulina range from 250 mg to 5 g daily (PDRHealth 2014). High doses of chlorella (10 g/day) have been used successfully in clinical trials for fibromyalgia (Holdcraft et al 2003, Merchant & Andre 2001), but the standard dose is usually 200–500 mg/day (PDRHealth 2014).

_Dunaliella salina_ is a soft-celled microalga found in many coastal waters and saltwater lakes (see Monographs: _Dunaliella_). It is one of the most salt-tolerant life forms known, and is adapted to extremely high UV radiation. To cope with these extreme environments, _Dunaliella_ produces very high levels of antioxidant molecules. On a per-gram basis, _Dunaliella_ has more than twice the chlorophyll, five times the mineral content and more than 6000 times the carotenoid antioxidants content of spirulina (Table 5.2), with the carotenoids giving it an orange rather than a green colour. Furthermore, _Dunaliella_’s soft-cell membrane makes it easily digestible, compared with other microalgae that have hard cell walls (Ben-Amotz & Avron 1983). To date, most of the clinical research on _Dunaliella_ has been on beta-carotene-containing extracts rather than on the whole organism, but recent advances in production technology have allowed the whole, dried _Dunaliella_ biomass with its full range of nutrients and minerals to become commercially available (Table 5.3) (Tracton & Bobrov 2005 and more studies).

**Medicinal mushrooms (reishi, shiitake)**

Mushrooms such as shiitake (_Lentinus edodes_), reishi (_Ganoderma lucidum_), oyster (_Pleurotus ostreatus_) and maitake (_Grifola frondosa_), to name just a few, have also been used as medicinal agents in Asia for thousands of years (Chang 1996, Sliva 2004). More recently the benefits of the common button mushroom (_Agaricus bisporus_), widely cultivated in the West, have also begun to be elucidated (Beelman et al 2004). Although the nutritional and medicinal potential of mushrooms may differ because of variations in species, cultivation techniques, maturity at harvest and other factors, numerous common features arise. (See also Monographs: _Coriolus versicolor_).

In general, mushrooms contain significant amounts of water (>90%), and, as a result, nutrients measured on the fresh-weight values may appear to be quite low. Nevertheless, they are low in kilojoules and a good source of fibre (including glucans and chitin), amino acids, B vitamins, copper, selenium, potassium, germanium, ergosterol (Beelman et al 2004) and lipids, especially linoleic acid (Yilmaz et al 2005).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>DUNALIELLA</th>
<th>SPIRULINA</th>
<th>CARROTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>7.4 g</td>
<td>57 g</td>
<td>1 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat (total)</td>
<td>7 g</td>
<td>8 g</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrates</td>
<td>29.7 g</td>
<td>24 g</td>
<td>10 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Energy</td>
<td>893 kJ</td>
<td>1214 kJ</td>
<td>180 kJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibre</td>
<td>0.4 g</td>
<td>4 g</td>
<td>3 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyll</td>
<td>2210 mg</td>
<td>1000 mg</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerals</td>
<td>49 g</td>
<td>6.2 g</td>
<td>1 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta-carotene</td>
<td>2100 mg</td>
<td>0.34 mg</td>
<td>8.3 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha-carotene</td>
<td>53 mg</td>
<td>0.0 mg</td>
<td>3.5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein/zeaxanthin</td>
<td>97.6 mg</td>
<td>0.0 mg</td>
<td>0.26 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptoxanthin</td>
<td>46.5 mg</td>
<td>0.0 mg</td>
<td>0.1 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 5.3 COMPARISON OF THE NUTRIENT AND TRACE MINERALS IN ‘SUPER’ FOODS (mg/100 g)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FOOD</th>
<th>Ca</th>
<th>Mg</th>
<th>Na</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>Cu</th>
<th>Zn</th>
<th>Fe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dunaliella salina</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>5394</td>
<td>7513</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>23.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirulina</td>
<td>547</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>&gt;999</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorella</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelp powder</td>
<td>1443</td>
<td>796</td>
<td>&gt;999</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat grass</td>
<td>937</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green barley</td>
<td>384</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>818</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FOOD</th>
<th>Mn</th>
<th>Cr</th>
<th>Se</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>Co</th>
<th>Mo</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>Li</th>
<th>Rb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dunaliella salina</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>0.022</td>
<td>0.041</td>
<td>3105</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spirulina</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>&lt;2000</td>
<td>0.093</td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorella</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.038</td>
<td>0.042</td>
<td>&lt;2000</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.066</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kelp powder</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>0.045</td>
<td>0.094</td>
<td>2426</td>
<td>0.068</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheat grass</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.005</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>&lt;2000</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green barley</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>1.05</td>
<td>0.004</td>
<td>0.066</td>
<td>&lt;2000</td>
<td>0.023</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data obtained from: Trace Elements Inc. (USA) (www.traceelements.com).

The immunostimulatory properties of a variety of polysaccharides found in mushrooms are thought to contribute to their anticancer effects, and other biologically active substances, including triterpenes, cerebrosides and phenols, have been identified and characterised in the medicinal mushrooms in particular (Sliva 2004). Mushrooms may also protect against oxidative damage to DNA (Beelman et al. 2004).

Shiitake mushrooms (Lentinus edodes) possess immunomodulating, antitumour, hypolipidaemic, antibacterial (Hirasawa et al. 1999) and antioxidant properties (Cheung et al. 2003), and may help to reduce dental caries, according to in vitro and animal studies (Shouji et al. 2000). They have been traditionally used for exhaustion, colds, intestinal parasites, poor circulation and liver problems (PDRHealth 2014).

Lentinan, which is a biologically active beta-glucan in shiitake mushrooms, modulates the immune system (including T-lymphocytes and cytokines); suppresses hepatic expression of cytochrome P1A (Okamoto et al. 2004); and has demonstrated antitumour and antimetastatic activity against chemical and viral carcinogens (Mitamura et al. 2000, Ng & Yap 2002, Zheng et al. 2005). However, clinical trials using shiitake extract in men with prostate cancer were not successful in reducing levels of prostate-specific antigen (White et al. 2002), although other compounds may also contribute to the antitumour effects (Sia & Candlish 1999). The consumption of shiitake in patients undergoing chemotherapy is thought to be safe and may improve quality of life and immune function (Yamaguchi et al. 2011).

Lentinus edodes mycelia inhibit atherosclerotic development in rabbits (van Nevel et al. 2003) and contains eritadenine, a hypocholesterolaemic compound that also acts as an immunomodulator and tumour-inhibitor in animal models (Beelman et al. 2004, Yamada et al. 2002). Extracts from shiitake mushrooms have been shown to elevate plasma insulin and reduce plasma glucose, total cholesterol and triglyceride levels in rats (Yang et al. 2002). Lentinan is antifungal and may also exert an inhibitory effect on HIV-1 reverse transcriptase and proliferation of leukaemia cells (Ngai & Ng 2003).

Ganoderma lucidum (reishi) has been used in TCM for thousands of years for the treatment of asthma, cough, fatigue, insomnia and weakness, and was popular as a cancer chemotherapy agent in ancient China (Sliva 2003). There is some confusion about the taxonomical classification of reishi mushrooms and, as a result, a variety of different medicinally active...
compounds with significantly different pharmacological effects may be attributed to different strains, adding confusion to the body of evidence available (Szedlay 2002).

A small clinical trial has reported mild anti-diabetic effects and improved lipid profiles in subjects with elevated blood glucose levels (Chu et al 2012). The anticancer activity may be due to direct cytotoxic effects against tumour cells, inhibition of angiogenesis (Lin & Zhang 2004), and the effects of immunomodulatory polysaccharides (Chen et al 2004), which act by stimulating the expression of cytokines (especially IL-1, IL-2 and IFN-gamma) (Wang et al 2002) and modulating humoral and cellular immunity (Lin 2005).

Dietary intake of *Agaricus bisporus* (white button mushrooms) may improve mucosal immunity by accelerating salivary IgA secretion (Jeong et al 2012). Studies have also suggested that it may modulate aromatase activity and function, resulting in chemoprevention of the deleterious effects of in situ oestrogen in breast cancer (Grube et al 2001), and may be a potential agent for preventing scarring and promoting healthy wound-healing (Batterbury et al 2002, Kent et al 2003). The brown strains (Swiss browns, portabellas) harvested when fully mature, with open caps, appear to be the most useful (Beelman et al 2004).

High doses of shiitake mushrooms may cause rash, diarrhoea and bloating, and consumption of 4 g shiitake powder has been associated with marked eosinophilia (Levy et al 1998). Reishi mushrooms should not be consumed daily in the long term (> 3–6 months), as they may cause dizziness, dry mouth, nose bleeds and gastrointestinal upset, and may potentially produce additive effects with anticoagulant medications (PDRHealth 2014).

*Agaricus bisporus* contains agaratine, a hydrazine compound with suspected carcinogenic potential (Hashida et al 1990). To date, animal studies have demonstrated different outcomes between species and no conclusive evidence exists for a cause–effect relationship between mushroom intake and cancer prevalence in humans. In addition, the potential anticarcinogenic properties of other compounds in mushrooms may provide protection (Beelman et al 2004). Although there are concerns about heavy metal toxicity in wild *Agaricus* mushrooms, levels of mercury and cadmium in commercially cultivated mushrooms have been found to be very low (Kalac & Svoboda 2000, Vetter & Berta 2005).

*Agaricus* mushrooms (including Swiss browns and portabellas) and shiitake mushrooms are readily available fresh or dried, and dried reishi mushrooms can sometimes be found in Asian grocery stores. Dried mushrooms may be constituted in warm water for use in cooking. Cooking mushrooms may increase free polyphenolic compounds (Choi et al 2006) but can make them tough and result in losses of manganese, zinc and iron (Coskuner & Ozdemir 1997).

**FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

Despite advancements in medicine and pharmaceutical drug development, dietary choices remain the cornerstone of preventive medicine and enhance the health of individuals and societies. Emerging research indicates exceptional potential for the benefits of using ‘food as medicine’. Recognising the inherent therapeutic value of foods or their potential to induce harmful health consequences means that we can tailor the diet to produce better health outcomes.

**REFERENCES**


Bhuvaneswari V, Nagini S. Lycopene: a review of its potential as an antioxidant. Ind J Cancer Anticancer Agents 5.6 (2005): 627–635.


Mahmoud A, Reyes A. An overview of health-promoting compounds of broccoli (Brassica oleracea var. Italica) and its effect on the processing. Food Sci Technol Int 18.6 (2012): 503–514.
Ngai PH, Ng TB. Lentin, a novel and potent antifungal protein from shiitake mushroom with inhibitory effects on activity of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 reverse transcriptase and proliferation of leukemia cells. Life Sci 73.26 (2003): 3363–3374.
INTRODUCTION TO THE PRACTICE OF INTEGRATIVE MEDICINE

Throughout history, every civilisation and culture has developed its own form of medicine. The rise of modern technology and scientific enquiry have added new therapeutic techniques, products and services to the range of traditional therapies. Thus, within today’s pluralistic, multicultural and increasingly globalised societies, the wisdom and therapeutic interventions of many different traditions are becoming available. While it is impossible for any practitioner to have access to, or even know something about, the many hundreds of therapeutic interventions available, it is possible to incorporate some of the key principles into today’s conventional healthcare practice. This leads to the practice of integrative medicine (IM), which attempts to define and embrace these principles.

The practice of IM is more than simply an expansion of conventional medical practice to include ‘complementary therapies’, such as mind–body techniques, acupuncture, herbs, nutrients and body work (for example, massage and manipulation). It involves:

- a focus on the whole person: the interplay between the physical, emotional, spiritual and psychological states
- individualised treatment plans tailored to meet the needs of the person
- the development of a therapeutic partnership between the patient and practitioner as a fundamental part of the healing process
- a primary focus on prevention, health enhancement and addressing predisposing, exacerbating and sustaining causes of disease
- integration of the best available, evidence-based, safe and ethical therapies from different traditions.

As such, IM forms the basis for clinical decision making and improving patient outcomes, by providing each patient with effective and compassionate care and healing on many levels. IM is increasingly being acknowledged as ‘best practice’; however, it requires some fundamental shifts in the way healthcare is delivered, and has not yet become widely implemented (Cohen 2005a). For example, the use of complementary medicines is an integral part of IM practice, yet this use raises many issues for medical practitioners, particularly those who have not received training in how to use them. Some of the questions are:

- What can reasonably be expected by providing integrative care?
- What are the safety issues?
- Which therapies are cost-effective?
- What advice should be given to patients in the absence of definitive evidence?
- Which therapies or products are useful for which conditions and which patients?
• Where can high-quality complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) products be obtained?
• Which practitioners or modalities should patients be referred to use, and when, how and for what reasons should referrals be made?
• Where can reliable information about CAM be found, and what pathways are there for further study?

These are core issues in any healthcare practice and are not specific to the use of complementary medicines or even to the practice of IM. The practice of IM, however, poses additional challenges to medical practitioners, both professionally and personally. It requires being prepared to learn about new and different treatment systems, traditions and ways of thinking, and recognising the advantages and limitations of both complementary and conventional medicine and the potential benefits of combining them. It also requires adopting a collaborative approach with patients and a variety of different healthcare professionals, while allowing old beliefs to be challenged and re-evaluated. Furthermore, the practice of IM challenges medical practitioners to develop their intuition, empathy and compassion, address their own health and personal growth, and become role models for their patients and the wider community.

From a practical perspective, IM takes extra time. Time is needed to keep up to date with the changing evidence base, as well as to establish a rapport with and holistic understanding of patients and then apply the principles of IM to address their needs.

HOLISM AND THE INDIVIDUAL

In their professional training, medical practitioners study the biological, psychological and social aspects of health, as well as the signs, symptoms and pathophysiology of specific illnesses, to achieve an understanding of health and disease in a clinical context. This knowledge base must be updated and modified with new knowledge provided by new scientific evidence and cumulative clinical experience. Although consideration of the best available evidence is an important dimension of clinical practice, scientific data are often based on a group of observations that give statistical information about research populations, but which may not provide definitive information about what will happen to any individual patient in certain circumstances.

Each human being is unique and presents in a specific clinical context in which the outcome will be determined by personal attributes, such as attitudes, education and understanding, as well as by genetics, physiology, past experiences, socioeconomic and cultural circumstances, available resources and lifestyle. Accounting for individual differences is an essential aspect of the art of medicine and a cornerstone of many ancient systems of medicine.

Chinese medicine, Ayurvedic medicine and Western herbal medicine all have sophisticated systems of categorising people according to their different physiological and psychological characteristics in order to guide treatment selection. In comparison, modern Western medicine has been slow to accept and use this individualistic approach, preferring to standardise treatment approaches through clinical guidelines and protocols. The fields of pharmacogenomics and nutrigenomics, which have emerged out of the Human Genome Project, are beginning to provide a scientific rationale for individualising treatments. These new fields emphasise two factors: individualised response to medicines and nutrients, and the roles of dietary and genetic interactions in patient health.

The practice of IM combines both ancient and modern knowledge, and takes a holistic perspective that recognises health involves physical, psychological, social, spiritual and environmental dimensions. This is in line with increasing patient expectations to have the accompanying social and psychological aspects of their illness addressed, not just their presenting symptoms (Jonas 2001). Thus the practice of IM requires careful history-taking and physical examination, which may include obtaining information from different philosophical perspectives, together with astute and appropriate investigations, and obtaining other information from relatives or carers.

Accounting for individual factors takes considerable time, yet this time is well spent because there is mounting evidence to suggest a direct relationship between consultation...
length and the quality of care. Longer consultations are likely to result in better health outcomes and better handling of psychosocial problems, fewer prescriptions, more lifestyle advice and lower costs, less litigation and more patient and doctor satisfaction (Cohen et al 2002).

**THERAPEUTIC RELATIONSHIPS**

Although amassing personal information about a patient is a time-consuming process, it is an extremely valuable one, not only for the information gleaned but also because it facilitates the development of rapport, respect and trust, thus laying the foundation for the therapeutic relationship. The development of close and meaningful relationships with people in a clinical context is one of the great challenges of holistic or integrative practice. It is also one of the most powerful therapeutic tools clinicians have and may be more important than any specific treatment modality.

The therapeutic relationship is a profound and sacred one, acknowledged since ancient times and codified in the Hippocratic oath, which has specific phrases that dictate the principle of doctor–patient confidentiality, as well as the responsibility of clinicians to exercise a duty of care.

A therapeutic relationship is established with the specific intention of healing, and the act of establishing such a relationship, in which intuition and empathy are valued alongside information and evidence, may be therapeutic in itself. Simply articulating one’s personal story and expressing traumatic experiences to a sympathetic listener can help people make connections and better understand the causes and implications of their disease, as well as providing much needed psychosocial support.

Healthcare professionals commonly see people at their worst: when they are in pain and/or feeling sick, scared, sleep deprived and fearful of the possible implications of an illness. The constant stream of ‘sick people’ can make it easy to start differentiating patients by their illnesses; however, thinking of people in terms of their highest level of functioning may be more productive. To this end, some of the most important questions a practitioner can ask are: ‘What makes you happy?’ or ‘What makes you feel alive?’ The answers to these questions can provide valuable insight into an individual and form the basis for a more meaningful relationship than the answer to the question: ‘What is the problem?’

Developing rapport, trust and a holistic understanding of patients’ lives is one of the most important elements in IM, because it places practitioners in a better position to allay their patients’ fears, adequately address the issues of most concern and help to reduce the burden of stress that accompanies virtually all illness. A holistic understanding of a person also enables clinicians to recommend treatments that are more likely to be successfully integrated into a patient’s social and cultural environment, thus improving efficacy and compliance. Furthermore, a sound therapeutic relationship provides the camaraderie and sense of therapeutic adventure necessary to underpin a partnership model of health and provides a solid foundation for clinical decision making.

**PRACTITIONER WELLBEING**

Healthcare professionals experience significant mental, physical and spiritual demands during the course of everyday practice. In addition, personal stress can influence the ability to deliver effective care, establish therapeutic relationships and maintain good health. Over time, exposure to multiple stressors can lead to physical and emotional exhaustion, or burnout, with its accompanying physical and psychological burden (Dunning 2005).

For some practitioners, there is a perceived pressure to symbolise perfect health and be invulnerable to disease. As a result, there is the temptation to avoid indications of ill health in themselves and their colleagues and a failure to see the need for self-care. The practice of IM compels clinicians to address their own health and lifestyle, explore their emotional life and develop self-care routines to maintain wellbeing and prevent disease. In addition, the therapeutic relationship developed with patients can be nurturing for the practitioner, with rewards that flow in both directions (Cohen 2005b).

In advocating a holistic view of health, the practice of IM can also motivate practitioners to become more involved in broader community, public health and global issues, such as social justice, fair trade, environmental
preservation, regeneration and sustainability, as well as spiritual, ethical and philosophical debates and pursuits.

INTUITION, BEDSIDE MANNER AND PLACEBO

Medicine is an art informed by science, yet with so much recent attention being given to scientific evidence, it is easy to forget the importance of intuition and clinical experience. A holistic understanding of a patient, together with empathy and compassion for a patient’s circumstances, adds important information to any clinical encounter. It is likely that the best and most inspired practice occurs when the practitioner’s academic knowledge, clinical experience and intuitive understanding of the individual merge to provide a picture of the clinical situation as a coherent whole, known as the ‘Gestalt’ approach.

Developing an intimate therapeutic relationship and integrating rational and intuitive knowledge enlists the full capacity of the practitioner. It may also be the best way to tap into patients’ unconscious healing processes and elicit the ‘placebo response’. The placebo effect is often considered a source of bias and a scientific distraction that research methodology must minimise; however, the placebo response is ubiquitous and cannot be avoided in the clinical setting.

All interventions have a non-specific therapeutic action, in addition to their purported activity, and the best clinicians will always use their ‘bedside manner’ to harness the ‘placebo response’ and enhance the therapeutic benefits of any specific intervention. Herbert Benson suggested that the placebo response is based on a good therapeutic relationship, as well as positive beliefs and expectations on the part of the patient and practitioner, and, furthermore, can yield beneficial clinical results and be a powerful adjunct to therapy. Benson, who coined the term ‘the relaxation response’ in reference to meditation, further suggested that the placebo response should be renamed ‘remembered wellness’, and that it may be one of medicine’s most potent assets because it is safe, inexpensive and accessible to many people (Benson & Friedman 1996).

In addition to the use of rapport, empathy, compassion, trust, confidence and intimacy, an integral part of a good bedside manner is the appropriate and thoughtful use of touch. Touch pulls together psychological and bodily experiences and is important in relationships between people in general, and the therapeutic relationship in particular. It is a basic human need that enhances communication and builds trust. A simple handshake to acknowledge each other’s presence or hand-holding when bad news is delivered can provide important and reassuring support that goes beyond words. The therapeutic power of touch has been recognised and practised throughout history: for example, through the art of massage, which, when provided by a trained practitioner, can produce substantial therapeutic effects, enhance a person’s sense of wellbeing and promote a sense of calm and peace.

BIAS IN MEDICAL DECISION MAKING

How do people make decisions and how do they choose between different treatment options? Decisions are made using ‘heuristics’, or general rules of thumb, which reduce the time and effort required. Normally this method yields fairly good results; however, there are times when they lead to systematic biases (Plous 1993). In these situations, assumptions are made and information is neglected, downplayed or overplayed, or based on what is easily recalled. In healthcare, unrecognised bias of this nature can have dire repercussions, affecting a clinician’s ability to diagnose and treat effectively and a patient’s ability to make good choices.

It is both normal and human to have a range of biases that influence the types of treatments that are considered appropriate, based on the individual’s personal, ideological, religious, ethical, cultural, educational and philosophical ideals and experiences. Good clinicians are aware of their personal biases and will openly disclose those that may influence a patient’s care. In some cases, this is easier said than done. Stating known or potential bias can be particularly sensitive when the practitioner has strongly held religious beliefs that may limit their practice or determine their attitudes to different therapies, as well as when it comes to declaring commercial interests.

Healing is a human vocation that arises from the desire to do the best for humanity. The
patient–practitioner relationship, however, is not only a therapeutic one, it is commonly a commercial one. Healing is a business that sustains the personal lives of individual practitioners and drives the healthcare and pharmaceutical industries, which are among the biggest industries in the world. In 2002 the combined profits for the top 10 drug companies in the Fortune 500 list were greater than those of all the other 490 companies combined (Angell 2004).

One important source of bias that is becoming increasingly recognised concerns the millions of dollars spent by the pharmaceutical industry in a bid to influence doctors’ decision making. The seemingly unlimited marketing budgets and provision of gifts, luxuries and educational events has forced the medical profession to attempt to limit these sorts of inducements (Studdert et al 2004). The extent of the industry’s influence is vast and has not always been obvious. In her book on the pharmaceutical industry, Marcia Angell, a former editor-in-chief of the New England Journal of Medicine, states:

> Over the past two decades the pharmaceutical industry has moved very far from its original high purpose of discovering and producing useful new drugs. Now primarily a marketing machine to sell drugs of dubious benefit, this industry uses its wealth and power to co-opt every institution that might stand in its way, including the US Congress, the FDA, academic medical centers, and the medical profession itself.

Angell 2004

Not only are doctors subject to the influence of the pharmaceutical industry, they may also have other pecuniary interests that could bias their clinical decision making, such as commercial interests in pathology companies and their own clinical dispensaries.

**COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE PRODUCTS**

Several thousand complementary medicine products are now available on the market, the vast majority of which are available without prescription. Choosing the best product, correct dose and time-frame for use and having realistic expectations of the treatment are just some of the factors that healthcare practitioners must consider before recommending a specific product (Table 6.1). These factors, which are addressed in further detail in the monographs and chapters of this book, must be considered in the light of each individual patient’s circumstances, including their condition and comorbidities, renal and hepatic function, personal preferences, financial resources and their ability to self-monitor their condition.

Complementary medicines in Australia are regulated in the same way as pharmaceutical medicines, and are evaluated for quality and safety; however, seemingly similar products will vary with respect to their efficacy and supporting scientific evidence. Most complementary medicines are available over the counter (OTC) through pharmacies, health food stores and supermarkets; however, there are also certain complementary medicines that are available as practitioner-only products. These are prescribed and dispensed only by a CAM practitioner; they can have different potencies and formulations from those available OTC and include extemporaneously compounded herbs that require time, specific knowledge and expertise to dispense. Clearly, making product choices can be confusing, and clinicians should be encouraged to become familiar with the products available and eventually identify a group of favoured products they feel confident in prescribing.

There are many good reasons for including complementary medicines into routine practice (Table 6.2). Medicines that are supported by good evidence of efficacy and safety, or which offer advantages over conventional medicines in terms of cost-effectiveness, should be considered an essential part of routine clinical practice. Indeed, there could be seen to be an ethical imperative for considering the use of such complementary medicines, as not to do so would deprive patients of potentially safe and effective treatments (see Table 6.3 and specific monographs for further details).

**COST EFFECTIVENESS OF CAM**

In October 2005 a report titled The role of CAM in the NHS examined whether treatment approaches not normally funded by the National Health Service (UK) could provide
TABLE 6.1 FACTORS TO CONSIDER WHEN RECOMMENDING A COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRODUCT FACTORS</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mechanism/s of action</td>
<td>How well established are these?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do they seem plausible?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evidence and expectations</td>
<td>Is it likely to achieve treatment goals? In what time-frame?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do not rely on label claims alone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consider the type of evidence available for this particular indication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For herbs also consider: extract and plant part/s tested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For nutrients: consider chemical form and bioavailability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dose and administration route</td>
<td>Ensure these are correct for the specific indication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency, timing and ease of use</td>
<td>Reduced frequency improves compliance. Consider timing, such as before, during or after meals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quality control standards</td>
<td>Not all countries impose high quality control standards on the manufacture of complementary medicines; e.g. the USA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In Australia, only use products with AUST L or AUST R numbers on the label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combination products or single entities</td>
<td>For combination products, consider dosage and potential synergy of individual ingredients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential to induce adverse reactions</td>
<td>Consider potential likelihood of adverse reaction and consequence (see Chapter 7 for more information).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential to induce interactions</td>
<td>Are harmful, beneficial or neutral interactions possible?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Should the product be avoided, used only under professional supervision, or actively prescribed? (Use METOPIA algorithm in Chapter 8.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contraindications</td>
<td>Take special care with high risk groups (see Chapters 7 and 10 for more information).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>Consider sensitivity to light and heat, need for refrigeration and shelf-life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost</td>
<td>Compare cost with that of other treatments — medicinal and non-medicinal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>Is it available OTC or only from a practitioner?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 6.2 REASONS FOR USING COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES

- **Efficacy** — will alleviate symptoms of disease, reduce exacerbation or present a cure.
- **Safety** — present a safer treatment option than other therapies.
- **Cost** — when they provide lower cost treatment options.
- **Adjunct** — if the efficacy and/or safety of other interventions can be improved with adjunctive use.
- **Prevention** — when they provide safe prevention strategies in at-risk populations.
- **Enhance health** — increase sense of wellbeing and quality of life.
- **Enlists patients’ involvement in their own healthcare.**

Some financial relief, while retaining good quality patient care (Smallwood 2005). The report, commissioned by HRH Prince Charles, involved an assessment of the scientific evidence, interviews with experts, such as researchers, policymakers and healthcare professionals, and case studies to draw together published and experiential information, financial data and economic forecasting.

The report suggested that acupuncture may provide cost benefits in general practice when used for musculoskeletal conditions or as an adjunct to conventional treatment for lower back pain, migraine and stroke rehabilitation. With regard to herbal medicine, the enquiry identified several OTC herbal medicines such as St John’s wort, phytodolor, Echinacea, Ginkgo biloba, devil’s claw, hawthorn, horse chestnut and saw palmetto that provide potential cost savings to the government, while offering similar or greater benefits than pharmaceutical treatments. More recently, a report on the cost effectiveness of complementary medicines produced by the National Institute of Complementary Medicine (NICM) in Australia suggested that ‘millions in healthcare costs could be saved without compromising patient outcomes if complementary medicines were
These healthcare professionals dispense advice and sell products in the same consultation, as do CAM practitioners, such as naturopaths, herbalists and traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) practitioners.

The direct dispensing of products provides practitioners with some assurance of patient compliance and promotes the use of correct dosage, administration forms and extracts. This may be particularly important for herbal products. Direct dispensing is also convenient for patients and gives them the confidence that a practitioner who is aware of their history and current needs has directed them to the best treatment. If a decision to dispense products is made, this should obviously be done in an ethical manner, and treatment plans must always be dictated by the best interests of the patient.

**ETHICAL CONDUCT**

The issues of ethical practitioner conduct have their basis in the Hippocratic oath, which acknowledges the inherent inequality of the practitioner–patient relationship and the responsibility of the doctor to use this to improve the health of their patients, who may be vulnerable and who entrust themselves to medical care.

The ethical conduct of doctors has since been explored by various professional associations and colleges such as the Australian Medical Association and Royal Australian College of General Practitioners. The standards of ethical conduct (AMA 2004) include:

- always acting in the best interests of patients
- not exploiting patients for any reason
- respecting the patient’s right to make their own decisions and to accept or reject advice about treatment or procedures
- ensuring patients are aware of fees, and that healthcare costs are openly discussed and direct financial interests disclosed.

These standards also apply to IM, and the sale of complementary medicines must conform with these principles, insofar as the interests of the patient are the foremost consideration and patients are fully informed about the nature, benefits, risks and costs of any proposed treatment, as well as any financial interests of the practitioner. Patients also need to be aware that they have the right to accept or reject any advice (AMA 2004).

---

**TABLE 6.3 EXAMPLES OF HERBS AND NATURAL SUPPLEMENTS WITH PROVEN EFFICACY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HERB/NATURAL SUPPLEMENT</th>
<th>PROVEN EFFICACY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chaste tree</td>
<td>Premenstrual syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranberry</td>
<td>Urinary tract infection prophylaxis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>Cardiovascular disease prevention; lipid-lowering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St John’s wort</td>
<td>Depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ginkgo biloba</td>
<td>Dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucosamine sulphate</td>
<td>Osteoarthritis: symptoms and disease progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawthorn</td>
<td>Chronic heart failure (New York Heart Association classes I–II)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey</td>
<td>Infection control/wound healing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horse chestnut</td>
<td>Chronic venous insufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kava kava</td>
<td>Anxiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peppermint</td>
<td>Irritable bowel syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>Preventing antibiotic-induced diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pygeum</td>
<td>Benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saw palmetto</td>
<td>BPH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea tree oil</td>
<td>Topical infections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

more widely used’ (Access Economics 2010). This report, which examined the direct costs associated with the use of selected therapies, supports the conclusions of the UK study by suggesting that acupuncture, St John’s wort, fish oils and phytodolor all offer potential cost savings when used for selected conditions (see NICM 2014).
INFORMED CONSENT

The ethical precepts of informed consent and the respect for patient autonomy compel healthcare practitioners to inform their patients about the range of appropriate treatments available, their associated costs and risks, and to respect the right of patients to make their own decisions. In practice, this can be problematic, as it remains unclear how much information practitioners are expected to know themselves and how much patients require.

This issue is addressed by the joint position statement on complementary medicine made by the Royal Australian College of General Practitioners (RACGP) and the Australasian Integrative Medicine Association (AIMA):

General practitioners require a basic understanding of natural and complementary medicine and should receive sufficient training in their undergraduate, vocational and further education to enable them to include natural/complementary medicines with proven safety and efficacy in their practice, and to discuss issues with their patients on an informed basis.

The key principle of evidence-based medicine should be the basis of evaluating natural and complementary medicines and their use by the medical profession. It should also be the basis of any collaborative relationships between general practitioners and complementary therapists.

RACGP/AIMA 2004

Based on this statement it would seem reasonable that all general practitioners need to know enough about widely available complementary therapies to use safe and effective, evidence-based therapies where appropriate, and to avoid predictable adverse events and interactions induced by commonly used complementary therapies. It has further been argued that doctors have an ethical and even a legal obligation to become familiar with this area and open a dialogue with their patients about complementary treatments to provide quality care and address safety concerns (Brophy 2003).

Unfortunately this is a difficult task, as most medical schools give little or no time to teaching about evidence-based complementary therapies, and the opportunities for vocational and postgraduate medical education about CAM remain limited. As a result, having ready access to quality, evidence-based, independent information sources is essential to guide clinicians when making healthcare decisions or faced with patient enquiries about CAM.

EVIDENCE-BASED MEDICINE

The idea that practitioners need to refer to evidence is the basis of evidence-based medicine (EBM), which has been described by Sackett et al (1996) as ‘the conscientious, explicit, and judicious use of current best evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients’. These authors go on to state:

The practice of evidence-based medicine means integrating individual clinical expertise with the best available external clinical evidence from systematic research. By individual clinical expertise we mean the proficiency and judgment that individual clinicians acquire through clinical experience and clinical practice. Increased expertise is reflected in many ways, but especially in more effective and efficient diagnosis and in the more thoughtful identification and compassionate use of individual patients’ predicaments, rights, and preferences in making clinical decisions about their care.

This statement acknowledges that, in practice, for most treatment decisions the conclusive evidence simply does not yet exist, and the best available evidence may simply be clinical experience or anecdotal reports. It is also clear that each practitioner and patient must seek out the necessary information they require, and interpret this evidence in the light of each individual situation.

EVIDENCE IN PRACTICE

EBM adds another dimension to the art of medicine and requires clinicians to review the evidence of safety and efficacy for the therapy under consideration, as well as to understand the inherent limitations of the available evidence and its relevance to a specific situation. It also involves weighing up the evidence for a number of different therapies, which includes an assessment of their costs and risks versus
their potential benefits (see PEACE mnemonic in Chapter 1).

In the specific case of CAM, a growing number of treatments have been subject to scientific investigation, with over 6000 RCTs identified and made available through the central Cochrane Library. Although this is encouraging, many therapies do not yet have established evidence and some remain difficult to assess under controlled conditions (e.g. massage). In practice, this should not preclude them from being viable treatment options, but it can place some limitations on use. Ultimately, clinical decision making should be guided by the evidence available (Fig. 6.1).

- When there is evidence for a lack of effect, use should be discouraged, especially if there is the potential to induce adverse effects.

This approach is summarised by the four Ps: Protect, Permit, Promote and Partner (Jonas et al 1999). Thus, practitioners need to protect their patients by ensuring the safety and cost-effectiveness of treatments, permit therapies that are safe and inexpensive, even if their efficacy has not been conclusively proven, promote proven practices and partner with patients and other complementary therapists (Jonas 2001) (Table 6.4).

Complementary therapies with rigorous evidence for efficacy and safety that do not require specialised skills or expertise to implement should be considered part of mainstream practice and used by all healthcare practitioners, whereas other therapies/medicines with less rigorous evidence or requiring specific expertise may be more appropriately used by those with a special interest and/or appropriate training. Therapies that have evidence for a lack of efficacy and safety should be abandoned along with the long list of useless and harmful therapies that have been discontinued throughout medical history.

**FIGURE 6.1 Paradigm of clinical decision making (Based on Renella & Fanconi 2006, adapted from Cohen & Eisenberg 2002)**
TABLE 6.4 PRINCIPLES FOR ADVISING THE USE OF COMPLEMENTARY THERAPIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STATUS OF EVIDENCE</th>
<th>SPECIAL SKILL/TRAINING REQUIRED</th>
<th>SPECIAL SKILL/TRAINING NOT REQUIRED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Strong evidence for quality, safety and cost-effectiveness</td>
<td>Promote and partner with therapist Encourage/recommend/implement therapy. OR Refer to appropriate practitioner and/or consider obtaining required skills (e.g. acupuncture).</td>
<td>Promote and partner with patient Encourage/recommend/ implement therapy. Consider as part of standard practice (e.g. dietary modification).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient or inconclusive evidence for quality, safety and cost-effectiveness</td>
<td>Permit and partner with therapist Continue therapy with caution and monitor patient in collaboration with other practitioner if necessary. OR Consider more appropriate therapies.</td>
<td>Permit and partner with patient Continue therapy with caution and monitor patient. OR Consider more appropriate therapies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong evidence against quality, safety and cost-effectiveness</td>
<td>Protect and partner with patient Discourage use. Discuss reasons and desired outcomes and consider more appropriate therapies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A MULTIDISCIPLINARY, COLLABORATIVE APPROACH

It remains unclear which therapies should be considered within the domain of every doctor and which should be considered areas of special interest or the exclusive domain of CAM practitioners. It is clear however, that the practice of IM requires a multidisciplinary approach with collaboration and communication between the different practitioners who are aware of their own limitations and who have declared interests and expertise. It is also clear that whether or not doctors are prepared to personally use CAM, all doctors need to be prepared to discuss their use and inform patients of viable evidence-based options, as well as assess the likelihood of safety issues or interactions.

OPEN COMMUNICATION

Effective communication and teamwork is essential for the delivery of high-quality, safe patient care: communication failure is an extremely common cause of inadvertent patient harm.

Numerous surveys have shown that patients commonly combine CAM with conventional medical treatments, outside the knowledge of their various healthcare providers. This may be particularly true in hospitals, where it has been found that while almost 50% of surgical patients take complementary medicines in the perioperative period, 80% are not asked about this use (Braun et al 2006). It is also estimated that more than 50% of users of CAM do not disclose this use to either their hospital doctors (Braun et al 2006) or their GPs (MacLennan et al 2002). In addition, many treatments are patient-initiated without professional advice.

According to a review of 12 studies, patients do not disclose use of CAM to their medical practitioner for reasons that can be grouped into three main themes (Robinson & McGrail 2004).

1. Concerns about eliciting a negative response, disapproval and rejection. Patients fear they will be persuaded to cease use and the practitioner will not continue to provide patient care.
2. Patients believe that the practitioner does not need to know about CAM use because it is irrelevant to the biomedical model of treatment; their practitioner is ignorant about CAM and would not be able to understand why it is being used or be able to contribute useful information about it.
3. Not being asked about CAM use or perceiving practitioner disinterest in the topic. (This has proved to be more significant in preventing discussion than previously thought [Braun et al 2006].)

It is therefore not unusual for there to be little coordination between patient-initiated and clinician-initiated treatments, which can result in suboptimal ‘integrative care’ and potentially unsafe outcomes.
As the popularity of CAM continues to grow, medical practitioners in the community and hospital settings will keep coming into contact with patients who are using, or considering using, these treatments, making the issue of communication and competence in dealing with CAM-related issues more urgent. Asking patients about possible use of complementary medicines may seem daunting; however, it is a necessary measure to promote patient safety. It also provides an opportunity to gain insight into a patient’s beliefs and attitudes, as well as their willingness to be involved in their own healthcare.

Although discussions about complementary therapies may enhance the therapeutic relationship, non-disclosure can indicate a serious deficiency in this relationship, for if patients are unwilling to discuss their use, it is also possible that they will not discuss other personal information that may have an impact on their health and medical treatment. Non-disclosure also refers to a lack of interdisciplinary communication. Although many patients would like to benefit from treatment and advice from both doctors and natural therapists, effective collaboration between these groups appears to be limited and it has been estimated that of the 44% of Australians who visit natural therapists, only 13% do so on the advice of their doctors.

INTERDISCIPLINARY COLLABORATION

True collaboration can only occur in an environment of shared respect and trust, and knowledge of what can be offered. In reality, both medical and CAM practitioners have several concerns about each other’s practice, which must be addressed in order to achieve a good working partnership.

For medical doctors, there are concerns that CAM practitioners may put patients at risk of delayed or missed diagnosis and/or delay the use of more effective therapies (Cohen et al 2005). There is also concern that CAM practitioners might encourage patients to refuse use of ‘proven’ treatments in preference for ‘unproven’ ones, particularly in serious diseases such as cancer or HIV-AIDS. The promotion of implausible or untrue claims or unsafe complementary therapies that waste patients’ time and money, or induce adverse events, is another source of apprehension.

Complementary therapists, on the other hand, may be concerned that medical doctors too readily prescribe symptom-suppressing drugs, yet do little to address underlying causes and support natural homeostasis through diet, lifestyle and preventive approaches. There is concern that patients may waste their time and money on treatments that exert significant side effects while providing limited benefits, and that medical practitioners may advise against the use of natural therapies because of fear, ignorance or arrogance. Furthermore, natural therapists may be concerned that their positions are being usurped by doctors who take on the use of natural and complementary therapies with little specific training and little consideration for their underlying philosophies and holistic considerations (Cohen 2001).

Many of these concerns are based on ignorance and misunderstanding between the practitioner groups and can be addressed through open and honest communication and formalised communication strategies, one of the most important of which is through the provision of formal correspondence in referral letters.

REFERRAL LETTERS

Referral letters are a standardised method of professional communication between practitioners. They involve both outgoing and incoming correspondence that sets out what has been done to date and any specific requests. Referral letters may request a second opinion, ask for help in patient management through a collaborative approach or transfer patient care (Table 6.5). Upon receiving a referral letter, professional courtesy and good patient care dictates that a practitioner sends a return correspondence, thanking the referring practitioner for the referral and stating the details of any procedures undertaken, new findings, clinical impressions or recommendations, as well as their rationale, and arrangements for follow-up. Such correspondence forms an essential part of professional collaboration and may also have legal status as part of the medical record and/or eligibility for funding or patient reimbursement. It also ensures that practitioners understand each other’s expectations and goes far towards fostering goodwill and mutual respect.
CHAPTER 6 INTRODUCTION TO THE PRACTICE OF INTEGRATIVE MEDICINE

Although effective communication is vital, there are still many issues that need to be resolved before interdisciplinary collaboration between complementary and conventional practitioners becomes the norm. These include the credentialling and regulation of CAM practitioners, differences in nomenclature between disciplines, equity of access in different healthcare settings, the requirements for evidence-based practice, appropriate funding models and medico-legal issues, including referrals and vicarious liability (Cohen 2004). Despite these obstacles the fruits of interdisciplinary collaboration are becoming evident, with the emergence of clinics in which doctors and natural therapists share premises and work together for the benefit of their patients. Currently this collaboration and drive towards IM seems to be in response to patient demand rather than driven by professional associations, government policy or the accumulation of supportive scientific evidence.

PATIENTS’ RESPONSIBILITY
Patients now have unprecedented access to healthcare information, as well as unprecedented power to choose the type of services they receive. This power is further supported by the ethical principle of informed consent and respect for patient autonomy. With power, however, comes responsibility. Patients must therefore begin to accept the responsibility to become more informed and to be active participants in the decision-making process and the implementation of their healthcare. This responsibility also extends to implementing lifestyle interventions, as summarised by the SENSE approach (see Chapter 1). Thus in every encounter, whether patients are currently well, at risk of disease or have an established disease, practitioners should take the opportunity to enlist the patient’s cooperation in implementing their own healthcare and discussing interventions that can be used to enhance health, prevent disease and complement the use of any disease-specific interventions.

PERSONAL AND PROFESSIONAL SATISFACTION
The role of the IM practitioner is particularly challenging and rewarding. It compels practitioners to develop multiple skills, be informed about many therapies, navigate between different information sources and practitioners and keep an open mind. It also broadens the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 6.5 ELEMENTS OF A REFERRAL LETTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ELEMENT</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Professional letterhead                 | Referring practitioner’s name  
                                        | Qualifications  
                                        | Practice address  
                                        | Phone number/fax/email  
                                        | Provider number if appropriate  
                                        | Date of referral |
| Practitioner and patient identification | Details of practitioner to whom referral is being made  
                                        | Patient identifying details: full name, date of birth, address, hospital UR (patient) number etc |
| Patient’s history                       | Brief patient history including background, any special considerations, past history and present complaints  
                                        | Investigations, treatment to date, including current and/or proposed treatments  
                                        | Pharmaceutical or complementary, rationale and expected outcomes including involvement of other practitioners  
                                        | Any psychosocial concerns |
| Reasons for referral                   | Detailed reasons for referral, including expected actions of other practitioner (e.g. second opinion, further investigation, specific intervention, help in case management, transfer of care etc) |
| Conclusion                              | Arrangements for follow up  
                                        | Referring practitioner’s signature |
capacity of practitioners to deal with a great variety of patient issues from a number of perspectives, thus providing continuous intellectual stimulation and both professional and personal satisfaction. To have people’s confidence as a practitioner and to participate in their most emotionally charged moments, which may include both the beginning and the end of their life, is a great privilege, and sharing the triumphs and tragedies of individuals from different walks of life provides rewards that enrich both the professional and the personal lives of practitioners.

Our knowledge of health and disease is far from complete, and healthcare practitioners regularly deal with uncertainty. The implementation of IM, however, recognises that compassion is always helpful and healing is always possible, even when curing is not (Rakel & Weil 2003). It also recognises that practitioners must endeavour always to do their best with what they have at any point in time and to be comfortable in the knowledge that their best will continually get better.

By fostering interaction, cross-disciplinary research, and collaborative care, redefined standards of care will emerge that are scientifically based and interdisciplinary in nature. The outgrowth of such a paradigm shift will change the legal and practice environment from one of fear to freedom.

**Engler et al 2009**

**SUMMARY POINTS**

- Taking time to develop a good therapeutic relationship may be therapeutic in itself and provides the best foundation for any other therapy.
- The integrative approach compels practitioners to develop an intimate understanding of their patients’ lives, and to provide social support, understanding and compassion.
- The widespread use of complementary therapies compels doctors to discuss their use with patients and to do so on an informed basis and in a non-judgmental manner.
- All healthcare practitioners should have access to appropriate and independent information, so that they can provide sound advice and detect predictable interactions and safety issues.
- Healthcare practitioners need to be aware of their particular biases, limitations and financial interests, and to clearly state these to patients when patient care may be affected.
- Healthcare practitioners should attempt to make patients active participants in the decision-making process and the implementation of their own healthcare.
- Healthcare practitioners need to liaise with different practitioners in order to advise on and implement the most appropriate interventions.
- Complementary therapies/medicines with rigorous evidence for efficacy and safety that do not require specialised skill or expertise to implement should be considered as part of mainstream practice.
- When efficacy of treatment is unknown and there are no apparent safety concerns, patients deciding to use these therapies should be supported and supervised.
- Therapies/medicines with less rigorous evidence or requiring specific expertise may be more appropriately used by healthcare practitioners with a special interest and/or appropriate training.
- When there are differences in the supporting evidence and quality of different herbal extracts and other CAM, the recommendation of specific brands of CAM products may be appropriate.
- Compassion is always helpful and healing is always possible, even when curing is not.

**REFERENCES**


Brophy E. Does a doctor have a duty to provide information and advice about complementary and alternative medicine? J Law Med 10.3 (2003): 271–284.


CHAPTER 7
SAFETY OF COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES

Complementary medicines (CMs) are widely used by the public as a non-pharmaceutical option that can be used to prevent, treat and manage disease (MacLennan et al. 2002, Braun et al. 2010b). They are used by people with a range of diseases and comorbidities such as low back pain, cancer, diabetes and cardiovascular disease (Broom et al. 2012, Davis et al. 2010, Grant et al. 2012, Manya et al. 2012). They are also used by people with no diagnosed disease but wanting to prevent disease, improve quality of life and general wellbeing, or for symptom relief. While MacLennan et al. (2002) reported that people assumed if a medicine was ‘natural’ it must therefore be safe, times have changed and more people recognise that safety is relative and some CMs have the ability to cause drug interactions or even side effects (Braun 2007).

Finding information about CM safety is not straightforward for consumers as CM products are not accompanied by comprehensive consumer product information (CPI) in the same way that many pharmaceutical medicines are; many CMs are self-selected without professional advice, which means that much-needed information is not delivered with the product (Jamison 2003, MacLennan et al. 2002).

Importantly, people who use CMs do not tend to use them as true alternatives to conventional treatment and it’s not uncommon for care to be received from multiple healthcare providers over a similar time period. This situation is not necessarily dangerous and can produce significant benefits when well coordinated; however, if communication is poor, and complementary and conventional practitioners remain unaware of what the other has recommended, a potentially unsafe situation can arise. The prospect of interactions or adverse drug reactions leading to misdiagnosis, induction of withdrawal effects and misleading pathology test results are examples of unwanted outcomes when combined care is not coordinated.

In the real world, people are exposed to risk whenever they actively choose to undertake a treatment or choose to do without. Some risks are identifiable, while others are unknown. In practice, in order for patients to make an informed decision, these risks must be classified into those that are acceptable and those that are unacceptable, and then considered against the potential benefit, Over-the-counter (OTC) CMs that are produced under good manufacturing practice (GMP) conditions and meet government regulations offer a lower risk and potentially more cost-effective option than other treatments for some indications, and are generally considered safe when used appropriately under ‘normal’ circumstances; however, they are not entirely devoid of risk.

A BRIEF HISTORY OF MEDICATION SAFETY

The potential for medical care to cause harm has been appreciated throughout history. In ancient times, knowledge of medicine,
pharmacology and the healing arts developed through trial and error, with many adverse outcomes and deaths along the way. Although both practitioners and patients were aware that health could be compromised by the ‘cures’ used to alleviate disease, it was in ancient Greece that patient safety was formally acknowledged as the highest priority. The maxim *primum non nocere* (First, do no harm) is attributed by some historians to Galen (AD 131–201) and is still a basic tenet of modern medical practice (Ilan & Fowler 2005).

As societies developed over the centuries, so too did their systems of medicine and healing — particularly the Vedic system of medicine, which originated more than 3000 years ago in India, and Chinese medicine, which has an appreciation of the importance of dosage. Persian medicine had a major influence on the development of medicine in the Middle East and Europe, most notably with *The canon of medicine*, written by the Persian scientist Avicenna (AD 980–1037) in the 11th century. This major work documented 760 medicines, made comments about their use and effectiveness, and remained a standard medical text in western Europe for seven centuries. Avicenna recommended the testing of new medicines on animals and humans before general use, no doubt in recognition of their potential to have both beneficial and harmful effects.

In medieval Europe, there was a mixture of scientific and spiritual influences on the practice of medicine, so factors such as destiny, sin and astrology played a role in perceptions of health and disease. Two major trends appeared during this period, as the practice of medicine developed among both physicians of the upper classes and folk healers who lived in the villages. From the 14th to 17th centuries monasteries played a major role in the provision of medicine and developed great expertise in pharmacognosy. At the same time, the Christian church was instrumental in eliminating much of the practice of folk medicine through its witch hunts, which many believe retarded the development of medicine.

In the 16th century, Paracelsus (1493–1541) was one of the first physicians to believe that chemicals could cure and cause certain illnesses. He determined that specific chemicals were responsible for the toxicity of a plant or animal poison, and documented the body’s responses to those chemicals. Paracelsus then concluded that the body’s response was influenced by the dose received. He further discovered that a small dose of a substance may be harmless, or even beneficial, whereas a larger dose can be toxic. In essence, he started expounding the concept of a dose–response relationship. Paracelsus made an enormous contribution to medicine when he stated plainly, ‘What is there that is not poison? All things are poison and nothing (is) without poison. Solely the dose determines that a thing is not a poison’ (Watson 2005). As a result, he is sometimes referred to as the ‘Father of Toxicology’.

In practice, this refers to the biological effect of chemicals that can be either beneficial or deleterious. Which of these effects occurs depends on the amount of active material present at the site of action (internal dose), and the concentration of the amount present relates to the amount of substance administered (external dose).

During the 18th and 19th centuries deliberate clinical testing of medicines began, and the study of dose–response relationships led to the safer use of medicines. From the 19th century onwards, developments in pharmacology, physiology and chemistry meant that drugs could be artificially synthesised and produced by large-scale manufacturing. During this time, animal- and plant-based medicines began to be replaced in clinical use by mass-produced pharmaceutical medicines which were being newly created in laboratories or synthesised from traditional medicines (e.g. morphine from *Papaver somniferum*).

Up to this point, Western herbalism had been intrinsically linked to the practice of medicine, and herbal products were an important source of treatment. Empirical knowledge accumulated and formed a body of evidence, now referred to as ‘traditional evidence’, a knowledge base built on the basic tenets of good clinical practice (i.e. careful observation of the patient, the environment and the diseases). This huge and diverse store of learning includes not only prescriptions for health, but also safety information. The traditional evidence base is still expanding and becoming more accessible as researchers investigate and document various healing practices worldwide. Although traditional evidence provides a valuable starting point, it has many limitations,
especially with regard to issues of safety. Careful patient observation is likely to detect immediate or serious adverse effects, but is less likely to identify slow-onset responses or mild-to-moderate side effects that could be considered symptoms of a new disease. Additionally, many medicinal preparations contained multiple ingredients, making it difficult to identify which one might be responsible for inducing an adverse reaction.

More recently, the traditional evidence base has been joined by a scientific evidence base, which provides additional information about pharmacological actions, clinical effects and safety; however, much still remains unknown. This is particularly true regarding the safety of CMs in children and in women who are pregnant or lactating, and concerning drug interactions, which is a relatively new phenomenon. Just as Galen pronounced hundreds of years ago, ‘First, do no harm’ should remain the practitioner’s guide.

**WHAT IS SAFETY?**

Safety is a complex issue that is determined by considering the interaction between ‘likelihood’ and ‘consequence’. These two variables will differ for each medicine and individual. The likelihood can be graded from ‘near impossible’ to ‘certainly likely’, and the severity of consequence can be graded from ‘negligible’ to ‘serious and life-threatening’, with many outcomes lying somewhere between these extremes (Fig 7.1).

With regard to medication safety, avoidance of an adverse drug reaction (ADR) is paramount. Several factors are associated with an

---

**CLINICAL NOTE — HISTORY OF POISONS**

The history of poisons dates back to the earliest times, when humans observed toxic effects in nature, most likely by chance. By 1500 BC, written records indicate that the poisons hemlock, opium and certain metals were used in warfare and in facilitating executions. Over time, poisons were used with greater sophistication; notable poisoning victims include Socrates, Cleopatra and Claudius. Today, the ‘science of poisons’ is known as toxicology. This field of learning investigates the chemical and physical properties of poisons and their physiological or behavioural effects on living organisms, and uses qualitative and quantitative methods for analysis and for the development of procedures to treat poisoning (Langman & Kapur 2006). The 20th century was marked by an advanced understanding of toxicology; DNA and various biochemicals that maintain cellular functions were discovered, so that today we are discovering the toxic effects on organs and cells at the molecular level.

**FIGURE 7.1 Interaction between the two variables of ‘likelihood’ and ‘severity of consequence’ with regard to medication safety**

- **Negligible adverse effects**: Appears to be relatively safe
- **Near impossible occurrence**: May be relatively safe but still requires caution and professional advice
- **Serious adverse effects**: Is relatively unsafe and may require professional monitoring, dose modification or avoidance
- **Certain outcome**: Appears to be relatively safe but may cause mild adverse effects
increased likelihood of developing an ADR, such as advanced age and polypharmacy, but most ADRs occur in people who are prescribed treatment within the limits of accepted clinical practice (Burgess et al 2005).

**BENEFITS, RISK AND HARM**

Many different sources of risk are associated with therapeutic products:

- **The product itself** — side effects and toxicity of ingredients, administration form, potential harm through excessive dosage and length of time used.

- **Manufacturing factors** — poor manufacturing process, which introduces contaminants, uses unsafe excipients or incorrect ingredients, incorrect labelling etc.

- **Prescribing faults** — incorrect product prescribed, based on insufficient information about it, the patient or the disease, or simply negligence.

- **Patient factors** — incorrect use of a product when information for appropriate use is poorly understood, or insufficient or inappropriate self-diagnosis and treatment.

Whenever a treatment is chosen, it is done so in the belief that its potential benefit will outweigh its potential to cause harm. Practice guidelines and traditions provide guidance when making risk–benefit evaluations and are based on common treatment decisions made many times before by many clinicians, together with the available evidence. Table 7.1 lists the potential risks associated with the use of complementary medicines. The safety information tends to come from a variety of sources, such as post-marketing surveillance and spontaneous reporting schemes, laboratory and animal studies, anecdotal reports, theoretical reasoning and, increasingly, formal studies.

The amount of safety literature published on pharmaceutical medicines is overwhelming. It has been estimated that 30% of the primary published literature about ADR appears in anecdotal reports and 35% as formal studies or randomised controlled trials (Aronson et al 2002). Regarding the safety of complementary medicines, traditional evidence and theoretical reasoning are heavily relied upon to provide guidance together with post-market surveillance studies and information from adverse event databases. Some clinical studies have looked at safety of the test intervention; however, this tends to be a secondary aim and often studies are not sufficiently powered to identify side effects. This poses a challenge for practitioners when making a rational decision about the relative risks of treatment and is one of the great difficulties of CM practice. For the public who are interested in using OTC

### Table 7.1 Potential Risks Associated with the Use of Complementary Medicines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Harm</th>
<th>Circumstances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delay in diagnosis</td>
<td>When a patient has avoided or delayed seeking medical advice because they are self-treating with CMs. When a complementary medicine practitioner has not referred a patient to a medical practitioner for early diagnosis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverse effects</td>
<td>Increased risk of adverse reactions with inappropriate use of CM products or when patients self-select CM products without professional advice. Increased risk if products used are not manufactured to pharmaceutical grade quality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug interactions</td>
<td>Increased risk of drug interactions when patients: (a) self-select CM products without professional advice; (b) do not disclose use of CM products to their pharmacist or medical doctor; (c) do not disclose use of pharmaceutical drugs to their CM practitioner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial cost</td>
<td>If an expensive medicine or therapy is not providing benefits and a patient continues to use it, this presents an unnecessary financial burden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lost opportunity to treat</td>
<td>Failure to undertake a different treatment with proven benefits, when the current treatment is ineffective but is being used to the exclusion of others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>False hope of a cure</td>
<td>When cure is unlikely, the use of any medicine or therapy that is associated with false hope may delay important considerations, such as attending to ‘unfinished business’.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
products, it is just as difficult to find reliable and understandable information about their safety and efficacy.

**ADVERSE DRUG REACTIONS (ADRs)**

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines an ADR as a ‘response to a medicine which is noxious and unintended that occurs at doses normally used in humans’. When two medicines interact in a way that produces an unwanted effect, this is also referred to as an ADR. Adverse reactions have been classified into different types depending on severity and likelihood or onset of reaction, and do not always result in serious outcomes; however, an ADR is considered serious when it is suspected of causing death, danger to life, admission to hospital, prolongation of hospital stay, absence from productive activity, increased investigational or treatment costs, or birth defects.

Adverse reactions can arise from either an intrinsic or an extrinsic effect. An intrinsic effect refers to the active ingredient itself, such as the herbal medicine present within a product, whereas an extrinsic effect relates to product characteristics resulting from poor manufacturing processes or quality control, such as contamination and adulteration. Intrinsic adverse effects can be categorised in a similar way to pharmaceutical medicines and are mainly type A or type B reactions.

**Type A reactions**

Type A reactions are the most common form and are typically dose-related, predictable from the known pharmacology of the medicine, associated with high morbidity but low mortality, and potentially avoidable (Routledge et al 2004). People most at risk of a type A reaction are frail, older patients who are also likely to be receiving a combination of medicines and those with altered hepatic or renal function. There is now mounting evidence to indicate that some type A adverse reactions are due to genetic polymorphisms, which affect an individual’s drug clearance rate and therefore toxicological response. This may explain why certain individuals taking medicines in the recommended doses experience adverse reactions, whereas the majority of the population do not. Examples related to pharmaceutical medicine are bleeding with anticoagulants and hypoglycaemia with the use of insulin. An example for herbal medicine is licorice-associated hypertension, which is thought to be caused by increased renal sodium retention. The glycyrrhetinic acid in licorice inhibits renal 11-beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 and, by that mechanism, increases the access of cortisol to the mineralocorticoid receptor that causes renal sodium retention and potassium loss. If continued for sufficient time, clinically significant changes in blood pressure and potassium status develop. This can be avoided by recommending that high-dose licorice herbal products not be used for longer than 2 weeks (Heilmann et al 1999). In recognition of this adverse effect, some manufacturers produce licorice products that do not contain glycyrrhetinic acid, so that they can be used more safely in the long term.

Table 7.2 gives some examples of known or suspected type A adverse reactions to herbs and natural supplements. For many herbal and natural medicines, there is insufficient reliable information about possible adverse reactions; where available, evidence from clinical trials, case reports and post-marketing surveillance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HERB OR NATURAL SUPPLEMENT</th>
<th>ADVERSE EFFECT/S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
<td>Vomiting, anorexia and gastrointestinal discomfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creatine</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, cramping, dehydration, fluid retention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigonella foenum (fenugreek)</td>
<td>Diarrhoea, flatulence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fish oils</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal discomfort, diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allium sativum (garlic)</td>
<td>Breath and body odour, nausea, dyspepsia, flatulence, diarrhoea, increased bleeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zingiber officinale (ginger)</td>
<td>Gastric irritation, dyspepsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camellia sinensis (green or black tea)</td>
<td>CNS stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnema sylvestre</td>
<td>Hypoglycaemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paullinia cupana (guarana)</td>
<td>CNS stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, irritability, fatigue, nail changes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
systems are the main sources of information used in this book.

**Type B reactions**

Type B reactions are idiosyncratic and uncommon, difficult to predict and not dose related. They tend to have higher morbidity and mortality than type A reactions and are often immunologically mediated (Myers & Cheras 2004). Other factors contributing to type B reactions are receptor or drug metabolism abnormalities and the unmasking of a biological deficiency (e.g. glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency) (Bryant et al 2003). They do not appear to relate to genetic polymorphisms.

An example of a type B reaction to a pharmaceutical drug is interstitial nephritis with the use of NSAIDs. With regard to CMs, Asteraceae dermatitis provides a good example of a type B hypersensitivity reaction — specifically, an allergic contact dermatitis caused by exposure to allergens from the Asteraceae family or the daisy group of plants and plant extracts. Some examples of common plants that belong to this family are Arnica (Arnica montana), chamomile (Chamomilla recutita), marigold (Calendula officinalis), echinacea (Echinacea spp), tansy (Tanacetum vulgare), feverfew (Tanacetum parthenium) and yarrow (Achillea millefolium). The most important allergens in the Asteraceae family are the sesquiterpene lactones, which are present in the oleoresin fraction of the leaves, stems, flowers and possibly pollen (Gordon 1999). The condition is most frequently seen in middle-aged and elderly people; it typically starts in summer and disappears in the autumn or winter. The dermatitis manifests as eczema and can develop from exposure to airborne particles, direct topical application (such as cosmetics, perfumes, essential oils) or oral ingestion of allergenic components. The diagnosis of allergy can be difficult to establish, because there are few completely reliable laboratory tests and sometimes symptoms can mimic infectious disease symptoms. **Table 7.3** gives examples of known or suspected type B adverse reactions.

**Extrinsic factors**

Extrinsic factors are also a consideration and of particular relevance when medicinal products are not manufactured according to the standards of good manufacturing practice, such as some produced in the USA and various Asian countries. Problems can result from a lack of standardisation, contamination, substitution of raw materials, adulteration or incorrect extraction, preparation or dosage information.

**Regulation and Product Information**

Numerous regulations are in place in Australia and New Zealand to protect people from potentially unsafe and dubious therapeutic products. Both countries have an international best-practice, risk-based regulatory system that encompasses both complementary and pharmaceutical medicines. Currently the Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA) regulates the system in Australia, and aims to ensure the safety and quality of products and the truthful labelling of therapeutic goods. All products are entered onto the Australian Register of Therapeutic Goods (ARTG) and allocated an AUST L number if considered low risk (most CM products) or AUST R number if considered high risk, or low risk with a high-level claim (prescription drugs and many OTC pharmaceutical medicines). Products with either an Aust L or an Aust R number have been evaluated for safety and quality, whereas those with an AUST R number have also been evaluated.

---

**Table 7.3 Examples of Known or Suspected Type B Adverse Reactions to Herbs and Natural Supplements**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HERB OR NATURAL SUPPLEMENT</th>
<th>ADVERSE EFFECT/S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Andrographis paniculata</td>
<td>Urticaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aloe vera</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity and contact dermatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamomilla recutita</td>
<td>Asteraceae dermatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echinacea spp</td>
<td>Asteraceae dermatitis and anaphylaxis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanacetum parthenium</td>
<td>Asteraceae dermatitis — lip swelling, mouth ulceration and soreness when the leaves are chewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zingiber officinale</td>
<td>Contact dermatitis with topical use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thymus vulgaris</td>
<td>Contact dermatitis with topical use of the oil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It appears that many people are unclear about the TGA’s role in this regard and think it has a greater capacity to monitor product quality than actually occurs. According to a survey of more than 3000 people living in South Australia, approximately half assumed that CMs were independently tested by a government agency (MacLennan et al 2006).

It is important to note that the regulation of therapeutic goods varies greatly between countries and is influenced by ethnological, medical and historical factors. For instance, CM products are treated as foods by the Food and Drug Administration in the USA and not required to be manufactured to the same quality-control standards as pharmaceutical medicines (Brownie 2005).

While the regulation of CM products in Australia can always be improved, the current system employed by the TGA is providing an important safeguard for the public. This was clearly demonstrated in a national survey of over 1100 pharmacy customers attending 60 community pharmacies across Australia (Braun et al 2010a). Of the entire sample, 72% had taken a complementary medicine in the previous 12 months. Of these 7% (n = 55) thought they had experienced a side effect to a CM product at some time. Most (71%) described their reaction as mild, 22% as moderate and four people as severe. That works out at less than 0.5% of CM product users suspecting they had a serious reaction. As further details were not provided about the suspected reaction, causality could not be determined and the figures serve as a guide only.

RELIABLE INFORMATION SOURCES

When it comes to sources of information about herbal and natural medicines, Australian consumer reports consistently put family and friends as people’s main sources of information about CM. This was first seen back in a 1999 Australian consumer report which found that 51% of people surveyed ask their friends or relatives for advice, with their mothers ranked as number one for healthcare advice (and it is open to debate as to where the mothers get their information from). In 2001, an Australian rural survey produced similar results, finding that 64.5% of people first ask family and friends for advice (Wilkinson & Simpson 2001). Interestingly, 78% of nursing, pharmacy
or biomedical science students had used CAM in the previous 12 months, and 56% had visited a CAM practitioner. They, too, cited friends and family as their main sources of information (Wilkinson & Simpson 2001). More recent studies keep confirming that people seek advice from their family and friends and medical doctors and pharmacists are never ranked higher.

In recent years information technology has revolutionised the availability of health information for both practitioners and their patients. Besides relying on traditional sources of health information, such as healthcare providers, family and friends, people now have easy access to a variety of sources, particularly since the advent of the internet, email and text messaging.

Advertising plays a role in informing consumers about therapeutic products and is regulated by the government. Advertisements must comply with the Therapeutic Products Advertising Code and Therapeutic Product Act(s) and Rules, which state that advertising must be truthful, balanced and not misleading, and promote responsible use, and that the claims must be substantiated. The regulations relate to advertisements disseminated in all forms of media, including emails, websites and SMS messages. However, some information routes are exempt: bona fide news, editorial, public interest or entertainment programs are not restricted by the code, allowing for freedom of speech, but also allowing for sensationalism and inaccuracies.

In 2000, a study published in the New England Journal of Medicine found that media coverage of new drugs often exaggerates their benefits and downplays the associated risks (Moynihan et al 2000). The study analysed a sample of 207 stories released by 40 media outlets (36 newspapers, 4 television networks), which appeared between 1994 and 1998. Of the stories reviewed, 40% did not report benefits quantitatively and, of those that did, 83% used statistics to exaggerate the beneficial effect of the drug. Potential harm associated with use of the drug was not mentioned in 53% of stories, and 70% failed to mention costs. Based on the results of this study, it was concluded that news media stories about medicines may be inadequate or incomplete regarding benefits, risks and costs, and may fail to disclose financial ties between researchers and pharmaceutical companies.

It is clear that a number of factors influence the way journalists report health issues in the news media. One important factor relates to the information provided (or not provided) to the journalist by a medical journal, researcher or company in a press release. The following case about the safety of echinacea provides a local example. In 2002, an article entitled ‘Adverse reactions associated with echinacea — the Australian experience’ was published in a scientific journal. It described in detail five allergic reactions to different echinacea preparations, further stating that 51 adverse reaction reports involving echinacea had been reported to the Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee (ADRAC) (Mullins & Heddle 2002). This was then reported in the news media as alarming and drew much debate about the safety of herbal medicines in general. Inspection of the original article reveals that the reports were collected over a 21-year period, an important fact that failed to be included in the original press release (Flinders Medical Centre 2006).

A study published in the Journal of the American Medical Association suggests that incomplete or inaccurate press releases may be more common than once thought (Woloshin & Schwartz 2002). The study assessed the quality of press releases from seven high-profile journals, which were selected for their professional influence and because they are frequently cited by the news media. It was identified that for 544 articles published in the journals over the study period, 127 press releases were issued. Of these press releases, only 23% reported study limitations, 65% quantified study results and only 22% reported the source of funding.

Ideally, journalists, program researchers and writers involved in the media need to be able to assess the scientific information provided to them, and then present it accurately to consumers in a way that is easy to understand, unambiguous and not misleading, so that they can make better personal health decisions. Inaccurate, incomplete and inconsistent information not only confuses consumers, it also confuses healthcare providers and makes it difficult for them to determine which resource is useful and reliable.

A 2008 study by the National Prescribing Service in Australia found that both general
practitioners (GPs) and pharmacists seek or need information regarding complementary medicines, and are particularly interested in information about drug interactions, adverse effects, contraindications and evidence of effectiveness. GPs tend to refer to trade journals, MIMS, the internet in general, and peer-reviewed medical journals for information about CMs. Pharmacists' most common sources were the internet, MIMS and the Australian Pharmaceutical Products (APP) guide, colleagues and complementary medicine textbooks (Brown et al 2008). Interestingly, when asked which information sources were considered moderately or highly useful, CM textbooks came out on top for both groups of healthcare professionals. This implies that practitioners who only used standard drug information sources were not accessing the most useful resources available. Another consequence is the assumption by these practitioners that either little evidence exists (because little is available in standard pharmaceutical or medical texts or journals), or that there are no good resources.

Similarly, a study funded by the Department of Health and Ageing and the Pharmacy Guild that investigated the quality use of medicines in relation to complementary medicines found that pharmacists have trouble locating information they consider credible, and are keen for standardised information to be endorsed by a reputable organisation and made widely available.

**MEDICAL DATABASES AND TEXTS: INCONSISTENCY**

Unfortunately, some medical databases and textbooks that are widely used in the hospital system and universities are not always up to date; authors don't critically examine the evidence from primary sources and sometimes overstate the safety issues without considering the wider perspective. This makes it extremely difficult for a busy clinician to find accurate information in a timely manner. An example presented here is the purported interaction between *Ginkgo biloba* and warfarin. Ginkgolides found in ginkgo leaf inhibit platelet aggregation according to in vitro and ex vivo studies. As a result, it has been assumed that the effect is clinically relevant, and ginkgo has been implicated as the causative factor in case reports where haemorrhage has been described in association with ginkgo use (Koch 2005). It has also led many writers and clinicians to assume that a pharmacodynamic interaction exists between ginkgo and drugs affecting haemostasis at the platelet level (Bone 2008). Evidence from multiple controlled studies published over the last 5 years casts doubt on the clinical significance of this theoretical interaction, indicating it is unsubstantiated (see monograph on *Ginkgo biloba* for further details). Major databases and textbooks on complementary medicines provide quite different information to readers about this issue, adding to the confusion (Table 7.4).

**ADR INCIDENCE**

Alarmingly, the rates of ADR-related hospital admissions are rising and account for considerable morbidity, mortality and costs. One Australian study found that one in ten patients who visited a GP had experienced a significant ADR within the previous 6 months, and almost 50% of these were assessed as moderate to severe by the GP (Miller et al 2006). An ADR is more likely to be experienced with increasing age, peaking at 65 years and older, and by females rather than males. Children aged between 1 and 4 years are three times more likely to have an ADR than children in other age groups. At this rate, ADRs rank as one of the most important causes of morbidity. Anticoagulants, NSAIDs and cardiovascular medicines feature prominently as preventable, high-impact problems in Australia and other countries (Pirmohamed et al 2004, Runciman et al 2003).

Although ADRs also occur with CMs, relatively few reports have been collected through spontaneous post-marketing surveillance systems. The most extensive database of ADRs to herbal medicines is held by the Uppsala Monitoring Centre, the coordinating centre for the WHO Programme for International Drug Monitoring (see www.who-umc.org). It receives data from national centres in 72 countries and, over the past 20 years, 11,716 case reports of suspected herbal ADR have been collected. The most commonly reported non-critical effects were (from higher to lower incidence): pruritus, urticaria, rash, erythematous rash, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, fever, abdominal pain and dyspnoea. The most common critical effects were: facial oedema,
Research on under-reporting of serious ADRs in the USA and Canada suggests that formal reporting rates may be as low as 1.5% of total ADRs (Miller et al 2006). In the specific case of CMs, CAM practitioners and retail staff may not report such events because:

- they are unaware of ADR schemes
- they are not qualified or trained to consider the possibility of ADRs
- they are not motivated to report any ADR that comes to their notice.

In addition, herbal medicine consumers may not be motivated to report ADRs to their doctor, as one British study suggests (Barnes et al 1998), or they may not consider the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 7.4 EXAMPLES OF CURRENT DATABASES AND TEXTBOOKS REPORTING ON THE PURPORTED GINKGO–WARFARIN INTERACTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RESOURCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIMS on CD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The desktop guide to complementary and alternative medicine (Ernst et al 2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbs and natural supplements — an evidence based guide (Braun &amp; Cohen 2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ABC clinical guide to herbs (Blumenthal 2003)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

hepatitis, angio-oedema, thrombocytopenia, hypertension, chest pain, convulsions, purpura, dermatitis and death.

In Australia, the ADRAC database holds reports of suspected ADRs. From 1 November 1972 to 19 April 2005, it has only 1112 reports related solely to CMs. This is reassuring, when one considers that in 2004 approximately 52% of the population were identified as users of at least one non-medically prescribed CM product in the previous 12 months (MacLennan et al 2006). The relatively small number of case reports can be interpreted as indicative of the comparative safety of CMs and the effectiveness of pre-market checks; however, the impact of under-reporting should not be dismissed.
understanding the level of incidence, case reports can easily be interpreted as cause for alarm or alternatively dismissed as irrelevant. Additionally, authorities discourage reporting of less severe ADRs, so many mild-to-moderate side effects remain undetected and are a hidden source of patient morbidity.

Post-marketing surveillance systems aim to detect trends in ADR and become useful when a large number of reports relating to a specific medicine are received. When evidence gathers to suggest a significant problem, the TGA may issue an alert on its website, impose new conditions on the product’s listing or registration, suspend or cancel listing or registration, impose new manufacturing conditions and, if considered sufficiently serious, issue a mandatory product recall. Alerts in recent years have included warnings about drug interactions with St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum), suspected hepatotoxicity with products containing kava kava and renal toxicity with Chinese herbal medicines containing the herb Aristolochia. The Advisory Committee on Complementary Medicines (ACCM) advises the TGA on matters regarding CMs and is made up of people considered expert in this area.

The two cases involving black cohosh and kava kava provide examples of how post-marketing surveillance systems can alert government agencies of a potential safety issue and the ensuing steps taken and research conducted to identify what the issue is and its prevalence.

**Black cohosh**

Rare, spontaneous hepatotoxicity has been reported in at least 42 case reports world-wide with treatment by Cimicifuga racemosa thizona (Levitsky et al 2005, Lynch et al 2006, Nisbet & O’Connor 2007, Teschke & Schwarzenboeck 2009, Whiting et al 2002). As a result, several safety reviews have been conducted to evaluate the available data and determine what risk exists with the use of this herb.

A 2008 safety review of black cohosh products was conducted by the Dietary Supplement Information Expert Committee of the US Pharmacopeia’s Council of Experts. All the reports of liver damage were assigned possible causality, and none were probable or certain causality. The clinical pharmacokinetic and animal toxicological information did not reveal

---

**TABLE 7.5 IMPORTANT COMPONENTS OF AN ADVERSE REACTION REPORT**

| Patient demographics: male/female, age, social history if relevant | Suspected product details: formula as stated on label, batch number, expiry date and Aust L or Aust R number |
| Details of the person making the report | Manufacturer’s details |
| Relevant medical history | Other medicines and treatments being used (including other complementary medicines) |
| Dose used, duration of use and administration form | Date and time of onset |
| Adverse effects: description of signs and symptoms | Outcome of event |
| Information regarding re-challenge, if applicable | Presence of confounding variables: e.g. additives |
unfavourable information about black cohosh. The Expert Committee determined that in the United States black cohosh products should be labelled to include a cautionary statement, a change from their decision of 2002, which required no such statement (Mahady et al 2008).

Assessment of the 42 cases by European Medicines Agency (EMEA) has shown a possible or probable causality in only four out of 42 patients. A diagnostic algorithm has been applied in the four patients with suspected BC (Black cohosh) hepatotoxicity using several methods to allow objective assessment, scoring and scaling of the probability in each case. Due to incomplete data, the case of one patient was not assessable. For the remaining three patients, quantitative evaluation showed no causality for BC in any patient regarding the observed severe liver disease (Teschke & Schwarzenboeck 2009).

In Australia in February 2006, the TGA announced that based on the appraisal of case reports, a causal association between black cohosh and serious hepatitis exists; however, the incidence is very low considering its widespread use. As a result, products available in Australia containing black cohosh have to carry label warnings informing consumers of the risk. The conclusion made by the TGA is considered controversial by some experts because numerous confounding factors were present in many of the case reports, such as the use of multiple ingredient preparations, concurrent use of at least one pharmaceutical medicine and the presence of other medical conditions.

A 2008 study evaluated the effects of black cohosh extract on liver morphology and on levels of various hepatic function indices in an experimental model finding that at high doses, well above the recommended dosage, black cohosh appears quite safe (Mazzanti et al 2008). More recently, Teschke (2010b) investigated data from 69 spontaneous or published case reports of suspected black cohosh-induced hepatotoxicity and found confounding variables such as uncertainty about the quality and authenticity of the black cohosh product, dose or insufficient adverse event description, missing or inadequate evaluation of a clear temporal association, the possible presence of other medications or comorbidities and lack of de-challenge or re-exposure. A clear causal relationship between black cohosh and hepatotoxicity was not found.

Even more recently, a 2011 meta-analysis investigated the potential hepatotoxicity of black cohosh (Remifemin) from published RCTs in perimenopausal and postmenopausal women. Liver function data (AST, ALT and γ-GT) from 1020 women was compared at baseline and after taking black cohosh (40–128 mg/day) for 3 to 6 months. No significant difference between the treatment and reference groups were found (Naser et al 2011).

Kava kava

Kava was well tolerated and considered as devoid of major side effects until 1998 when the first reports of kava hepatotoxicity appeared. Causality of hepatotoxicity for kava ± co-medicated drugs was evident after the use of predominantly ethanolic and acetonic kava extracts in Germany (n = 7), Switzerland (n = 2), United States (n = 1) and Australia (n = 1) as well as after aqueous extracts in New Caledonia (n = 2) (Teschke et al 2008a). Moreover, cases of tourists developing serious toxic liver disease after consumption of kava beverages in traditional Samoan kava ceremonies were reported (Christl et al 2009). For this reason, in 2002 the herb was withdrawn from various European countries (Sarris et al 2013), and the FDA issued a safety alert about kava and its liver problems (Teschke et al 2010a). In 2002 in Australia, the TGA posed a maximum limit of 125 mg kava lactones on kava tablets or capsules and a maximum of 3 g of dried rhizome per teabag with a maximum daily dose of 250 mg kava lactones allowed.

Various authors evaluated the reported cases. In an analysis of 36 cases of hepatotoxicity, the pattern of injury was both hepatocellular and cholestasis, the majority of patients were women, the culmative dose and latency were highly variable and liver transplant was necessary in eight of the cases (Stickel et al 2003). The WHO published a report in May 2007 entitled Assessment of the risk of hepatotoxicity with kava products (WHO 2007). It evaluated data from 93 case reports of which 8 were determined to have a close association between the use of kava kava and liver dysfunction; 53 cases were classified as having a possible relationship, but they could not be fully assessed
due to insufficient data or other potential causes of liver damage; five cases had a positive rechallenge. Most of the other case reports could not be evaluated due to lack of information. It concluded that there is ‘significant concern’ for a cause and effect relationship between kava products and hepatotoxicity, especially for organic extracts. The report noted other risk factors such as heavy alcohol intake, preexisting liver disease, genetic polymorphisms of cytochrome P450 enzymes, excessive dosage and co-medication with other potentially hepatotoxic drugs and potentially interacting drugs.

Similarly, Teschke et al analysed 26 suspected cases of which causality was unassessable, unrelated or excluded for 16 cases owing to lack of temporal association and causes independent of kava or co-medicated drugs. Overall, the survey concluded that kava taken as recommended is associated with rare hepatotoxicity, whereas overdose, prolonged treatment and co-medication may carry an increased risk (Teschke et al 2008b, Teschke et al 2010a). However, several papers outlined pros and cons of the current methods of causality evaluation (Teschke et al 2011, Teschke & Wolff 2011).

The latest publications have accepted a causal relationship between the use of various kava extracts, including aqueous extracts, and liver injury, and have focused on an assessment of possible causes (Teschke et al 2009). Despite this, evidence is still lacking of in vivo hepatotoxicity in experimental animals under conditions similar to human kava use. Furthermore, in commercial Western kava extracts, pipermethystine was not detectable and flavokavain B was present as a natural compound in amounts much too low to cause experimental liver injury (Lechtenberg et al 2008).

More recent reports have postulated that mould hepatotoxins present in kava raw material may be the cause of hepatotoxicity (Teschke et al 2012, Teschke et al 2013). This could be the case given that aflatoxins have been detected in kava samples (Rowe & Ramzan 2012).

Strict guidelines for kava standardisation have now been suggested by several researchers. They include: (1) use of a noble kava cultivar such as Borogu, at least 5 years old at time of harvest, (2) use of peeled and dried rhizomes and roots, (3) aqueous extraction, (4) dosage recommendation of ≤ 250 mg kavalactones per day (for medicinal use), (5) systematic rigorous future research and (6) a Pan Pacific quality control system enforced by strict policing (Teschke et al 2011).

**FACTORS THAT MAKE AN ADR MORE LIKELY**

Although little investigation has been conducted into what factors influence the likelihood of ADRs with CMs, it can be assumed most factors that increase the risk of ADRs with pharmaceutical medicine will also apply to CMs. These factors can be grouped as patient-related or therapeutic.

**Patient-related factors**

- Older age. Declining liver and kidney function as a result of ageing can increase sensitivity to both therapeutic and adverse effects. During times of ill health, the elderly can experience a further loss of homeostatic reserve, once again increasing sensitivity to the effects of medicines and interactions (Atkinson et al 2001).
- Females appear to be more susceptible to ADRs.
- Concurrent disease, acute and/or severe.
- History of atopic disease.
- Confusion.
- Genetic factors: for example, variations in liver enzymes.
- Reduced renal or hepatic function. Altered metabolism or excretion of a medicine can increase the risk of toxicity.
- Self-medication. Prudent self-care can offer numerous benefits to the individual, society and the healthcare system if there is access to quality services, products and information. However, when people at higher risk of adverse effects self-medicate with OTC medicines, it can be potentially harmful. Additionally, interactions that do not produce a clinically obvious change, such as elevation in blood pressure, serum cholesterol or warfarin INR, can remain undetected and uncorrected unless professional advice is sought.
- Use of multiple healthcare practitioners. This is of concern when practitioners fail to communicate effectively with one another to ensure that interactions are avoided and identified.
Strategies for clinicians
- Encourage open and honest communication — between patient, carer and practitioner, and between fellow practitioners about treatments prescribed. One way of achieving this is for CM practitioners to label all dispensed herbal medicines with the botanical names of the herbs included in the product, together with suggested dosage, date of manufacture and practitioner’s contact details.
- Take a careful medical and medicines history, including previous allergies and adverse effects.
- Consider non-medicinal treatments.
- Avoid polypharmacy and complicated treatment regimens.
- Become familiar with the potential safety issues associated with a medicine to avoid unnecessarily inducing an ADR or misdiagnosing one as a symptom of a new disease. An important adjunct to this is having access to reliable medical and CM information, and having a network of experts or informed colleagues to consult. Computer-generated prescriptions and decision-support systems are frequently advocated as possible solutions and can be useful if their information is accurate and updated frequently.
- Regularly review therapeutic goals and medicines being used. This provides an opportunity to promote patient compliance and ensure that the appropriate medicines are being taken safely.
- When problems do arise, practitioners need to be aware of their professional responsibility to report a suspected ADR to one of the following:
  - Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee (Reporting is confidential, open to everyone and is now possible online at www.tga.gov.au.)
  - Relevant herbal and natural medicine associations such as the National Herbalists Association of Australia (www.nhaa.org.au)
  - Relevant manufacturer (Manufacturers keep their own records and are formally obliged to inform the TGA Prescriber, if applicable.)

Therapeutic factors
- Dose. Most ADRs are dose-related, with higher doses increasing risk.
- Route of administration (e.g. topical application) can cause delayed hypersensitivity.
- Prolonged and/or frequent therapy.
- Medicines not manufactured under a code of good manufacturing practice (GMP) have an increased risk of extrinsic effects.
- Use of concurrent high-risk medicines; for example, those with a narrow therapeutic index (NTI) such as warfarin, digoxin, lithium, cyclosporin, phenytoin, barbiturates, theophylline, many HIV medicines (e.g. saquinavir), antineoplastic agents (e.g. methotrexate) and anti-arrhythmic agents (e.g. quinidine). These medicines are particularly sensitive to pharmacokinetic alterations in which small changes to blood concentrations can cause a clinically significant change to drug activity. Depending on whether drug concentrations are reduced or increased, there is the potential to cause a loss of efficacy or induce toxic effects, respectively.
- Polypharmacy. This is of particular concern in the elderly, who may have chronic diseases and are known to use more medicines than any other age group, increasing the risk of interactions. Additionally, in many serious diseases such as cancer and HIV, multi-drug treatment is the standard of care.
- Use of medicines known to induce or inhibit cytochrome (CYP) enzymes, particularly CYP 3A4, which is responsible for the metabolism of many common pharmaceutical medicines.

STRATEGIES FOR PREVENTING AND LIMITING ADRs
Many countries are trying to cope with the growing problem of ADRs and their associated morbidity and mortality. Currently in Australia and New Zealand there are many structures and initiatives in place, such as regulatory agencies, the CMEC, ‘quality use of medicines’ organisations and information providers, safety and quality organisations and professional bodies; however, it is ultimately the practitioner and the patient who play the definitive roles.
Strategies for patients
Patients also play an important role in promoting a beneficial and harm-free outcome. They should ensure that they understand the benefits and potential risks associated with their treatment and be confident that they know how to take/use it appropriately. The Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care produced a patient information booklet entitled 10 tips for safer health care (ACSQHC 2003) to encourage patients to become more active in their own healthcare while in hospital. Many of the steps outlined in the booklet are relevant to people taking CMs in the community or in hospital.

Below is a summary of recommendations for patients choosing to use or currently using CM, adapted from 10 tips for safer health care.

• Choose a suitably experienced and qualified CM practitioner or ask for a referral from a trusted medical practitioner, pharmacist or other source.

• Become an active member of your own healthcare team. Help clinicians reach an accurate diagnosis, discuss appropriate management strategies, ensure treatment is administered and adhered to, identify side effects quickly and take appropriate action.

• Tell all healthcare practitioners about all the medicines being used (complementary and conventional). This includes telling doctors about complementary medicines and telling naturopaths and herbalists about pharmaceutical medicines.

• Make sure information given by the healthcare practitioner about the condition and the treatment options available is understood. In the case of lengthy explanations or recommendations, ask the practitioner to provide written information that can be taken home.

• Ask questions when you need more information because you are uncertain or the information provided is unclear.

• Be motivated to learn about the health condition being addressed, treatments being used and ways to improve wellbeing by referring to reliable information sources.

THE RATIONAL USE OF HERBAL AND NATURAL MEDICINES
Overall, when manufactured, prescribed and used appropriately, the safety of OTC CMs is high. Serious adverse effects and dangerous interactions are rare, particularly in comparison with the thousands of reports attributed to pharmaceutical medicines. Even so, the assessment of likely adverse reactions or interactions should remain integral to patient management.

Currently, there are few large-scale clinical studies confirming and clarifying the clinical significance of most suspected adverse reactions and interactions associated with CMs, and much remains unknown. It is important to recognise that the information presented in this book requires individual interpretation, because the clinical effects of any medicine or any potential interaction, no matter how well documented, will not occur consistently in each patient, each time or to the same degree of intensity.

Ultimately, the ideal in clinical practice is to combine knowledge about the medicine and the disease, experience of both, and information about the patient and the individual’s circumstance in order to make wise treatment choices (Table 7.6). This requires the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 7.6 FACTORS TO CONSIDER IN THE RATIONAL USE OF COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES</th>
<th>RATIONALE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Products that are not produced under a code of GMP should not be used.</td>
<td>The quality of the product cannot be guaranteed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Know the benefits, risks, potential adverse reactions and interactions and seek out reliable information. Additional training and/or access to accurate and updated information is important.</td>
<td>More than half the population use CMs and there is no sign of their popularity abating. Some CMs have proven benefits and offer cost-effective treatment options; however, safety issues also exist. Marketing/sales and company information is not sufficient, and education in the area of CM efficacy and safety may be limited.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
application of current knowledge, as well as good observational skills, open communication and clinical experience to reduce the risk of adverse reactions and maximise successful outcomes.

REFERENCES
Flinders Medical Centre, Government of South Australia. Media release 2006.


Teschke R et al. Contaminant hepatotoxins as culprits for kava hepatotoxicity — fact or fiction? Phytother Res. 27.3 (2013): 472–474.


A pharmacological interaction is said to occur when the response to one medicine varies from what is usually predicted because another substance has altered the response. Usually the term ‘interaction’ has a negative connotation when referring to medicines, because it can lead to drug toxicity or a loss of drug effect, and it may be difficult to predict. However, interactions can also benefit the patient by improving outcomes, reducing side effects or reducing costs. In order for healthcare professionals to interpret interaction data and avoid or beneficially manipulate an interaction, or deal with an adverse effect due to an interaction, it is essential to have an understanding of the mechanisms involved.

Although thousands of drug interactions are studied each year, there has been far less scientific investigation into interactions with herbal and natural medicines. Research conducted with pharmaceutical medicines can provide some theoretical insights into the mechanisms of drug–herb interactions, but predicting clinical significance is difficult. Unlike conventional medicines, herbs and food-based supplements contain a complex mixture of bioactive chemicals, some of which may contribute to the overall therapeutic effect of the substances. The chemical composition is also variable and depends on factors such as the plant part used, seasonality, growing and harvesting conditions and extraction and manufacturing processes. Furthermore, some plant constituents have poor oral bioavailability, so in vitro screening for interactions will produce misleading results.

Evidence from controlled human studies has been steadily increasing in recent years; however, most information is still derived from in vitro and animal experiments. This approach is not without its limitations, as using evidence to predict what will happen in humans from studies not conducted in humans is bound to contain inaccuracies and therefore must be interpreted cautiously.

It must be mentioned that even when evidence from a controlled human study is available, predicting the likelihood and severity of a real-life interaction in a specific patient is still difficult and prone to error. Ultimately, the clinical importance of a herb–drug interaction depends on factors that relate to the medicines involved and the patients themselves. The chief medicinal factors will be dose, duration and frequency of use and administration route. Individual patient factors include age, gender, food intake, gastric and urinary pH, current state of health, preexisting disease and genetic polymorphism.

**INTERACTION MECHANISMS**

When one considers the great variation in physical properties and pharmacological effects of the numerous substances used as medicines, together with the variable nature of herbal medicines, it is apparent that a virtually endless number of interactions are possible. It is generally accepted, however, that there are two major interaction mechanisms, namely pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions.
A third minor category of physicochemical or pharmaceutical interactions also exists. Regardless of the mechanism involved, there can be three possible outcomes from an interaction:
1. increased therapeutic or adverse effects (additive or synergistic)
2. decreased therapeutic or adverse effects (additive or synergistic)
3. a unique response that does not occur when either agent is used alone.

**PHARMACOKINETIC INTERACTIONS**
Pharmacokinetics refers to the quantitative analysis of the absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of a medicine. Pharmacokinetic interactions occur when there is an alteration to any of these four processes, causing a change in the amount and persistence of available drug at receptor sites or target tissues. As a result, a change in the magnitude of effect or the duration of effect can occur without a change in the type of effect. Interactions of this type may have multiple mechanisms, making clinical predictions difficult. Additionally, there are many patient factors that influence the pharmacokinetics of a drug, such as age, liver and renal function, degree of physiological stress and the presence of other diseases such as hyperthyroidism.

**Factors affecting absorption**
Drug absorption is determined by the physicochemical properties of a drug, as well as by its formulation and route of administration. Because most herbal and nutritional medicines are administered orally, as tablets, capsules, teas and tinctures, this discussion will focus on interactions associated with these dose forms.

Most absorption of orally administered medicines occurs in the small intestine, which has a larger surface area than the stomach and greater membrane permeability. If a slow-release dosage form is taken and it continues to release the drug for more than 6 hours, then absorption will also occur in the large intestine. The absorption of oral dose forms is influenced by differences in pH along the gastrointestinal tract, surface area per luminal volume, blood perfusion, the presence of bile and mucus and the nature of epithelial membranes. Changes to gastrointestinal flora, transport systems, chelation and ion exchange also influence absorption.

Interactions at this level can alter the rate of absorption and/or extent of absorption of a medicine.

**Changes in relative rate of absorption**
Although a medicine may eventually be fully absorbed, a significantly slowed absorption rate may mean that it never reaches effective serum levels, or that an unwanted ‘sustained release’ effect causes prolonged activity or a delay in prompt relief. In some clinical situations, decreased rates of absorption are of no concern; however, in others it may be important. Generally, a decreased rate of absorption is less important for medicines that are given in multiple-dose regimens to achieve a steady state serum level than for those that are given as single doses or are required to produce a rapid effect (e.g. analgesics).

**Changes in extent of absorption**
Altering the extent of absorption may also have significant consequences. Increasing the amount of medicine absorbed may produce higher plasma levels and a higher risk of adverse reactions or toxicity. Alternatively, reducing the amount of medicine absorbed may result in reduced efficacy or therapeutic failure. This is of particular concern for medicines with a narrow therapeutic index, such as warfarin and digoxin.

**Mucilaginous herbs**
Although little research has been conducted to determine the effects of herbal medicines on the absorption of other medicines, one double-blind study found that guar gum slowed the absorption rate of digoxin, but did not alter the extent of absorption, whereas penicillin absorption was both slowed and reduced (Huuppo-nen et al 1984). This brings into question the effects of other gums and highly mucilaginous herbal medicines, such as *Ulmus fulvus* (slippery elm), *Althea officinalis* (marshmallow) and *Plantago ovata* (psyllium). Poorly lipid soluble, the mucilaginous content forms an additional physical barrier to absorption, but whether this will have a clinically significant effect on rate and/or extent of absorption of other medicines is uncertain and remains to be tested.

**Nutrients**
More research has been conducted into the way nutrients interact and alter the absorption
of pharmaceutical medicines than with herbal medicines. The interactions between iron and many minerals provide a useful example. Aluminium, calcium bicarbonate or magnesium trisilicate taken in antacid preparations are known to reduce the extent of iron absorption owing to an alteration in gastric pH. This type of interaction is easily avoided by separating the intake of iron by at least 2 hours from the last dose of antacid.

**Intrinsic drug transporters**

Until recently, when an orally administered medicine exhibited poor absorption, it was generally assumed that this was because of either physicochemical problems or significant first-pass hepatic metabolism. Recently, it has been recognised that for many medicines poor oral bioavailability could be related to the influence of transporter proteins (Benet & Cummins 2001). Transporter proteins are associated with the transfer of some medicines from the intestinal lumen, through the biological barrier of the intestinal mucosa, into the systemic circulation and back again. Transporters fall into two main categories: carriers and pumps. Carriers are involved in three types of transport processes: facilitated diffusion, co-transport and counter-transport. Pumps are distinguished from carriers by the linkage of transport to an external source of energy. Examples of transporters in the intestine are P-glycoprotein (P-gp), members of the multi-drug-resistance-associated protein family (breast-cancer resistance protein, organic cation and anion transporters) and members of the organic anion polypeptide family (Wagner et al 2001). Of these, P-gp is the most studied (see Clinical note).

**Herbal and natural medicines affecting P-gp**

The influence of herbal and natural medicines on P-gp expression has only recently been considered, so much is still unknown and speculative. To date, most research has centred on St John’s wort, although clinical testing with other herbs has now gained momentum: every few months more studies investigating the likelihood and clinical significance of proposed interactions are published.

In 1999, clinical testing found that St John’s wort significantly reduces serum levels of digoxin after 10 days’ co-administration (John et al 1999). The suspected mechanism of interaction was chiefly liver enzyme induction; however, the magnitude of effect seen in this study, and in others, suggested that P-gp induction was involved (Hennessy et al 2002). More recently, several clinical tests have confirmed that St John’s wort has significant P-gp induction effects. One study found up to a 4.2-fold increase in P-gp expression compared with a placebo after 16 days’ administration.

**CLINICAL NOTE — P-GLYCOPROTEIN: AN IMPORTANT DRUG TRANSPORTER**

P-glycoprotein was first studied in the context of cancer research, where its over-expression in tumour cells is associated with multi-drug resistance (Jodoin et al 2002). In cancer cells, P-gp is one of the transporters responsible for actively expelling chemotherapeutic drugs from cells, thereby decreasing intracellular concentrations and thus drug efficacy. As a result, identification of those substances that reduce P-gp expression and can be administered safely with chemotherapeutic agents is being investigated.

P-gp is found on the surface of hepatocytes, and epithelial cells of the renal tubules, the intestine, placenta and capillaries in the brain (Lin 2003). It plays an important role in the processes of absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of medicines. P-gp has a counter-transport activity, meaning it can transport medicines from the blood back into the gastrointestinal tract, thereby reducing bioavailability.

In humans, P-gp demonstrates genetic polymorphism, which may partly account for the inter-individual variability seen in drug absorption. One study conducted in 25 volunteers supports this idea and found that a greater than eight-fold difference in expression of intestinal P-gp is possible (Lown et al 1997).

The expression of P-gp can be altered by a number of factors, such as everyday foods, herbs and pharmaceutical medicines. In the case of P-gp inhibition, there will be an increase in absorption, systemic exposure and tissue distribution of medicines that are P-gp substrates, whereas P-gp induction produces the opposite effect.

(Continued)
Components in grapefruit juice inhibit P-gp (Eagling et al. 1999, Ohnishi et al. 2000, Soldner et al. 1999, Spahn-Langguth & Langguth 2001), whereas a randomised, crossover clinical study found no significant effects (Becquemont et al. 2001). A more recent in vitro study produced similar results with 5% normal concentration of grapefruit, orange and apple juices; however, inhibition of other transporter proteins was observed (Dresser et al. 2002).

Research suggests that quercetin inhibits P-gp expression (Choi & Li 2005, Chung et al. 2005, Kitagawa et al. 2005, Wang et al. 2004). Studies with experimental models have demonstrated that pretreatment with quercetin increases the bioavailability of the calcium-channel blocker, diltiazem (Choi & Li 2005), and of digoxin (Wang et al. 2004). Intriguingly, one in vivo study found quercetin significantly decreased the oral bioavailability of cyclosporin, which is the opposite of what would be expected, suggesting that other mechanisms may also be involved (Hsiu et al. 2002).

Although in vitro studies have also identified an inhibitory effect on P-gp for silymarin, the active constituent group in St Mary’s thistle (Chung et al. 2005, Zhang & Morris 2003), recent clinical testing found no significant effect in vivo (Gurley et al. 2006). Additionally, the herb schisandra inhibits P-gp (Jin et al. 2010). Table 8.1 lists herbal and natural medicines that have suspected or known effects on P-gp, together with the research that gives evidence for these effects.

Factors affecting metabolism

Metabolism can occur before and during absorption, thereby limiting the amount of drug reaching the systemic circulation. In the intestinal lumen, digestive enzymes and bowel flora are capable of causing a wide range of metabolic reactions. The intestinal mucosa is also capable of metabolising drugs, with new research suggesting it is a major metabolic organ for some medicines (Doherty & Charman 2002).

For many medicines, metabolism chiefly occurs in the liver in two apparent phases, known as phase I or functionalisation reactions and phase II or conjugation reactions. Phase I reactions include oxidation, hydroxylation, dealkylation and reduction. Examples of Phase I reactions include conversion of an active drug to an inactive, less active, more active
or toxic metabolite, and conversion of an inactive prodrug to an active metabolite. Phase II reactions include glucuronidation, sulfation, acetylation and methylation glutathionation, glycination and other amino acid conjugations (taurine, glutamine, carnitine, arginine), and usually result in the formation of inactive compounds that are water-soluble and easily excreted (Blower et al 2005).

Although there are many enzymes responsible for phase I reactions, the most important enzyme group is the cytochrome P450 system (CYP), which comprises more than 50 enzymes and is responsible for the metabolism of many drugs, nutrients, endogenous substances and environmental toxins.

**Cytochromes**

Cytochrome P450 is a generic term for a super-family of enzymes (haem containing mono-oxygenases) that have existed throughout nature since the beginning of life more than 3.5 billion years ago (Pirmohamed & Park 2003). The P450s are found chiefly in the liver, but also to a lesser extent in the intestines, kidneys, skin and lungs. These enzymes are responsible for foreign compound metabolism, which evolved about 400–500 million years ago to enable animals to detoxify chemicals in plants. The cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes are the most powerful in vivo oxidising agents and are able to catalyse the oxidative biotransformation of a wide range of chemically and biologically unrelated exogenous and endogenous substrates. They are named by a root symbol CYP, followed by a number for family, a letter for subfamily, and another number for the specific gene. For example, CYP3A4 would refer to a specific enzyme from the cytochrome P450 system, family 3, subfamily

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HERBAL/NATURAL MEDICINE</th>
<th>EFFECT</th>
<th>EVIDENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grapefruit juice</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Clinical study (Becquemont et al 2001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosemary extract</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vitro (Plouzek et al 1999)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genistein and diadzein</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vitro (Evans 2000, Castro &amp; Altenberg 1997)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genistein and diadzein</td>
<td>Possible induction</td>
<td>In vitro (den Boer et al 1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resveratrol</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vitro (Jodoin et al 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumin</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vitro (Anuchapreeda et al 2002, Romiti et al 1998)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea polyphenols, especially epigallocatechin gallate</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vitro (Jodoin et al 2002, Sadzuka et al 2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piperine (a major component of black pepper)</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vivo (Bhardwaj et al 2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>Inhibition</td>
<td>In vitro tests (Chung et al 2005, Zhang &amp; Morris 2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St Mary’s thistle</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Human study (Gurley et al 2006)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A and gene 4. Three main CYP families (CYP1, 2, 3) are responsible for metabolism of therapeutic drugs. The different P450 isoforms vary in their abundance within the liver. Of these, the cytochromes CYP2C9, CYP2D6 and CYP3A4 are the most abundant in the human body (Pirmohamed & Park 2003).

The CYP2C sub-family accounts for 15–20% of the total P450 content of the liver, and metabolises approximately 20% of all drugs (Pirmohamed & Park 2003). The main member of this sub-family is CYP2C9, which is responsible for the metabolism of a number of compounds, including warfarin, phenytoin and various NSAIDs. Cytochrome 2D6 is responsible for the metabolism of approximately 25% of therapeutically used drugs, although it accounts for only <5% of the total P450 content. The CYP3A sub-family accounts for 30% of the total P450 content and is responsible for metabolism of about 50% of therapeutic drugs. Table 8.2 provides examples of common drugs and the cytochromes chiefly responsible for their metabolism. For a more complete list that is frequently updated, see Flockhart 2007.

The expression and activity of many CYP isoenzymes vary enormously between individuals. Part of the inter-individual variability is environmentally determined by the concomitant intake of drugs and foodstuffs that cause induction and inhibition of the different P450 isoforms. P450 gene polymorphism may also influence expression and activity of CYP enzymes, as this can lead to:

- abolished activity of a CYP enzyme (e.g. CYP2C9, CYP2C19 and CYP2D6 can be genetically absent in some livers [USFDA 2014])
- reduced activity
- altered activity
- increased activity where there is gene duplication.

For example, one study identified that 30% of Ethiopians had multiple copies of the 2D6 gene (up to 13), resulting in ultra-rapid metabolism of CYP2D6 substrates (Aklillu et al 1996). As a result, standard doses of CYP2D6 substrates (e.g. beta-blockers, some opioids and tricyclic antidepressants) will not produce anticipated or adequate responses, and higher drug doses are necessary to produce therapeutic effects. It has also been estimated that 7% of Caucasians lack CYP2D6. These individuals will not experience the anticipated therapeutic effects of prodrugs that are CYP2D6 substrates, such as codeine, and will appear more sensitive to the side effects of CYP2D6 substrates (e.g. beta-blockers, some opioids and tricyclic antidepressants) (USFDA 2014).

Another example is the polymorphic distribution of CYP2C9, which is absent in 1% of Caucasians. More than 100 drugs in current use are known substrates of CYP2C9, corresponding to approximately 10–20% of commonly prescribed drugs. Of note, CYP2C9 is chiefly responsible for the metabolism of NSAIDs and COX-2-specific inhibitors (e.g. celecoxib).

Many other factors affect CYP activity, such as the ingestion of foreign compounds (e.g. environmental contaminants) or the ingestion of certain constituents found in food, beverages and medicines.

Because of overlapping substrates, many drug interactions involve both P-gp and CYP3A4.

| TABLE 8.2 SELECTED DRUGS THAT ACT AS SUBSTRATES FOR CYP ENZYMES |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| CYP ENZYME | DRUGS |
| CYP1A2 | amitriptyline, caffeine, melatonin, naproxen, paracetamol, tacrine, theophylline, verapamil, R-warfarin |
| CYP2B6 | amitriptyline, diazepam, methadone, midazolam, tamoxifen, temazepam, testosterone |
| CYP2C9 | amitriptyline, celecoxib, diclofenac, fluoxetine, ibuprofen, tamoxifen, S-warfarin |
| CYP2C19 | amitriptyline, imipramine, indomethacin, omeprazole, progesterone, propranolol, R-warfarin |
| CYP2D6 | amitriptyline, beta blockers, codeine, fluoxetine, flecainide, haloperidol, nicotine, ondansetron, paroxetine, sertraline, tamoxifen, tramadol |
| CYP3A4 | alprazolam, caffeine, codeine, cyclosporin, erythromycin, HIV antivirals (e.g. indinavir), lovastatin, midazolam, oestradiol, ondansetron, progesterone, simvastatin, tamoxifen, taxol, testosterone |
Enzyme inhibition

Competitive CYP inhibition is dose-dependent and occurs when inhibitors compete with other substances for a particular enzyme. Non-competitive inhibition is also possible and occurs when a substance either destroys or binds irreversibly to a CYP enzyme. In both instances, serum levels of those drugs chiefly metabolised by the affected enzyme will become elevated and the inhibition process is rapid. This is of particular concern with medicines that have a narrow therapeutic index, as very small changes in dose or blood levels can produce significant changes in activity. In the case of enzyme inhibition, raised blood levels can lead to increased side effects and toxicity.

Although inhibition of a CYP enzyme is generally regarded as raising the serum levels of an active drug, this is not always the case. If the drug involved is a prodrug, then it is inactive in its administered form and must be converted to its active form, usually via metabolic processes. If metabolism is slowed, then the production of active metabolites will also be slowed. An example is codeine, which is primarily metabolised by CYP2D6 into its active analgesic metabolite morphine; therefore, CYP2D6 inhibition has the potential to slow or reduce its analgesic activity.

Inhibitors do not all have the same strength and can be classified as strong, moderate or weak, depending on their effect on drug clearance compared to normal values. For example, Flockhart describes a strong inhibitor as one that causes more than 80% decrease in clearance, a moderate inhibitor as one that causes a 50–80% decrease in drug clearance and a weak inhibitor as one that causes a 20–50% decrease in drug clearance (Flockhart 2007).

Enzyme inhibition is not always harmful and has been manipulated to raise serum drug levels without the need to increase the dose administered. The result has obvious cost advantages when extremely expensive drugs are involved and has been used in some hospitals for medicines such as cyclosporin.

To date, the most studied natural substance capable of significantly inhibiting CYP enzymes is grapefruit. The finding that grapefruit juice markedly increases the bioavailability of some orally administered medicines was based on an unexpected observation from an interaction study between the calcium-channel antagonist felodipine and ethanol. In the study, grapefruit juice was used to mask the taste of ethanol, but actually affected the results by reducing CYP3A4 by 62% and significantly raising felodipine levels (Bailey et al 1998). Since then, the constituents of grapefruit juice have been extensively studied and found to affect the transport and metabolism of many other medicines (Eagling et al 1999, Kane & Lipsky 2000).

Increasingly, research is being conducted to determine whether other commonly used herbal medicines have an affect on CYP activity in vivo. For example, one research group in the United States screened Citrus aurantium, Echinacea purpurea, milk thistle (Silybum marianum) and saw palmetto (Serenoa repens) extracts for effects on CYP1A2, CYP2D6, CYP2E1 and CYP3A4 activity in healthy subjects (Gurley et al 2004). Of the four herbs, only E. purpurea was found to have any effect on the CYP enzymes tested, with a minor influence on CYP1A2 and CYP3A4. Using the same method, extracts of the herbs goldenseal (Hydrastis canadensis), black cohosh (Cimicifuga racemosa), kava kava (Piper methysticum) and valerian (Valeriana officinalis) were tested for effects on CYP1A2, CYP2D6, CYP2E1 or CYP3A4/5 activity (Gurley et al 2005). Goldenseal strongly inhibited CYP2D6 and CYP3A4/5 activity in vivo, whereas kava kava inhibited CYP2E1, black cohosh weakly inhibited CYP2D6 and no effect was observed for valerian. In a separate study, testing Panax ginseng and Ginkgo biloba, no effect was observed on CYP activity; however, garlic oil inhibited CYP2E1 activity by 39% (Gurley et al 2002). More recently, a 2012 review considering which herbs are likely to induce clinically relevant drug interactions concluded that the herb schisandra is likely to inhibit CYP3A4 in humans, as is golden seal (Gurley et al 2012).

There are many other examples to be found in the individual monographs of this book.

Enzyme induction

Alternatively, many different medicines and everyday substances have been found to induce the CYP enzymes (e.g. broccoli, Brussels sprouts, char-grilled meat, high-protein diets, tobacco and alcohol). Research is now identifying a number of herbal medicines that cause CYP induction to various degrees; however, the most studied to date is St John’s wort.
Clinical tests have confirmed that long-term administration of St John’s wort has significant CYP inducer activity, particularly CYP3A4 (Durr et al 2000, Roby et al 2000, Ruschitzka et al 2000, Wang et al 2001). It appears that the hyperforin component is a potent ligand for the pregnane X receptor, which regulates expression of CYP3A4 mono-oxygenase. In this way, hyperforin increases the availability of CYP3A4, resulting in enzyme induction (Moore et al 2000).

Lack of in vitro–in vivo correlation

It is interesting to observe an apparent lack of in vitro–in vivo correlation with some studies of CYP. For example, in vitro investigations implicate milk thistle extract and/or silibinin as inhibitors of human CYP3A4, CYP2C9, CYP2D6 and CYP2E1; however, in vivo evidence for CYP-mediated interactions by milk thistle is less compelling (Gurley et al 2004). This may be owing to poor bioavailability of key constituents, large inter-individual differences in absorption of constituents, inter-product variability in the ratios of constituent, poor dissolution of dosage forms or other mechanisms.

Factors affecting excretion

The kidneys are the major organs of excretion, but it also occurs to a lesser extent via other routes such as saliva, sweat, faeces, breast milk and the lungs. If a medicine is chiefly eliminated by one pathway, then alterations to that particular pathway can theoretically have a significant influence on its excretion.

With regard to urinary excretion, factors that alter renal function can interfere with the excretion of medicines and their metabolites. There are three main ways that renal function can be modified (Blower et al 2005):

- altered renal tubular reabsorption by substances that affect urinary pH
- changes in renal tubular secretion by agents that either compete for active secretion or that alter the activity of membrane transporter proteins
- changes in glomerular filtration induced by agents that alter cardiac output.

Alterations to urinary pH are easily achieved with regard to herbal and natural substances; for example, the half-life of an acidic medicine, such as a salicylate, can be increased with acidification of urine — for example, with high doses of ascorbic acid, because less is eliminated. Alternatively, the half-life of a weakly basic drug, such as amphetamine, may be decreased when urine is acidified. Alkalisation of urine produces the opposite effects and can occur with low-protein diets or the ingestion of substances such as potassium citrate.

PHARMACODYNAMIC INTERACTIONS

Pharmacodynamic interactions result when one substance alters the sensitivity or responsiveness of tissues to another. This type of interaction results in additive, synergistic or antagonistic drug effects and is of particular concern when medicines used simultaneously have overlapping toxicities.

In practice, clinicians frequently use additive or synergistic pharmacodynamic interactions to improve clinical outcomes. For example, medical doctors may prescribe a combination of antibiotics against difficult-to-eradicate microorganisms, or several antihypertensive drugs to one patient. Herbalists widely prescribe combinations of herbs with similar

CLINICAL NOTE — PHARMACOGENETICS

Pharmacogenetics largely deals with genes encoding drug transporters, drug-metabolising enzymes and drug targets (Ingelman-Sundberg 2004). It is now well established that the polymorphism of metabolising enzymes, and in particular that of P450 cytochromes, has the greatest effect on inter-individual variability of drug response, as evidenced by many studies. These polymorphisms affect the response of individuals to drugs used in the treatment of depression, psychosis, cancer, cardiovascular disorders, ulcer and gastrointestinal disorders, pain and epilepsy, among others. The costs of genotyping are reducing and our knowledge about the benefits of predictive genotyping for more effective and safe drug therapy is increasing. This means that in future predictive genotyping for CYP enzymes will become routine, allowing individualised prescribing to produce better clinical outcomes with less risk of side effects.
actions to strengthen clinical effects, and naturopaths may combine nutritional and herbal supplements in a similar way.

Pharmacodynamic interactions do not always produce wanted results, such as when several medicines with overlapping adverse effects or toxicities are used together, leading to more serious adverse effects. An example is the combined use of an opioid analgesic, which can induce drowsiness, and an antiemetic drug such as metoclopramide, which can also induce drowsiness. Other unwanted effects include potentiating drug activity to a clinically uncomfortable or dangerous level, or reducing activity and therefore the effectiveness of treatment.

Although pharmacodynamic interactions involving herbal and natural medicines and pharmaceutical medicines have not been thoroughly investigated, theoretical predictions are easy to produce. For example, case reports suggest that kava kava may have dopamine receptor antagonist activity and therefore theoretically can interact with dopamine agonists (e.g. L-dopa), opposing their effect (Meseguer et al 2002, Spillane et al 1997). Predicting real-life responses is difficult, because the evidence does not come from a controlled clinical study and individual factors such as dose, administration route and patient health further influence outcomes.

PHYSICOCHEMICAL INTERACTIONS

Physicochemical interactions occur when two substances come into contact and are either physically or chemically incompatible. This type of interaction can take place during the manufacture or administration of medicines and can affect both the rate and the extent of absorption of one or both medicines. Physicochemical interactions are a well-known concern among medical herbalists and naturopaths who prescribe and dispense their own herbal combinations.

Reduced absorption

Tannins

Herbs with significant tannin content have the potential to be involved in physicochemical interactions with other medicines, both outside and within the body, because they form precipitates with proteins, nitrogenous bases, polysaccharides and some alkaloids and glycosides (Mills 1991). Additionally, tannins will form complexes with metal ions such as iron, inhibiting their absorption (Glahn et al 2002). To avoid this interaction, herbal extracts containing tannins are traditionally not mixed with extracts containing alkaloids (Bone & Mills 2000).

In practice, herbal medicines containing tannins are used both internally and externally. When used internally, it is recommended that they be taken between meals or on an empty stomach to minimise precipitation of dietary proteins and digestive enzymes in the gut (Baxter et al 1997). Additionally, tannins can reduce the absorption of some minerals, so should not be taken at the same time. For example, the absorption of iron is significantly reduced in the presence of tannins, with one study finding amounts as small as 5 mg of tannic acid are able to inhibit iron absorption by 20% and higher levels of 100 mg by 88% (Brune et al 1989). Tannins are widely found in the plant kingdom, as shown in Table 8.3.

Chelation

Physicochemical interactions can also occur via a process of chelation, which is the chemical interaction of a metal ion and other substance that results in the formation of a molecular complex in which the metal is firmly bound and isolated. In other words, the metal ion irreversibly binds to a second molecule, leading to reduced activity or inactivation of that metal. A common example is the interaction between iron and various drugs, including tetracycline antibiotics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON NAME</th>
<th>BOTANICAL NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agrimony</td>
<td>Agrimony eupatorium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bearberry</td>
<td>Arctostaphylus uva-ursi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bistort</td>
<td>Polygonum bistorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meadowsweet</td>
<td>Filipendula ulmaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raspberry</td>
<td>Rubus idaeus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhubarb</td>
<td>Rheum spp. root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinach</td>
<td>Chenopodium spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea</td>
<td>Camellia sinensis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tormentil</td>
<td>Potentilla tormentilla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A number of compounds found naturally in food have the potential to interact with medicines in this way. For example, oxalic acid found in spinach and rhubarb or phytic acid found in bran can form insoluble complexes with calcium, thereby reducing its absorption.

**Increased absorption**

Not all physicochemical interactions result in reduced absorption. It is widely accepted that interactions between plant components can enhance clinical effects by increasing the bioavailability of key pharmacologically active constituents.

The results of continuing investigation into the chemistry of St John’s wort provide a good example. In vivo studies using hypericin and pseudohypericin found that the solubility of these two active constituents increases by approximately 60% in the presence of natural procyanidins (Butterweck et al 1998). Further research has isolated naturally occurring hyperoside, rutin and quercetin as some of the key components responsible for this interaction.

Although still largely speculative, the interaction between naturally occurring surfactant constituents, such as saponins, and poorly lipid soluble active constituents could feasibly result in increased absorption through a micellisation process. Besides improving oral bioavailability, the interaction could also improve dermal penetration.

Different forms of saponins are widely found in the plant kingdom and are used either internally or externally, depending on the particular herb (Table 8.4).

### TABLE 8.4 COMMON HERBS CONTAINING SAPONINS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMMON NAME</th>
<th>BOTANICAL NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Astragalus</td>
<td><em>Astragalus membranaceus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bupleurum</td>
<td><em>Bupleurum falcatum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horsechestnut</td>
<td><em>Aesculus hippocastanum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese ginseng</td>
<td><em>Panax japonicus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licorice</td>
<td><em>Glycyrrhiza glabra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poke root</td>
<td><em>Phytolacca decandra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soybean</td>
<td><em>Glycine max</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withania</td>
<td><em>Withania somnifera</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SYNERGY HERBAL RESEARCH**

In practice, herbalists use inter-herbal interactions to produce better outcomes. This practice is much the same as that of medical practitioners employing multi-target drug therapy in the treatment of cancer, hypertension and antibiotic resistance. Owing to the chemical complexity of herbal medicines, intra-herbal interactions are also being identified that largely explain the therapeutic superiority of many herbal drug extracts over single constituents isolated from the same herbal extracts. Synergistic effects can be produced if the constituents of an extract affect different targets or interact with one another in order to improve the solubility and thereby enhance the bioavailability of one or several substances of an extract. Synergy research in phytomedicine has established itself as a new activity in recent years and focuses on studying intra-herbal and inter-herbal interactions to better understand how therapeutic benefits can be harnessed.

**INTERACTION SCREENING TOOLS**

Information about interactions is derived from in vitro tests, studies with experimental animal models and, increasingly, clinical studies. Most studies of interactions conducted to date have focused on herbal constituents and their effects on cytochrome (CYP) enzymes and, increasingly, P-glycoprotein (P-gp), with few studies investigating effects on drug transport or phase II metabolism.

**In vitro tests**

Most studies conducted to investigate herb–drug interactions have used in vitro testing of herbal constituents in microsomal systems, supersomes, cytosols, expressed enzymes or cell-culture systems such as transfected cell lines, primary cultures of human hepatocytes and tumour-derived cells. While in vitro models provide a quick screening method for potential herb–drug interactions they do not always correlate with in vivo findings. One problem frequently encountered in the existing in vitro literature is the use of inappropriately high concentrations of single, isolated constituents obtained from commercial sources, and utilisation of these in experiments when only a small fraction of the compound may actually be bioavailable. Many natural products are generally subject to first-pass metabolism and to a much larger extent than conventional...
pharmaceutical agents, which are in most cases specifically developed to be substantially bioavailable or otherwise formulated as prodrugs. In addition, many are less bioavailable because of their hydrophilic nature or large molecular size (Markowitz et al 2008).

Animal studies
These studies may give important information on herb interactions. Probe substrates/inhibitors can be used to explore the effects of herbs on the activity of specific CYP enzyme in vivo, e.g. caffeine for CYP1A2, tolbutamide for CYP2C9, mephenytoin for CYP2C19, dextromethorphan or debrisoquine for CYP2D6, chlorzoxazone for CYP2E1 and midazolam or erythromycin for CYP3A4. In addition, a cocktail of probe drugs have been used to explore the activities of multiple CYPs in the same experiment. Ultimately, in vivo clinical studies are more reliable than in vitro tests as a means of determining the clinical importance of herb–drug interactions, although these studies can quickly be confounded by the documented variability found in specific constituents between individual botanical products as well as by the choice of probe substrates administered (Markowitz et al 2008).

Relying solely on in vitro or animal model experiments to predict clinically relevant herb–drug interactions is problematic and can provide inaccurate information. The herbs Ginkgo biloba and saw palmetto will be used here as examples to illustrate this point.

In vitro and/or tests with animal models have shown both cytochrome induction and inhibition for Ginkgo biloba (Chatterjee et al 2005, Chang et al 2006a, 2006b, Gaudineau et al 2004, He & Edeki 2004, Kubota et al 2004, Kuo et al 2004, Mohutsky et al 2006, Ohnishi et al 2003, Ryu & Chung 2003, Shinozuka et al 2002, Sugiyama et al 2004a, 2004b, von Moltke et al 2004, Zhao et al 2006). In contrast, four clinical studies have failed to identify a clinically significant effect on a variety of cytochromes. In one clinical study, Gurley et al (2002) demonstrated that Ginkgo biloba had no significant effect on CYP1A2, CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 activity. Markowitz et al (2003b) also conducted a human study and found no significant effects on CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 activity. Two further clinical studies found no significant effect for Ginkgo biloba on CYP2C9 activity (Greenblatt et al 2006, Mohutsky et al 2006). Overall, there have been at least 29 human studies investigating whether Ginkgo biloba alters the pharmacokinetics of multiple drugs (e.g. warfarin and digoxin) and affects various cytochromes. Of these, 23 studies found no observable effect, three a modest effect and three provided some evidence of CYP induction. However, when compared to FDA guidelines, these three studies do not suggest a clinically significant or important drug interaction potential (Gurley et al 2012).

Saw palmetto showed potent inhibition of CYP3A4, CYP2D6 and CYP2C9 in vitro (Yale & Glurich 2005); however, no significant effect was observed on CYP2D6 or CYP3A4 activity according to a clinical study by Markowitz et al (2003a). Gurley et al (2004) also found no significant effect for saw palmetto on CYP1A2, CYP2D6, CYP2E1 or CYP3A4 activity in healthy subjects.

To add to the complexity of the problem, in some instances researchers have conducted testing with individual herbal components or different forms of a herb and found different effects on CYPs. For example, using animal models Fukao et al (2004) demonstrated that diallyl sulphide (100 micromol/kg) increased cytochrome CYP2E1 activity slightly but significantly (1.6-fold versus control), whereas diallyl disulfide and diallyl trisulfide did not affect CYP2E1 activity or the hepatic total CYP level or CYP1A1/2 activity. The significance of these results in clinical practice is difficult to determine, as the overall effect on CYP activity will depend on the concentrations of these various constituents present in a garlic product. The example also highlights the general difficulty in extrapolating results for one herbal extract to another, as there may be a significant chemical variation between batches of the same herbal product and between different products of the same herb grown and produced by various manufacturers.

Clinical studies
These studies provide the most relevant information; however, they are costly to produce and are mostly conducted with young, healthy males, which may or may not accurately reflect the responses of other populations (e.g. women, the elderly).
understanding of the interaction mechanisms involved is also essential.

**Medicine factors**

Consider the types of medicines involved, administration route, dosage and duration of use. Drugs with a narrow therapeutic index are of most concern, as minor changes to serum levels can have clinically significant outcomes. Drugs that are administered intravenously will not always be subject to the same concerns as orally ingested drugs. In the case of herbal medicines, some preparations contain multiple CYP or transporter-modulating constituents, with some constituents causing induction and others inhibition. This means the overall outcome will depend on the amount of inducer/inhibitor constituents present, the CYPs or transporters affected and the relative strengths of inducers/inhibitors. Since herbal medicines naturally vary in constituent ratios owing to environmental and process factors, their effects on CYPs and transporters are more difficult to predict than for single-entity drugs.

**PUTTING THEORY INTO PRACTICE**

It is clear that many patients will be taking herbal and natural medicines and pharmaceutical medicines at some stage of their lives. In some instances, use will overlap, so a patient will be taking several medicines at the same time. In order to promote the safe use of all medicines, the following section provides ideas for consideration and discussion, practical tools to aid in reducing the risk of interactions and in detection of adverse reactions and general recommendations.

**INTERACTION MECHANISMS**

Predicting the clinical importance of a herb–drug interaction is difficult and largely depends on factors that relate to the medicines administered and the individual patient. Having an understanding of the interaction mechanisms involved is also essential.

**Table 8.5** presents a summary of the strengths and limitations relevant to different types of research into interactions.

**TABLE 8.5 ADVANTAGES AND LIMITATIONS OF HERB–DRUG INTERACTION STUDIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STUDY TYPE</th>
<th>ADVANTAGES</th>
<th>LIMITATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In vitro</td>
<td>Provides information about specific mechanisms under controlled conditions.</td>
<td>Does not account for poor bioavailability of the test compound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relatively simple to conduct compared with clinical studies.</td>
<td>May use one isolated constituent, whereas herbal extracts contain multiple constituents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inexpensive tests to conduct compared with clinical studies.</td>
<td>Does not account for human genetic polymorphism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relatively quick to conduct.</td>
<td>May use clinically irrelevant concentration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Metabolites of botanical extracts are poorly characterised for most extract and may contribute to the net inhibitory or inductive effects observed, which will not be detected with in vitro testing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In vivo using animal models</td>
<td>Can address some of the issues relating to bioavailability.</td>
<td>Species variations make results difficult to interpret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can produce quicker results than clinical studies.</td>
<td>Selection of appropriate dosage can be difficult and very large doses are often used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can provide information when clinical studies are not able to be conducted.</td>
<td>Does not account for human genetic polymorphism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical studies</td>
<td>Provide the most relevant information and are the most definitive.</td>
<td>Most studies conducted in healthy male subjects; however, most relevant results are obtained when conducted with the population that will be using the product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inter-product variability in constituent ratios means tested product may not accurately represent effects of other products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cannot differentiate between gut and liver effects (e.g. cytochromes).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Does not provide information about mechanisms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Are costly and time consuming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>May never be done for ethical reasons (e.g. safety studies in pregnancy).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Individual patient factors**
The severity of the interaction is also influenced by factors such as age, gender, preexisting medical conditions and comorbidities, environmental influences and diet. Genetic polymorphism is increasingly becoming recognised as another significant factor that can alter a patient’s risk of experiencing adverse drug reactions. The importance an interaction is given is also related to some extent to the setting in which it occurs. Risk can be minimised or managed when patients openly discuss their use of herbal and pharmaceutical medicines with all their healthcare providers and they are carefully supervised.

**Problems and pitfalls interpreting the evidence**
Firstly, understanding the basic mechanisms involved is essential, as is keeping in mind the type of evidence that might suggest the possibility of an interaction. It is important to note the general lack of correlation between in vitro and in vivo tests, and the inaccuracies of extrapolating data from animal models to predict clinical significance in humans. In many cases, interaction studies are absent, so clinicians must use their professional judgement to evaluate what is known about the medicines and the patient, and then the likelihood of a clinically relevant interaction.

**A PREDICTIVE ALGORITHM**
The METOPIA algorithm provides a framework for healthcare professionals when making rational decisions about the introduction of a second, potentially interacting medicine. In this chapter, it is assumed that a herbal medicine is involved. METOPIA stands for:

**Medication and mechanisms**
- What types of medicines are involved? High-risk medicines such as those with a narrow therapeutic index require closer monitoring.
- Is an interaction theoretically possible? This needs to be based on a fundamental understanding of the pharmacokinetic parameters and pharmacodynamic effects of the medicines involved.

**Evidence available?**
- Is there supportive evidence for an anticipated interaction?
- If so, what is the weight of that evidence (theoretical, in vitro, in vivo, case reports or clinical trials)?

If the information gathered so far suggests an interaction is possible, continue with the following steps.

**Timing and dose — introducing which, when and for how long?**
- When are the medicines being taken — at the same time or are doses separated by several hours? It is particularly important to determine the timing if a physicochemical interaction is anticipated.
- What is the duration of use? Interaction mechanisms may develop only over several days or weeks (such as CYP induction), or may occur more rapidly.

**Outcomes possible**
- What is the potential clinical outcome of an interaction — major, minor or neutral? In regard to herbal medicine, this is often speculative.

**Practitioner considerations**
- Is the practitioner in a position to monitor and manage an interaction should it become significant? In a hospital setting, an interaction is generally considered important if something must be done to relieve patient symptoms or if it will have a significant impact on critical therapy. Practitioners and nursing staff are in an ideal position to monitor for interactions and respond quickly should this be necessary. In a community setting, general practitioners, pharmacists, naturopaths and herbalists are better placed, and adequate patient self-monitoring becomes more important.

**Individual considerations**
- What are the patient’s individual preferences and ability to self-monitor a potential interaction should it arise?

**Action required**
- Having established the criteria so far, five actions are possible:
  - Avoid — consider an alternative treatment that is unlikely to produce undesirable interaction effects.
— Avoid unless adequate medical monitoring is possible — changing the dose and regimen may be required for safe combined use.
— Caution — tell patients to be aware that a particular event is possible and to seek advice if they are concerned.
— Observe — the practitioner is alert to the possibility of an interaction, even though it is unlikely to have clinical consequences and is likely to be a neutral interaction.
— Prescribe — the outcome of the interaction is beneficial and can be used to improve clinical outcomes.

ASSESSING THE LIKELIHOOD OF AN ADVERSE DRUG–HERB INTERACTION

The likelihood that an adverse reaction is responsible for a patient’s presenting signs and symptoms should always be considered. If suspicious, then it is essential to take appropriate steps to clarify the likelihood of an adverse reaction.

Patient evaluation
Factors to consider are:
• detailed description of the event — severity of symptoms, signs, onset, duration, frequency
• differential diagnoses (e.g. non-medicinal causes, such as exacerbation of condition, laboratory error or an interaction).

Causality and probability
Determining a cause-and-effect relationship between a medicine and an adverse reaction can be difficult. The degree of certainty that links a medicine to a specific reaction can be classified as definite, probable, possible, conditional or doubtful, and must be assessed in each individual case. Several algorithms exist to help clinicians determine the likelihood of an adverse reaction. Table 8.6 shows the Naranjo algorithm adapted for use as an interaction detection tool (Naranjo et al. 1981). The adverse drug reaction possibility classification is based on the total score:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&gt;8</td>
<td>highly probable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4–7</td>
<td>probable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–3</td>
<td>possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>doubtful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEXT STEPS IF INTERACTION IS LIKELY
Analysis of the medicine
If an interaction involving a herbal or natural medicine is highly likely, then it must be authenticated, botanically verified and analysed for the presence of contaminants. These essential steps will establish whether the interaction is due to an intrinsic property of the medicine itself, and therefore reproducible, or to extrinsic factors such as poor manufacturing processes.

Case reporting
All suspected adverse reactions should be reported to several authorities:
• The local government agency responsible for post-marketing surveillance and collecting adverse drug reaction case reports. In Australia this is the Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee (ADRAC). (Reporting is confidential, open to everyone and is now possible online at www.tga.gov.au.)
• Relevant local herbal and natural medicine associations such as the National Herbalists Association of Australia (www.nhaa.org.au).
• Relevant product manufacturer. (Manufacturers keep their own records and are obligated to inform the TGA.)
• Prescriber, if applicable.

Chapter 7 provides further practical information about the safe use of CAM and risk factors for adverse events and interactions.

TWO MEDICINES REQUIRING SPECIAL ATTENTION

DIGOXIN
Digoxin is a drug indicated for the treatment of numerous cardiac ailments, such as atrial fibrillation and severe heart failure. It has a positive inotropic effect on both normal and failing hearts, although its primary benefit is mediated by neurohormonal modulation. It has a narrow therapeutic index and therefore minor changes in dose or serum levels can have clinically significant consequences. Digoxin is subject to pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic interactions with pharmaceutical, herbal and natural medicines, resulting in possible therapeutic failure or toxicity (Table 8.7).
### TABLE 8.6 ASSESSING THE LIKELIHOOD THAT AN ADVERSE REACTION IS CAUSED BY AN INTERACTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
<th>DON'T KNOW</th>
<th>SCORE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do previous conclusive reports of this interaction exist?*</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is suggested that several resources are examined to determine whether the report is a possible, probable or confirmed interaction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the adverse event appear after the suspected medicine/herb/nutrient was co-administered?</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the adverse reaction improve after the suspected medicine/herb/nutrient was discontinued?</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the adverse reaction reappear when the medicine/herb/nutrient was readministered?</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are there alternative causes (other than the suspected medicine/s) that could produce this reaction?</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was the medicine detected in the blood (or other fluids) at levels known to be toxic or subtherapeutic, when previous levels were within the normal range?</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was the reaction more severe when the dose of medicine/herb/nutrient was increased, or less severe when decreased?</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has the patient had a similar reaction to the same or similar medicine in any previous exposure, when concomitant complementary medicines were not used?</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was the event confirmed by objective evidence?</td>
<td>+1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL score</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Although a rechallenge provides important evidence, this is not always appropriate.

### TABLE 8.7 SUSPECTED OR KNOWN INTERACTIONS BETWEEN DIGOXIN AND HERBAL MEDICINES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INCREASED DIGOXIN EFFECTS POSSIBLE</th>
<th>DECREASED DIGOXIN EFFECTS POSSIBLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Herbs that induce potassium loss with long-term use:</td>
<td>Herbs currently known to induce P-gp and/or CYPs in a clinically significant manner:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Glycyrrhiza glabra (licorice)</td>
<td>• Hypericum perforatum (St John’s wort)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Paullinia cupana (guarana)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anthraquinone-containing herbal laxatives (senna, cascara, aloe and buckthorn)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some herbal diuretics may also induce some degree of potassium loss; however, clinical significance is unknown.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbs containing cardiac glycosides:</td>
<td>Herbs containing &gt; 50,000 ppm potassium:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nerium oleander (oleander)</td>
<td>• Avena sativa (oats)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adonis autumnalis (false hellebore)</td>
<td>• Taraxacum officinale (dandelion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Convallaria majalis (lily of the valley)</td>
<td>• Apium graveolens (celery)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharmacodynamic interaction theoretically possible, although not seen in one clinical study:</td>
<td>Foods containing &gt;50,000 ppm potassium:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Craetagus oxyacantha (hawthorn)</td>
<td>• asparagus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herbs and natural constituents known or suspected to inhibit P-gp or CYPs:</td>
<td>• beetroot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• apple juice</td>
<td>• bok choy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• curcumin</td>
<td>• cucumber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• daidzein</td>
<td>• lettuce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• genistein</td>
<td>• rhubarb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• grapefruit</td>
<td>• spinach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• green tea polyphenols</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• orange juice (seville oranges)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• piperine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• quercetin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• resveratrol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• rosemary extract</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Potassium changes

Potassium states are of special concern with digoxin because hypokalaemia lowers the threshold for drug toxicity. It is well known that pharmaceutical medicines such as thiazide diuretics and corticosteroids have the potential to induce a state of hypokalaemia. There are several herbal medicines that require attention such as *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (licorice), *Paullinia cupana* (guarana) and anthraquinone laxatives (e.g. aloe, buckthorn, cascara and senna). As with potassium-depleting drugs, adequate potassium intake should be recommended and potassium levels monitored together with clinical signs and symptoms.

Alternatively, there are a number of herbal medicines and foods that contain significant amounts of potassium that could increase the threshold for drug efficacy. Some of the common herbs and foods containing greater than 50,000 ppm of potassium include asparagus, beetroot, bok choy, cucumber, lettuce, rhubarb, *Avena sativa* (oats), *Taraxacum officinale* (dandelion) and *Apium graveolens* (celery).

P-gp and changes to metabolism

Digoxin is a substrate for P-gp, therefore serum digoxin levels are altered when P-gp induction or inhibition occurs. It is known that drugs such as verapamil and quinidine, which affect P-gp, can significantly interact with digoxin and in recent years several herbal and natural medicines have also been identified with the potential to alter P-gp activity. Of these, the herb St John’s wort has been investigated under controlled clinical conditions and found to decrease the digoxin area-under-the-curve by 25% after 10 days’ treatment (Johne et al 1999). Monitoring of plasma digoxin concentration and clinical effects is required when patients commence or cease St John’s wort while taking digoxin. As discussed earlier, several other herbs affect P-gp expression and concurrent use should be supervised.

Pharmacodynamic interactions

Pharmacodynamic interactions are theoretically possible when herbs containing naturally occurring cardiac glycoside constituents, such as oleander (*Nerium oleander*), false hellebore (*Adonis autumnalis*) and lily of the valley (*Convallaria majalis*), are ingested at the same time. Although not commonly prescribed for internal use, theoretically these plants may reinforce drug activity and induce symptoms of toxicity. Signs and symptoms of digoxin toxicity include anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, weakness, visual disturbances and ventricular tachycardia.

It has been speculated that the herb hawthorn (*Crataegus oxyacantha*) could potentiate the effects of cardiac glycosides, as both in vitro and in vivo studies indicate it has positive inotropic activity. Furthermore, the flavonoid components of hawthorn also affect P-gp function and cause interactions with drugs that are P-gp substrates, such as digoxin. In practice, however, results from a randomised crossover trial that evaluated co-administration of digoxin 0.25 mg with *Crataegus* special extract WS 1442 (hawthorn leaves with flowers) 450 mg twice daily for 21 days found no significant difference to any measured pharmacokinetic parameters (Tankanow et al 2003). Although this is reassuring, combined use should be supervised by a healthcare professional and drug requirements monitored.

In practice, the likelihood and significance of these interactions varies considerably, and the response required to ensure safe use of medicines can be multifaceted. For example, if Mr A has been taking St John’s wort for several months and then digoxin is introduced, routine monitoring of digoxin levels enables appropriate doses to be determined and ensures the safe use of both medicines. However, it is essential to advise Mr A to inform his healthcare professional when use of St John’s wort is going to be ceased or the dosage changed, as digoxin levels will require closer monitoring during the change. On the other hand, if Mrs B has been taking digoxin for some time and then St John’s wort is to be introduced, additional monitoring is required for at least 3 weeks to determine whether a new effective digoxin dose is required. Once again, if there is to be an alteration to St John’s wort use, Mrs B should be advised to see a healthcare professional for monitoring during the transition.

Interference with therapeutic drug monitoring for digoxin

In 1996, a case was reported of a possible interaction between Siberian ginseng and digoxin (McRae 1996). More specifically, it involved an elderly man whose serum digoxin levels rose
(but did not produce toxic symptoms) when he concurrently took a Siberian ginseng product, fell when the product was stopped and then rose again when use was resumed. Unfortunately, the report was inaccurate, as the product was later analysed and found to contain digitalis. Additionally, no case reports suggesting drug toxicity were published over the following years. Research published in 2010 suggests that eleutherosides found in the herb are chemically related to cardiac glycosides and may interfere with digoxin assays. Furthermore, several other herbal medicines have been identified with the ability to interfere with drug monitoring for digoxin, such as Dan Shen, Chan Su, _Uzara_ root and Asian ginseng (Dasgupta 2003). According to Dasgupta, monitoring free digoxin eliminates the interference from Dan Shen and Chan Su, but is not useful in overcoming interference by Siberian or Asian ginseng. For these herbs, using the EMIT urine test or the Bayer, Randox, Roche or Beckman assays is appropriate.

**WARFARIN**

Warfarin is an important anticoagulant drug with a narrow therapeutic index. If blood levels become elevated, potentially serious consequences can arise if bleeding complications develop, whereas reduced blood levels can result in failure to protect the patient from thromboembolic events. Pharmacologically, the anticoagulant effect is dependent on its ability to interfere with hepatic synthesis of vitamin K-dependent clotting factors. As such, any significant changes to vitamin K ingestion can alter the drug’s activity. Common foods with high vitamin K levels (>100 micrograms/100 g) are: beef (liver), broccoli, cabbage, cauliflower, egg yolk, kale, lettuce, spinach, canola oil (rapeseed) and soybean oil.

**Pharmacodynamic interactions**

Pharmacodynamic interactions can theoretically occur when other medicines with coagulant or anticoagulant activity are used concurrently. Medicines with antiplatelet activity, such as ginger and garlic, can theoretically increase the risk of bruising or bleeding when taken concurrently with warfarin. Other herbal medicines suspected to potentiate the pharmacological effects of warfarin include guarana and bilberry in very high doses. Alternatively, herbs containing naturally occurring coumarins exhibit weak anticoagulant activity, if any at all (unless converted to dicoumarol as a result of improper storage), so do not necessarily pose an additional bleeding risk (see also Chapter 9).

The case of _Ginkgo biloba_ is a curious one, as there is evidence that one of its components, ginkgolide B, is a potent platelet-activating factor antagonist (Smith et al. 1996). However, multiple placebo-controlled studies have failed to detect a significant effect on platelet function or coagulation (see monograph for more details). One was an escalating dose study, which found that 120 mg, 240 mg or 480 mg given daily for 14 days did not alter platelet function or coagulation (Bal Dit et al. 2003). Interaction studies have further found that the INR does not increase when patients are concurrently taking _Ginkgo biloba_ with warfarin (Engelsen et al. 2002, Jiang et al. 2005). Owing to the serious nature of such potential interactions, a cautious approach is advised.

**Pharmacokinetic interactions**

Warfarin consists of a pair of enantiomers and is extensively metabolised by CYP1A2, 3A4 and 2C9. Metabolism of the more biologically active isomer, the S form, occurs chiefly by CYP2C9, whereas a minor metabolic pathway is CYP3A4. The less potent R isomer is chiefly metabolised by CYP1A2. Therefore, any alteration to the expression or activity of these specific enzymes can affect the drug’s pharmacokinetics.

As is the case with nearly all herbal medicines, predicting the clinical significance of these theoretical interactions is difficult because most evidence currently comes from in vitro and in vivo tests and case reports.

**THE RATIONAL USE OF HERBAL AND NATURAL MEDICINES**

Since the first few human studies were conducted back in the late 1990s suggesting serious herb–drug interactions could occur, hundreds of further studies have been performed to test whether commonly used herbal medicines have the potential to interact with pharmaceutical drugs. At the time, the media touted the first studies as being the ‘tip of the iceberg’ and headlines of ‘dangerous drug-herb cocktails’ were commonplace.
Over the last 15 years, it has become apparent that the metaphorical iceberg has not emerged and there are, in fact, only a handful of commonly used herbal medicines with the potential to cause serious drug interactions. Medicines with a narrow therapeutic window are of greatest concern (such as warfarin), as are medications used in serious diseases and life-threatening situations such as anti-rejection, anticancer and anti-HIV medication.

As with all drug interactions, safety is greatly improved when patients openly discuss all the medications they are taking, clinicians are informed about the potential for interactions and appropriate steps are taken to avoid or minimise the interaction via separating doses, altering dosage regimens, ceasing some treatments or altering drug dosages. Often careful supervision is all that is required by an informed clinician and diligent patient.

The two algorithms presented in this chapter provide a general guide to help in clinical practice and make sure the key factors are considered. As always, it is important to recognise that using this information in practice requires individual interpretation, because the clinical effects of any interaction, no matter how well documented, will not occur consistently in each patient, each time or to the same degree of intensity. Ultimately, it is the application of current knowledge, together with good observational skills, open communication and clinical experience that will reduce the risk of unwanted interactions and maximise successful outcomes. Table 8.8 lists key steps towards the rational use of herbal and natural medicines.

REFERENCES


CHAPTER 9

PREOPERATIVE CARE: CONSIDERATIONS

Reducing the risk of surgery and maximising successful outcomes is the common effort of surgeons, anaesthetists, doctors, nurses and other healthcare professionals. However, few consider the influence of herbal and natural medicines and whether this has the potential to alter outcomes. Even fewer consider the effects of these medicines after surgery. This chapter explores the potential of herbal and natural medicines to hinder surgical outcomes and also introduces the concept of using these medicines beneficially.

EXTENT OF CM USE


One survey of 3106 patients attending pre-operative clinics in the USA found that 51% were using CMs, and that women were more likely users than men (Tsen et al. 2000). Age was also a factor, with patients aged between 40 and 60 years greater consumers of CMs. Overall, only 21% of patients sought advice from a healthcare provider about supplement use, whereas the majority cited friends and family or their own decision as reasons for taking these medicines.

Another survey of 1017 patients presenting for pre-anaesthetic evaluation found that approximately one in three were taking one or more herb-related compounds (Kaye et al. 2000). Disturbingly, nearly 70% of these patients did not report use when they were asked during routine anaesthetic assessment. Lack of communication was also detected in a review of 2560 patients, which identified that 39% were taking natural supplements, with herbal medicines being the most popular (Leung et al. 2001). Of these, 44% did not consult with their primary-care doctor and 56% did not inform their anaesthetist before surgery.

Similar trends have also been identified among Australian surgical patients (Braun et al. 2006a, Grauer 2004). A survey of 508 presurgical inpatients at two tertiary hospitals found that in the 2 weeks before admission, 46% had used CMs, of which 38% were self-prescribed (Braun et al. 2006a). Just over half these patients planned to continue using them while in hospital. During the 2 weeks before admission, 64% had not discussed use with any community-based or hospital-based healthcare professional. Similar to findings of other studies, patients using CMs were most likely to be female, and to have pursued higher education and earn above-average incomes. Interestingly, this study found that age was not predictive of use, and that older patients were just as likely as young patients to be using CM. Importantly, 58% of surgical patients did not discuss their use with
a hospital doctor, nurse or pharmacist. When patients were asked why they did not tell hospital staff, it was not because they feared being judged negatively, but overwhelmingly because they were not asked. This was also the first Australian study to ask patients about their interest in hospital-based CM therapies; 85% expressed an interest.

A recent study of cardiothoracic surgical patients at a private hospital in Melbourne also revealed that CM use is widespread by this population before surgery. Nearly half (51%) took CMs in the two weeks before admission and, interestingly, medical doctors were the main prescribers. The most popular supplements were fish oils and multivitamins, and use was not significantly associated with gender, education or income. Many patients did not tell hospital staff about use, not because of fear of being judged negatively, but, similarly, mainly because they were not asked (Braun & Cohen 2011).

Poor communication was identified again at two other hospitals whereby 20% of surgical patients had used vitamin supplements and 14% herbal medicines in the previous 6 weeks, but only 28% had informed hospital staff (Grauer 2004). Once again, the majority of patients had self-selected their treatment.

These findings pose several important questions, such as whether surgeons, anaesthetists, doctors or pharmacists are aware of the potential safety issues associated with CMs, routinely ask patients about herbal and natural medicines in a way that encourages open dialogue and have the knowledge and resources to interpret the answers. Survey results published in 2001 found that, although doctors did ask about herbal and natural medicine use, most did not check with reference texts for more information (Silverstein & Spiegel 2001). Disturbingly, the survey also detected an obvious lack of knowledge about common herbal medicines among doctors. A more extensive study was conducted with hospital doctors and pharmacists at an Australian tertiary hospital (Braun et al 2006b). The study of 127 surgeons, anaesthetists, doctors and pharmacists found that 68% thought CMs could be dangerous and that patients’ use needed to be monitored; however, only 28% routinely asked patients about CM use. All groups lacked knowledge and confidence in dealing with CM, and 81% felt they had insufficient knowledge to be able to identify whether a CM product could adversely affect patient care. Despite this, few checked for side effects or interactions when patients using CMs were identified.

When patients do report using herbal and natural medicines, hospital doctors and pharmacists do not routinely document this information in patients’ charts, making effective communication even more difficult (Braun et al 2006b, Cohen et al 2002). Cohen et al (2002) found the prevalence of supplement use was 64% in a group of 212 patients, but only 35% of all supplements were recorded on patients’ charts.

### ASSESSING POTENTIAL FOR ADVERSE EFFECTS

The use of CM by surgical patients should not pose any serious concern, unless they have the potential to cause adverse events that would negatively affect the outcome of surgery and impede recovery. Potential unwanted effects, such as increased bleeding risk, sympathomimetic effects or detrimental interactions with medicines commonly used in the perioperative period, are some examples.

Developing a list of herbal and natural supplements with a realistic potential to cause adverse effects in surgery is difficult at the current time, as the pharmacology of many of these medicines, including pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic properties, has yet to be fully elucidated. Until evidence from controlled clinical studies is available, other evidence will be used but should be interpreted cautiously.

### SAFETY, SIDE EFFECTS AND INTERACTIONS WITH OTHER MEDICINES

The risk of harm associated with the use of CMs is largely unknown; however, it is likely to be greatest in high-risk surgery; that is, when the surgical procedure to be undertaken and the patient’s health status put the patient at real risk of serious complications. Factors such as preexisting fluid and electrolyte status, cardiorespiratory performance, comorbidities and medical pretreatments need to be considered.
when assessing safety in patients (Girbes 2000). Additionally, the type of surgical procedure should be considered; in particular, those procedures in which increased bleeding would be a serious complication (e.g. orthopaedics or neurosurgery) or those that put significant physical strain on the patient (e.g. coronary bypass) would be considered high risk.

**BLEEDING RISK**

Surgery is often associated with some degree of blood loss, but this is usually limited by the body’s haemostatic mechanisms, which finely regulate interactions between components on the blood vessel walls, circulating platelets and plasma proteins. A retrospective survey of adverse surgical outcomes in several US hospitals found that postoperative bleeding accounted for 10.8% of all surgical adverse events, making it the third most frequent adverse surgical event (Gawande et al 1999). In practice, whether bleeding risk is a serious concern is usually dictated by the type of surgery to be undertaken. For example, minor dental procedures would not be as seriously affected by increased bleeding as neurosurgery.

A number of explanations may account for increased bleeding, such as undiagnosed clotting disorders, liver disease or the preoperative use of certain medicines such as antiplatelet agents. Over time, it has become recognised that some CMs also have the potential to influence the body’s haemostatic response. Initially evidence was derived from case reports suggesting CM use was associated with bleeding or from in vitro tests indicating antiplatelet activity; however, an increasing number of clinical studies are now being published to more rigorously determine which CM products cause clinically significant bleeding.

**Herbal medicines and food supplements**

Whether preoperative use of herbal medicine alters bleeding risk is difficult to determine because few controlled trials are available for this specific population. Evidence is usually extrapolated from other sources to identify those medicines with suspected antiplatelet or anticoagulant activity and, while still largely speculative, this will continue to provide a guide until more robust evidence is available. However, care should be taken not to assume that when a CM-drug interaction exists with an anticoagulant drug (e.g. warfarin) it is always due to a pharmacodynamic interaction and therefore the CM alone has significant bleeding activity. Glucosamine provides a good example of this conundrum.

**Glucosamine**

Glucosamine products are extremely popular and mainly used for the symptomatic relief of osteoarthritis in the shorter term and for chondroprotection when used long-term. In 2007, Knudsen and Sokol searched the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) MedWatch database and identified 20 case reports suggesting that D-glucosamine or glucosamine-chondroitin sulfate use with warfarin was associated with altered coagulation (manifested by increased INR, or increased bleeding or bruising) (Knudsen & Sokol 2008). This is a relatively small number of cases given the popularity of glucosamine supplementation, particularly in older adults and the number of prescriptions written for warfarin.

Of the 20 case reports, four included use of warfarin and glucosamine alone and in 15 cases, use was also combined with chondroitin sulphate. In three cases, consumers were also using agents known to affect INR, thereby discounting their value in determining causality. Serious outcomes such as hospitalisation were reported in five of 20 cases and six others reported excessive bruising or bleeding. Most of the reports were from consumers and lacked important details, such as use of other medications, time frames for use and also follow up observations when glucosamine was stopped.

In addition, the WHO-adverse drug reaction database contains 21 more detailed reports of possible warfarin–glucosamine interactions. The reports tend to come from industry or healthcare professionals and are more comprehensive than the consumer reports in the United States (Knudsen & Sokol 2008). These reports more strongly suggest that glucosamine potentiates the anticoagulant effects of warfarin. Of the 21 cases, 11 described people on long-term warfarin therapy with a stable INR before taking glucosamine. Eight patients experienced a change to INR within 3 weeks and for 5 patients, this happened within 1–3 months. Importantly, the change in INR resolved in 81% of the 21 individuals when glucosamine was stopped.
Regarding safety in surgery, the question remains, does glucosamine used on its own increase the risk of serious bleeding? Until further research can be conducted to determine whether the interaction is pharmacodynamic or pharmacokinetic, it is recommended that patients cease use at least 1 week prior to major surgery and then recommence glucosamine treatment when it is safe to do so. Considering this is a long-term therapy, suspending use for several weeks should not pose any major issue for patients.

Besides the problems arising from extrapolating information from drug–CM interaction reports, difficulties also arise when evidence is contradictory, making clinical recommendations even more difficult. The herb Tanacetum parthenium, also known as feverfew, provides a good example. Several test-tube studies and animal models have observed inhibition of platelet aggregation (Heptinstall et al 1988, Jain & Kulkarni 1999, Makheja & Bailey 1982); however, no significant effects were seen in a small study of 10 patients receiving feverfew (Biggs et al 1982).

The problem of inconsistent information can add to practitioners’ confusion, as some databases are infrequently updated or give undue weight to case reports and seemingly less consideration of safety information derived from clinical studies. The case of ginkgo biloba illustrates this point.

**Ginkgo biloba**

Ginkgo biloba is a popular herbal medicine used mainly for cognitive decline and peripheral vascular diseases. Concern over whether G. biloba significantly increases bleeding first arose in response to several case reports describing haemorrhage during or after surgery (Hauser et al 2002, Schneider et al 2002), and evidence that one of its components, ginkgolide B, is a platelet-activating factor antagonist (Smith et al 1996). In the following years, at least 10 clinical studies were conducted that found no evidence of significant bleeding or platelet effects due to G. biloba ingestion (Aruna & Naidu 2007, Bal Dit et al 2003, Beckert et al 2007, Carlson et al 2007, Engelsen et al 2003, Gardner et al 2007, Kohler et al 2004, Jiang et al 2005, Lovera et al 2007, Wolf 2006). Studies have included young healthy volunteers, older adults, people with multiple sclerosis and people using warfarin or aspirin at the same time as G. biloba. An escalating-dose study found that 120 mg, 240 mg or 480 mg given daily for 14 days did not alter platelet function or coagulation (Bal Dit et al 2003). Only one clinical study demonstrated that EGB761 (80 mg/day) produced a significant reduction in blood viscosity after 30 days’ treatment (Galduroz et al 2007). In 2011, a meta-analysis of 18 RCTs was conducted and concluded that standardised G. biloba therapy was not associated with a higher bleeding risk, thereby providing level 1 evidence that ginkgo biloba is safe.

Food supplements contain concentrated forms of dietary foods, such as fish oils or fibre. Herbal and food supplements overlap in many cases because various herbs are also eaten as foods (e.g. ginger). Keeping this in mind, it is not unusual to find evidence that suggests normal dietary intake of a food does not appreciably alter bleeding risk, whereas ingesting concentrated products will. For example, 4 g ginger daily does not alter platelet aggregation or fibrinogen levels according to one clinical study, whereas a dose of 10 g/day significantly reduces platelet aggregation according to another (Bordia et al 1997).

Commonly used herbal medicines and food supplements available over the counter (OTC) that have been found to inhibit platelet aggregation under clinical test conditions include garlic, ginger root, onion, policosanol and pine bark extract (Araghi-Niknam et al 2000, Arruzazabala et al 2002, Bordia et al 1975, 1997, Harris et al 1990, Jung et al 1991). Often, very high doses above normal dietary intakes are required to produce these results.

**Fish oils**

Fish oil supplements are extremely popular and considered by some healthcare professionals to increase the risk of bleeding in surgery. A search through the Medline database reveals several case reports where bleeding episodes are attributed to fish oil ingestion (Buckley et al 2004, Jalili & Dehpour 2007, McClaskey & Michalets 2007). In each of these cases, the person affected was elderly and also taking warfarin.

In contrast to this, numerous clinical intervention studies indicate no increased risk of bleeding. In 2008, Harris examined 19 clinical
studies that used doses of fish oil varying from 1 g/day to 21 g/day in patients undergoing major vascular surgery (coronary artery bypass grafting, endarterectomy) or femoral artery puncture for either diagnostic cardiac catheterisation or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. Of note, in 16 studies patients were taking aspirin and in three studies patients were taking heparin. The review concluded that the risk of bleeding was virtually non-existent. Frequent comments accompanying the studies were ‘no difference in clinically significant bleeding noted’ or ‘no patient suffered from bleeding complications’. The same conclusion was reached in a 2008 review that stated no published studies had reported clinically significant bleeding episodes among patients treated with antiplatelet drugs and fish oils (3–7 g/day) (Harris et al 2008).

Similarly, in 2013, a clinical audit of over 900 elective cardiothoracic surgical patients at the Alfred Hospital (Australia) found the use of 3000 mg of omega-3 EFAs before surgery did not significantly increase the incidence of re-admission to theatre due to bleeding or alter blood transfusion requirements (Braun et al 2014).

In light of this body of evidence, it is apparent that fish oil supplementation does not significantly increase serious bleeding risk.

**Salicylate-containing herbs**

Many salicylate-containing herbs, such as willow bark and meadowsweet, are suspected of having blood-thinning activity based on their chemical relationship to aspirin. When these herbs are ingested, salicylic acid is formed, which accounts for some of their anti-inflammatory and antipyretic activity. The synthesis of aspirin involves adding an acetyl group to salicylic acid, which not only reduces the irritant effect of the salicylic acid but also confers an antiplatelet effect. The conversion of salicylic acid to acetylsalicylic acid does not occur in the body, so it is unlikely that these herbs will have an appreciable effect on bleeding (Forrelli 2003). This has been borne out in a clinical study that found a therapeutic dose of Salicis cortex extract (willowbark containing 240 mg salicin per daily dose) produced a total serum salicylate concentration bioequivalent to 50 mg acetylsalicylate, which had a minimal effect on platelet aggregation (Krivoy et al 2001).

**Coumarin-containing herbs**

A similar confusion has arisen surrounding the presence of naturally occurring coumarin compounds in herbs. Coumarin compounds are benzo-alpha-pyrones and are found in popular herbal medicines such as dong quai, alfalfa, celery, fenugreek and red clover. Nearly all natural coumarin compounds contain a hydroxyl or methoxy group in position 7, whereas dicoumarol and related anticoagulants are hydroxlated in the 4 position (Bone & Mills 2000). This difference in chemical structure is important because it influences the entity’s potential to induce significant anticoagulant activity. It has been estimated that natural coumarins, which naturally are not substituted at the 4 position, have one-thousandth the anticoagulant activity of dicoumarol, so are unlikely to cause significant bleeding episodes (Bone & Mills 2000). As an example, a placebo-controlled study failed to identify significant changes to platelet aggregation, fibrinolytic activity or fibrinogen for the herbal medicine fenugreek, even though it contains naturally occurring coumarins (Bordia et al 1997).

**Nutritional supplements**

The safety of using preoperative nutritional supplements is also largely based on suspected antiplatelet or anticoagulant activity and is poorly researched. As such, identifying key supplements that increase bleeding risk is not straightforward and contradictory evidence also exists. Vitamin E provides a good example.

Although widely cited as affecting bleeding times, clinical studies with vitamin E supplements have produced conflicting results in recent years. According to one clinical study, a daily dose of 1200 IU of vitamin E (800 mg of D-alpha-tocopherol) taken for 28 days had no effect on platelet aggregation or coagulation compared with controls (Morinobu et al 2002). A dose of 600 mg (900 IU) of RRR-alpha-tocopherol taken for 12 weeks did not alter coagulation activity compared with placebo in another clinical study (Kitagawa & Mino 1989). However, doses of 75 IU and 450 IU have been shown to decrease platelet aggregation in human subjects in other studies (Calzada et al 1997, Mabile et al 1999).
ELECTROLYTE STATUS AND BLOOD-PRESSURE EFFECTS
Whether preoperative use of CM products significantly alters electrolyte status or blood pressure and thus increases the surgical risk is unknown and still largely speculative. Controlled trials are unavailable, so evidence is extrapolated from other sources to identify those medicines with suspected activity.

Glycyrrhiza glabra
There are a small number of OTC herbal medicines with the potential to induce hypokalaemia, sodium retention or significant cardiovascular effects. The best documented of these is probably *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (licorice), which has significant pharmacological activity and the potential to cause adverse effects when used long-term in high doses. Determining a dose that is safe for all is difficult, as there is a great deal of individual variation in susceptibility to the herb’s effects. One dose-response study that tested licorice in a variety of individuals has identified that doses as low as 50 g (75 mg glycyrrhetinic acid) taken daily for 2 weeks are capable of raising blood pressure in sensitive individuals (*Sigurjonsdottir et al 2001*). A return to baseline levels may take several weeks according to Commission E (*Blumenthal et al 2000*) and is also likely to vary between individuals.

*G. glabra* raises blood pressure and produces oedema by significantly decreasing serum concentrations of cortisol, ACTH and aldosterone, and increasing renin and sodium levels in a dose-dependent manner (*Al Qarawi et al 2002*). Glycyrrhetinic acid is the main constituent responsible, causing an 11-beta-hydroxylase deficiency secondary to an inability to convert 11-deoxycortisol or deoxycorticosterone into active glucocorticoids, cortisol and corticosterone (*Heilmann et al 1999*).

Paullinia cupana
Based on the herb’s caffeine content and diuretic activity, *Paullinia cupana* (guarana) may potentially induce hypokalaemia and unwanted cardiovascular effects when used in excessive doses. Although these effects have not been tested in controlled clinical settings, results obtained for caffeine and the following case report provide some evidence of cardiovascular activity. A 25-year-old woman with preexisting mitral valve prolapse was reported as developing intractable ventricular fibrillation after consuming a ‘natural energy’ guarana health drink containing a high concentration of caffeine (*Cannon et al 2001*).

Panax ginseng
Despite *Panax ginseng*’s reputation for altering blood pressure, current evidence is contradictory and difficult to assess. Both hypotensive and hypertensive effects have been observed in animal studies with this herb, also known as Korean ginseng. However, interpreting the significance of these results is difficult, because injectable forms are sometimes used. Clinical observations are also contradictory, with both elevations and reductions in blood pressure reported (*Valli et al 2002*).

TISSUE PERFUSION AND REPERFUSION INJURY
Unfortunately, many critically ill surgical patients survive surgery only to die of infection or organ dysfunction over the ensuing days or weeks (*Nathens et al 2002*). The precise mechanism by which organ dysfunction occurs is unclear; however, there is increasing evidence that tissue injury is mediated at least in part by reactive oxygen species derived from inflammatory cells and the vascular damage caused by ischaemia–reperfusion injury. Based on this theory, research has begun to investigate the effects of pre- and postsurgical treatment with several medicines, such as antioxidant supplements. Probably the most research conducted to date has involved coenzyme Q10.

Coenzyme Q10 pretreatment

One placebo-controlled study involving 100 patients investigated the effects of oral CoQ10 (30–60 mg) taken 6 days before surgery and found that treatment significantly lowered the
incidence of low cardiac output during recovery (Tanaka et al 1982). These results suggested that presurgical treatment with CoQ10 increased myocardial tolerance to ischaemia during surgery. A smaller, randomised double-blind study also found reduced incidence of low cardiac output during recovery with CoQ10 pretreatment and a lowered incidence of elevated left atrial pressure (Chen et al 1994). Additionally, ventricular myocardial structure was better preserved in patients receiving CoQ10 before surgery, as measured by electron microscopy.

Besides having beneficial effects on cardiac output, pretreatment with CoQ10 has a number of other effects. A randomised, placebo-controlled study of 40 patients undergoing elective coronary artery bypass found that CoQ10 (150 mg/day) taken for 7 days before surgery produced a significantly lower incidence of ventricular arrhythmias during the recovery period compared with placebo (Chello et al 1994). Additionally, mean dopamine dosage required to maintain stable haemodynamics was significantly lower with CoQ10 pretreatment. One placebo-controlled study involving high-risk surgical patients used 100 mg/day CoQ10 for 14 days before surgery and for 30 days afterwards (Judy et al 1993). This treatment regimen dramatically hastened the recovery to 3–5 days, compared with 15–30 with a placebo, and significantly reduced the incidence of complications.

Another double-blind RCT investigated the effects of preoperative high-dose CoQ10 therapy (300 mg/day) in patients undergoing elective cardiac surgery (mainly coronary artery bypass graft surgery or valve replacement) (Rosenfeldt et al 2005). The study of 121 patients found that approximately 2 weeks of active treatment resulted in significantly increased CoQ10 levels in the serum, atrial myocardium and mitochondria compared to a placebo; however, no effects on duration of hospital stay were seen. Active treatment improved subjective assessment of physical QOL (+13%) in the CoQ10 group compared with the placebo; however, the authors point out that physical quality of life does not necessarily indicate improved cardiac pump function and further studies are required with larger sample sizes to clarify the role of CoQ10 in cardiac surgery.

**CLINICAL NOTE — ALFRED HOSPITAL’S INTEGRATIVE CARDIAC WELLNESS PROGRAM**

The increasing incidence of high-risk and elderly patients presenting for major surgery has presented a challenge for surgeons, due to the associated increased mortality and complication rate and costs. Over the last few years at the Alfred Hospital Melbourne, Australia, researchers in the Cardiothoracic Surgical Research Unit, led by Professor Frank Rosenfeldt, have developed regimens of metabolic therapy with the pyrimidine precursor orotic acid, and the antioxidant and mitochondrial respiratory chain component CoQ10. These regimens improve the response of the ageing and failing heart to hypoxia, ischaemia/reperfusion injury and aerobic stress such as occur during cardiac surgery. Omega-3 fatty acids and the antioxidant alpha-lipoic acid have been added to the metabolic cocktail, in light of emerging research showing benefits for this population. The metabolic regimen is now being combined with holistic therapy comprising inpatient and outpatient wellness education to create a novel integrative program of ‘perioperative rehabilitation’. This approach is known as the Integrative Cardiac Wellness Program and officially commenced at the Alfred Hospital in 2008, and has been led by Professor Frank Rosenfeldt and Dr Lesley Braun.


Most recently, a 3-year prospective randomised clinical trial was completed at the Alfred Hospital in Melbourne. This involved 117 patients of mean age 65 years who were undergoing elective coronary artery bypass graft and/or valve surgery with or without coronary bypass (Leong et al 2007). Coenzyme Q10 (300 mg/day) was administered together with other natural metabolic agents (magnesium orotate 1200 mg/day, alpha lipoic acid 100 mg/day, omega-3 fatty acids 3000 mg/day and selenium 200 mcg/day) or identical placebos for a minimum of 2 weeks before and 1 month after surgery. Active treatment produced a highly significant reduction in the release of plasma troponin I at 24 hours \((P = 0.003)\) postoperatively, indicating reduced cardiac muscle damage. Additionally, patients undergoing coronary artery bypass surgery
experienced a significant 50% reduction in postoperative atrial fibrillation. It was also found that patients in the placebo group stayed 17% (6%–30%) longer in hospital than those in the metabolic group ($P = 0.002$). This result equates to an extra 1.3 days. These findings have major implications for patients’ long-term mortality, quality of life and hospital costs.

As discussed in Chapter 8, herb–drug interactions have not been as extensively researched in clinical studies as pharmaceutical drug interactions. As such, recommendations are based on the best available evidence at the time of writing, chiefly sourced from primary biomedical literature. Furthermore, clinicians using this information in practice are advised that it requires individual interpretation, as the clinical effects of any interaction, no matter how well documented, will not occur consistently in each patient, each time or to the same degree of intensity.

Although there are a myriad of different surgical procedures currently being performed in hospitals and day-surgery centres, the same general drug classes tend to be used. These are analgesics and anaesthetics. In both cases, concurrent use of herbal and natural medicines theoretically has the potential to produce unwanted interactions or, alternatively, beneficial interactions.

**ANALGESICS AND ANTI-INFLAMMATORIES**

Pain is a complex phenomenon involving both an alteration to normal neuronal activity and an individual’s perception of that alteration. As such, the sensation of pain is largely subjective and greatly influenced by psychological factors. A number of different medicines are used to relieve pain in the hospital setting.

Opioid analgesics, such as pethidine and morphine, are effective for most kinds of pain, inducing a sense of calm. Unfortunately, their use is associated with a number of unwanted effects such as nausea and vomiting, reduced gastrointestinal motility, constipation, drowsiness and the development of physical and psychological dependence.

Considering these factors, it is essential to monitor patients closely and make adjustments to their treatment plan accordingly. Further research is needed to better understand the mechanisms underlying these interactions and to develop strategies to mitigate their effects.
other sources can identify those medicines with pharmacological actions that suggest an interaction is theoretically possible, but clinical significance remains uncertain. For instance, medicines with sedative activity can theoretically prolong or potentiate the sedation induced by the anaesthetic drug combination.

**Valeriana officinalis**

Both in vivo and numerous clinical studies confirm sedative or hypnotic activity for the herb valerian (see Valerian monograph). Furthermore, valerian has been compared with benzodiazepine drugs in at least three human trials and has been found to be an effective treatment for insomnia (Dorn 2000, Gerhard et al. 1996). One double-blind randomised trial involving 202 patients found that valerian extract 600 mg/day (Sedonium) was as effective as 10 mg oxazepam in improving sleep quality over 6 weeks (Ziegler et al. 2002). Two clinical studies found that valerian use is not associated with next morning somnolence, suggesting that the herb is short-acting (Gerhard et al. 1996, Kuhlmann et al. 1999). While a pharmacodynamic interaction is possible, leading to increased sedation, its short duration of action makes a clinically significant interaction between valerian and general anaesthetics unlikely.

**Kava kava**

Kava kava produces a significant reduction in anxiety compared with a placebo according to a 2003 Cochrane review, which analysed results from 12 clinical studies involving 700 subjects (Pittler & Ernst 2003). Preliminary evidence suggests it may be equivalent to benzodiazepines in non-psychotic anxiety. It is also used in insomnia, with some clinical evidence supporting its use. With regard to surgery, kava kava may produce beneficial effects for the anxious patient; however, it could theoretically increase CNS sedation when used with benzodiazepines. Additionally, clinical testing found that kava kava significantly inhibits (≈ 40%) CYP2E1, which may have implications when used together with CYP2E1 substrates such as halothane, isoflurane and methoxyflurane, causing a rise in drug serum levels (Gurley et al. 2005b). Kava kava should be used under professional supervision to avoid adverse outcomes.
St John’s wort
Based on theoretical considerations, response to agents such as midazolam, diazepam and fentanyl may be reduced with Hypericum perforatum (St John’s wort) because of pharmacokinetic interactions, whereas a pharmacodynamic interaction may occur with tramadol (Alfaro & Piscitelli 2001). These interactions are based on evidence that St John’s wort (products containing the hyperforin constituent) induces cytochrome 3A4 and P-glycoprotein, as well as upregulating both 5-HT1A and 5-HT2A receptors and exerting a SSRI-like effect (see St John’s wort monograph for more detail).

RECOMMENDATIONS BEFORE HIGH-RISK SURGERY
Appendix 3 (Vol 2, p. 1306) provides clinicians with guidance when advising patients due for surgery about the safe use of CMs. It is limited to the 132 CMs reviewed in this book and focuses on those that are known or suspected to increase bleeding or interact with drugs commonly used in the perioperative period. The recommendations are conservative and not likely to be relevant to many low-risk patients or those undergoing minor surgical procedures; however, it is imperative that each patient is individually assessed before surgery.

CMs are listed alphabetically by common name. The comments section includes a brief description of the type of evidence available to support the recommendation; more detailed information is given in individual monographs. Several different recommendations are possible. Sometimes there is a recommendation to suspend use 1–2 weeks before surgery, which should provide ample time for bleeding rates to return to normal or potential interactions to be avoided. This is most likely an overestimation of the actual time required. Please note that coumarin-containing and salicylate-containing herbs have not been included in Appendix 3 unless they have demonstrated antiplatelet or anticoagulant effects in animal or human studies. In some cases, the recommendations are dose-dependent; in others, CM use appears safe but there is a theoretical concern.

It is acknowledged that, in practice, not all surgical patients will be able to follow these recommendations. In situations where bleeding would be a serious complication and a 1-week minimum deferment is not possible, tests of haemostasis before surgery should be considered.

It must be reiterated that the clinical relevance of some interactions and adverse effects is unknown and controlled studies in surgical patients are not available. However, it would seem prudent for healthcare providers to become familiar with these medicines, in order to advise patients appropriately and anticipate, manage or avoid adverse events during the perioperative period.

PATIENT-CENTRED ASSESSMENT AND MANAGEMENT DURING PERIOPERATIVE CARE
The term ‘evidence-based patient choice’ (EBPC) is the merging together of two important modern movements in Western healthcare, namely evidence-based medicine and patient-centred care. Evidence-based medicine requires the use of the best available evidence to make decisions about medical management. However, the individual qualities, needs and preferences of patients have sometimes been neglected as relevant factors in the decision-making process. Models of EBPC advocate shared decision making, in which patients have received the appropriate evidence for their situation and are able to communicate their personal preferences (Ford et al 2003).

QUALITY USE OF MEDICINES
Inspired by the WHO, countries around the world are developing and instigating policies to ensure medicines are of acceptable safety, quality and efficacy and are accessible. At the end of 1999, Australia launched its National Medicines Policy. In order to achieve one of the key goals of this policy, the National Strategy for the Quality Use of Medicines was developed (see www.health.gov.au).

The goal of the Quality Use of Medicines (QUM) strategy is to optimise the use of medicines to improve health outcomes. It attempts to adopt EBPC into its framework, recognising that QUM requires the collaborative effort of a ‘medication team’ made up of doctors, pharmacists, nurses and patients. It advises also that CM products be included in assessing a patient’s
RECOMMENDATIONS
At various stages of the preoperative course, different healthcare professionals can intervene to ensure the patient is optimally prepared for surgery.

If anaesthesia is to be performed, a preoperative consultation is conducted by the attending anaesthetist. According to the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA), the consultation consists of a concise medical history, physical examination, a review of results of relevant investigations and current medications (see http://www.anzca.edu.au). Although not officially stated, this includes CMs. Currently in the United States, the American Society of Anesthesiologists recommends the discontinuation of all herbal medicines 2 weeks before elective surgery. In Australia and New Zealand, the situation is different because the ANZCA does not make the same general recommendation, instead relying on each anaesthetist to make an individual assessment.

Increasingly, hospital pharmacists are taking on the role of conducting presurgical medication reviews to improve patient safety. Although the focus is on the use of pharmaceutical medicines, the use of CMs is increasingly recognised and included in the medication discussion.

Eight practice tips to promote patient safety and welfare are provided as a guide for all healthcare providers managing patients taking herbs and natural supplements during the preoperative period.

UNMANAGED INTEGRATED HEALTHCARE
Currently it appears that a number of patients are already receiving what could be described as unmanaged integrated healthcare, because they are taking herbal and natural medicines and sometimes consulting with a non-medical practitioner while being prescribed pharmaceutical medicines and consulting medical practitioners.

The ultimate aim of surgery is to improve a patient’s quality of life by increasing their perception of health and their happiness in life, and reducing limitations so that they will ideally be able to participate in life in a more spirited way (Yun et al 1999). Surveys have identified that up to 50% of surgical patients are using CMs, no doubt as a means of...
EIGHT PRACTICE TIPS TO PROMOTE PATIENTS’ WELFARE AND SAFETY

1. Ask all patients about the use of CMs.
   According to the literature, many patients fail to disclose use of CMs to hospital staff; however, disclosure is more likely to occur if they are asked directly. Some patients may not understand what is meant by the term ‘complementary medicine’, so consider using phrases such as ‘vitamins, minerals or herbal medicines’ or ‘natural medicines’. It will also be useful to determine whether the product was professionally prescribed or self-selected.

2. Suspend use of CMs known or suspected to pose a safety risk 5–7 days before surgery, where appropriate.
   According to the literature, a washout period of 5–7 days should be sufficient to ensure most CMs no longer present a safety concern (Ang-Lee et al 2001). If this is not possible or advisable, be aware of the potential problems and manage accordingly.

3. If in doubt, refer to drug information centres, peer-reviewed literature or reputable resources for further information.
   Evidence is accumulating about CM at a rapid rate, and it would be unreasonable to expect all healthcare professionals to keep up to date with these changes. However, referring to reputable information sources when unsure about patient safety is essential for best practice. This may involve referring to CM practitioners with the appropriate training and expertise.

4. Document information and recommendations in the patient’s chart.
   A patient’s CM use should be documented in the medication history and/or discharge summary as appropriate. The name, strength, brand and dose should be recorded.

5. To continue use of CMs or not?
   If a patient is experiencing benefits from the use of a CM, and the available evidence indicates safety, use should be continued, but monitored. If a patient is using a CM with known or suspected potential to cause adverse outcomes, an honest discussion about what is known and not known about the risks should ensue. If the patient still wishes to continue using the CM against professional advice, they should be asked to sign an acknowledgment form that informs them of the potential adverse effects and that their attending doctor or pharmacist has recommended against continued use. This should also be documented in the patient’s medication history and/or discharge summary.

6. Consider if and when a patient can resume taking the CM.
   If use of an effective CM has been withdrawn, recommencement will be required to restore the patient’s response. This should be discussed when taking the medication history.

7. Recommend CMs with known safety and benefit.
   If research indicates a CM has significant benefits during the perioperative period, then evidence-based practice dictates it should be considered in the patient’s management.

8. If an adverse event does occur, report this through the relevant channels.
   Little research is available to determine the clinical significance of CMs in the perioperative period. As such, case reports provide useful clues that can guide future research to better determine factors affecting patients’ safety.

achieving the same outcomes. While judicious self-care can offer numerous benefits to the individual, society and the healthcare system, there is clearly the potential for serious adverse outcomes, such as bleeding or drug interactions. The withholding of CMs because of lack of knowledge, fear or misinformation can also be problematic and result in patients being deprived of a therapeutic benefit or in the induction of withdrawal effects. It is not
unreasonable to expect that, at some time in the future, unnecessarily withdrawing CMs or failing to properly advise patients against the use of a potentially harmful product will give rise to serious adverse events resulting in litigation.

Until further clinical testing has been conducted to determine whether the herbal and natural medicines discussed here will adversely affect or beneficially influence the outcome of surgery, a collaborative yet cautious approach is recommended.

REFERENCES


Wolff IR. Does Ginkgo biloba special extract EGb 761 provide additional effects on coagulation and bleeding when added to acetylsalicylic acid 500 mg daily? Drugs R D 7.3 (2006): 163–172.


Complementary medicine (CM) is commonly used by oncology patients and therefore it is important for healthcare providers to become familiar with this use (Bernstein & Grasso 2001, Ernst & Cassileth 1998, Greenlee et al 2009, Richardson et al 2000). Typically, cancer patients use vitamins and herbal medicines, spiritual practices and psychosocial and physical therapies. Utilisation of CM therapies often increases after a diagnosis of cancer, with studies indicating that well over 50% of patients with cancer integrate CM into their treatment (Beatty et al 2012, Fox et al 2013, Vapiwala et al 2006). Unfortunately, relatively few cancer patients using CM receive information from their conventional healthcare providers and communication between patients and doctors about CM is virtually non-existent (Ernst 2003, Moran et al 2013). Oncologists surveyed in a recent study estimated CM use by their patients at around 30%, a significant underestimation of the current increased trend of CM integration (Fox et al 2013).

Patients with cancer want access to reliable and authoritative information about CM so that they can discuss benefits and limitations with their healthcare providers and make an informed decision about use. A study of children with cancer has revealed that parents also want information about CM, especially at the beginning of treatment and also in the hospital wards (Molassiotis & Cubbin 2004). Medical and CM practitioners, pharmacists and nurses can play an important role in this regard and do much to guide and support patients using or considering CM. However, in order to provide an informed and rational opinion, healthcare providers require a working knowledge of CM and an awareness of its benefits and potential to cause harm. They also need to keep an open mind, have access to reliable resources and develop collaborative partnerships across several disciplines.

Various types of CM are utilised in the oncology setting and can be divided into a number of broad categories (NCCAM 2009):

- Biologically-based CM: herbal therapies, vitamins and dietary supplements and whole-diet therapies such as the Paleolithic diet or Gerson diet.
- Energy medicine: biofield therapies such as Qigong, Reiki or therapeutic touch and bioelectromagnetic-based therapies such as pulsed and/or magnetic fields, therapeutic touch and crystal therapy.
- Manipulative and physical therapies: chiropractic, osteopathic and relaxation/lymphatic massage.
- Mind–body medicine and counselling: meditation, prayer, spiritual healing, art therapy, chanting and music therapy, dance, yoga, Qigong, tai chi, cognitive–behavioural therapy and patient support groups/cancer support centres (CRCs).
- Whole medical systems: homeopathic medicine, naturopathic medicine, traditional Chinese medicine and Ayurveda.
WHY DO PEOPLE WITH CANCER USE COMPLEMENTARY THERAPIES?

People with cancer choose CM as a means of addressing physical and psychosocial issues (Fox et al. 2013).

For physical issues, CM is used to provide symptomatic relief from the disease and/or its treatments. This includes addressing symptoms such as pain, nausea and vomiting, fatigue, constipation, weight loss and cachexia and dyspnoea. It is sometimes used to minimise long-term adverse consequences of treatment, such as organ toxicity.

For psychosocial issues, CM offers an avenue for dealing with anxiety, depression, stress and fear. It also provides an opportunity for patient empowerment and can give a sense of control and improve well-being.

Patients with cancer utilise complementary treatment modalities such as herbs and supplements, functional diets, topical treatments, mind–body practices (e.g. yoga, meditation, imagery, music therapy), massage, acupuncture and techniques such as Reiki and healing touch. However, research indicates that the most frequently integrated CMs are biologically-based CMs, such as nutritional supplements and herbal therapies (Walshe et al. 2012). Population-based studies indicate that females, and those with breast, head and neck, bowel and haematological cancers reported higher use of CM therapies; breast cancer patients being the most frequent users, with over 75% of patients using some form of CM (Wanchai et al. 2010).

CM use typically decreases with advanced age and increases with education and socioeconomic status. Additionally, cancer survivors who have undergone chemotherapy, radiotherapy or other treatments (bone marrow/stem cell transplant, immunotherapy) report higher use of CM compared to survivors who had never had these treatments (Fox et al. 2013, Tautz et al. 2012, Walshe et al. 2012). Perceived levels of satisfaction in CM users is also very high, with over 90% of patients indicating satisfaction in the therapies used, further increasing the likelihood that new patients will be encouraged to use CM by previous users or significant influencers, such as family and friends (Fox et al. 2013, Öhlén et al. 2006, Wanchai et al. 2010).

Patients with cancer who use CM report various positive effects, such as reduced depression and anxiety, stress, nausea, pain and dyspnoea and improved physical energy, mood, concentration and optimism (Beatty et al. 2012, Molassiotis & Cubbin 2004, Ponholzer et al. 2003). According to research in children with cancer, CM use is associated with increased confidence, improved pain relief and relaxation (Molassiotis & Cubbin 2004). Importantly, most people with cancer do not expect CM to cure or slow their disease and generally use it as a supportive measure during conventional treatment, chiefly to relieve symptoms and emotional anguish and enhance recovery (Ponholzer et al. 2003, Rees et al. 2000, Richardson et al. 2000, Wanchai et al. 2010). The use of CM is widespread and increasing, partly because of increased access to health information and the growth in research-based evidence supporting the effectiveness of complementary therapies. In addition, CM practitioners tend to have longer consultations than medical practitioners with patients and adopt a holistic approach that focuses on presenting symptoms, the patient’s lifestyle and issues that encompass mind, body and spirit. The increased interest in health prevention strategies, such as diet and stress management, are also well catered for by complementary therapists, who see these approaches as essential to good clinical practice.

POOR DISCLOSURE

Although the use of CMs is popular among people with cancer, many do not inform their medical doctors that they are using it. Population-based studies show that at least 50% of cancer patients use some form of CM, with higher percentages of around 75% in some patient subgroups such as breast cancer patients (Fox et al. 2013). However, relatively few patients discuss CM with their oncologists (Ge et al. 2013). One of the main causes for non-disclosure is that doctors do not ask patients about CM use (Schiff et al. 2011), and also because some patients anticipate disinterest or a negative response from their doctor, or think doctors are unable or unwilling to contribute meaningful information, or because it is perceived as irrelevant to the biomedical treatment course (Adler & Fosket 1999). If a patient does
Integrative medicine may be described as ‘practising medicine in a way that selectively incorporates elements of CM into comprehensive treatment plans alongside solidly orthodox methods of diagnosis and treatment’ (Rees & Weil 2001). Integrative oncology (IO) is a subset of integrative medicine. It is a term being increasingly adopted to include CM, but integrated with conventional cancer treatment, as opposed to being considered a rival or true ‘alternative’ (Deng et al 2007, Smyth 2006). IO is an evolving evidence-based specialty that focuses on the roles of complementary therapies to increase the effectiveness of conventional cancer treatment programs by improving defined outcomes such as symptom control, quality of life, reduction of patients’ distress, rehabilitation and prevention of recurrence (Sagar 2008). The core principles of IO include individualisation, holism, dynamism, synergism and collaboration (Leis et al 2008). CM therapies used in IO include natural medicines (botanicals, vitamins and minerals), nutrition, acupuncture, meditation and other mind–body approaches, music therapy, touch therapies, fitness therapies and others (Sagar 2006).

Integrative medicine in general has grown quickly in the United States and now virtually all major medical centres have departments devoted to integrative patient care, either as true stand-alone centres or departments with a research interest in this area (Ben-Arye et al 2012, Boyd 2007). This is particularly true of the major cancer centres, many of which — including Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center, New York; M.D. Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, Texas; Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland; Duke University, Durham, North Carolina; and the Dana Farber Cancer Institute, Boston, Massachusetts — have developed integrative cancer programs. In addition, programs such as the Cancer Treatment Centres of America have inpatient and outpatient programs with teams of practitioners, including medical oncologists, surgeons and radiation therapists, as well as credentialled naturopathic doctors, nutritionists, mind–body specialists and other integrative practitioners. Institutions are providing services to patients, exploring the effectiveness gap in their clinical services and are determining the efficacy of complementary therapies through randomised controlled trials and, increasingly, mixed method whole systems research (Sagar 2006).

For readers interested in keeping up to date with this evolving area, the journal Integrative Cancer Therapies is recommended, as it provides useful research and editorial information about CM in cancer care.

**CM IN THE ONCOLOGY SETTING**

Despite the increased interest in developing integrative approaches to cancer, many medical oncologists remain sceptical about the value of these modalities. A recent survey of paediatric oncologists indicates that the main concerns with patients using CM are about potential drug interactions, additional costs to the patient or that effective treatments may be ignored, prevented or delayed (Langler et al 2013). However, 65% of the respondents also indicated that they worry about a lack of competence on their own part to advise their patients about CM, and 85% expressed a desire for better education opportunities regarding CM interactions in oncology; these results are also noted in surveys of radiologists in oncology.
There are several good reasons for oncologists and other staff to take such developments seriously and learn more about CM, instead of dismissing it as eccentric and unproven (Smyth 2006):

- **To enhance mutual respect between patient and doctor.** Oncology patients are using CM and yet all too often they are reluctant to discuss this or even to inform doctors that they are doing so. Mutual respect will help build communication pathways and provide the clinician with an opportunity to ensure that no harm is introduced unwittingly by patients themselves.

- **To encourage research into CM.** One of the major reasons for the medical profession’s scepticism of CM is the poor evidence base for many of these treatments. Enquiry, instead of dismissal, will encourage further investigation and research into this area.

- **To increase doctors’, pharmacists’ and nurses’ knowledge of CM.** With ever-increasing access to information and knowledge, patients will continue to challenge their professional advisers on every aspect of cancer management. CM approaches will continue to feature strongly in many patients’ minds, placing demands on healthcare professionals in the years ahead. One way to help patients is to provide an informed, evidence-based opinion, while acknowledging that, in some cases, randomised studies may not be conducted for years, but that other forms of evidence may exist and provide guidance.

- **To help patients make safe choices and monitor their responses to treatment.** If a patient chooses to use CM, then helping them set appropriate goals and learn to self-monitor for safety issues or beneficial outcomes is both important and also helpful to the patient.

**BENEFITS OF CM IN ONCOLOGY**

A growing number of CM therapies are being subjected to clinical trials to determine their effectiveness and role in cancer treatment. In most instances, CM therapies are being investigated for symptom relief and improvements in quality of life.

A review in the *European Journal of Cancer* illustrated that the weight of evidence to support the use of some complementary approaches in cancer is clearly positive or showing a positive trend (Ernst 2003). According to the review, positive evidence exists for *Allium* spp vegetables (e.g. onions), detoxification, Sho-saiko-to, St John’s wort, acupuncture and relaxation, while there is positive trend for green tea, phyto-oestrogens, Gerson diet, *Aloe vera*, melatonin, support group therapy, hypnotherapy, therapeutic touch and enzyme supplements.

Evidence is well-established for psychosocial therapies in cancer management, such as hypnosis, music therapy, meditation and stress management, and for acupuncture (Cassileth 1999). For example, there is evidence from randomised trials supporting the value of hypnosis for cancer pain and nausea; relaxation therapy, music therapy and massage for anxiety; and acupuncture for nausea (Vickers & Cassileth 2001). Studies involving people with cancer or cancer survivors report benefits of yoga for stress, anxiety, insomnia and cancer-related symptoms and show it increases quality of life (Bower et al 2005, Cohen et al 2004).

Results from clinical studies and/or experimental models indicate that several other therapies have the potential to reduce drug-induced side effects and toxicities. For example, a Cochrane systematic review that analysed the results of four trials using a Chinese decoction containing the herb astragalus (huang-qi) as an adjunct to chemotherapy concluded that co-administration of the herbal treatment with chemotherapy produced a significant reduction in nausea and vomiting and a decrease in the rate of leucopenia (Taixiang et al 2005). The review also stated that no evidence of harm was identified with use. The herbs ginger and baical skullcap have been found to reduce symptoms of cisplatin-induced nausea in experimental models (Aung et al 2003, Sharma & Gupta 1998, Sharma et al 1997), and animal and human studies suggest long-term carnitine administration may reduce cardiotoxic side effects of Adriamycin (Mijares & Lopez 2001, Waldner et al 2006). Additionally, preclinical and clinical studies suggest that anthracycline-induced cardiotoxicity can be prevented by administering coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) during cancer chemotherapy which includes drugs such as doxorubicin and daunorubicin. Studies further suggest that CoQ10
does not interfere with the antineoplastic action of anthracyclines and might even enhance their anticancer effects (Conklin 2005). Many other natural substances, such as St Mary’s thistle, grapeseed extract, St John’s wort, parthenolide (from feverfew) and curcumin, show promise in preliminary studies in reducing chemotherapy-induced organ toxicity or other associated adverse effects and are discussed in individual monographs in this book. Research has also been conducted with individual antioxidant vitamins and minerals.

A comprehensive model of cancer care requires that patients take an active role in their healthcare and find partners to work with them during the process. Medical practitioners play a key role; however, many other healthcare providers can augment their work and help provide patients with holistic care. A number of complementary therapies have proven benefits and are considered safe. These should be made available to patients to increase their sense of wellbeing and improve their quality of life and experience of cancer, its treatments and recovery.

**SUPPORTIVE MEASURES**

Supportive care is that which helps patients and their families cope with cancer and its treatment, starting from prediagnosis, through the process of diagnosis and treatment, to cure, continuing illness or death, and into bereavement. It helps the patient to maximise the benefits of treatment and to live as well as possible with the effects of the disease.

A number of CM therapies and treatments can provide substantial support to people with cancer by providing symptomatic relief, enhanced quality of life and improved sense of wellbeing, without causing harm. CM use is an effective intervention for reducing stress and depression after a diagnosis of cancer, and a recent longitudinal study found that rates of post-cancer depression in patients who use CM are significantly lower than those who do not utilise CM therapies (Beatty et al 2012).

CM therapies also have important benefits in addition to those derived from their inherent therapeutic effect:

- They actively involve patients and provide a rare opportunity for them to exert control and tend to themselves or to have friends or family members assist them.

- Many CM therapies are time-honoured types of ‘supportive care’ that have been offered to patients for decades.

- Many are accessible.

- Some work by known mechanisms of action, whereas others may invoke a placebo response, an underutilised mechanism by which distress can be relieved and quality of life enhanced.

The information in Table 10.1 (pp 150) is a guide to some of the better-known and researched therapies and treatments that may provide supportive benefits for patients. To promote appropriate and safe use, each individual’s characteristics, medication use, general health and overall situation needs to be assessed. Where herbal and nutritional medicines are mentioned, healthcare providers should check for potential interactions with drug therapy.

**CM TO IMPROVE SURVIVAL**

Although CM is most often used to treat symptoms and enhance wellbeing, to a lesser extent it is being used as a potential cure for cancer. Examples of some CM treatments that have been used by patients to prevent and cure cancer are listed in Table 10.2 (p 151) and 10.3 (p 151). Some of the listed treatments are currently under investigation and have been subject to in vitro and in vivo studies, whereas other treatments, such as Hoxsey therapy, the Di Bella regimen, shark cartilage and laetrile, are generally considered ineffective. A full review of the available evidence is beyond the scope of this chapter, but further information can be found in the relevant monographs. (Updated information is available at some of the websites listed in Table 10.5, pp 166.)

It is interesting to note that approximately two-thirds of commercially available anticancer drugs are derived from or related to natural products, including enzymes, hormones, plants and fungal extracts (Bryant et al 2003). For example, an extract of wild chervil was mentioned in an ancient medical text as a useful salve against tumours, and it is now known that podophyllotoxin, a cytotoxic agent, is present in the *Podophyllum* species of plants. The most recent anticancer products are the taxanes (*Taxus baccata*), and the camptothecins (topotecan and irinotecan) from *Camptotheca acuminata*. 

[Table 10.1] [Table 10.2] [Table 10.3] [Table 10.5]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONDITION</th>
<th>CM THERAPY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anxiety and stress</td>
<td>Acupressure: pressure with fingertips to key locations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aromatherapy: lavender, rosemary, chamomile and marjoram oils are popular; few drops of oil in the bath, on a pillow, in an oil diffuser or in massage vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meditation and other relaxation techniques: seated or lying down; class or DVD; visualisation and imagery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Therapeutic massage: with a trained massage therapist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicines: brahmi, lemon balm, rhodiol, valerian, passionflower, kava kava, withania, Siberian ginseng; under professional supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nutritional supplements: vitamin B complex, SAMe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yoga: class or DVD; breathing exercises can be done by bedridden patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backache and muscle aches</td>
<td>Hydrotherapy: e.g. warm bath or spa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nutritional medicine: magnesium and/or calcium supplements, particularly if muscle cramping or muscle tension is a problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Therapeutic massage: with a trained massage therapist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicines: willowbark, devil's claw tea; or stronger forms under supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression</td>
<td>Herbal medicine: lemon balm, St John's wort, ginkgo, rhodiola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nutritional medicine: SAMe, fish oils, vitamin B complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meditation and other relaxation techniques: seated or lying down; class or DVD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yoga: class or DVD; breathing exercises can be done by bedridden patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhoea</td>
<td>Probiotics: recolonise bowel with beneficial bacteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glutamine: symptom relief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicine: bilberry, chamomile, goldenseal, raspberry leaf tea; or stronger forms under supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyspepsia</td>
<td>Herbal medicine: dandelion, chamomile, peppermint, cinnamon, ginger, meadowsweet, fenugreek, raspberry leaf teas; or stronger forms under supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Food supplements: probiotics, colostrum, glutamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headaches</td>
<td>Acupressure: pressure with fingertips to key locations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acupuncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicine: willow bark, devil's claw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nutritional medicine: magnesium and calcium supplements; particularly if muscle tension is a problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea and vomiting</td>
<td>Acupuncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Possibly hypnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Music therapy in combination with antiemetics for stronger effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicine: ginger, cinnamon, peppermint tea; or stronger forms under supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lime juice taken in water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain</td>
<td>Acupuncture: may also increase mobility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biofeedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicine: willowbark, ginger, devil's claw tea; or stronger forms under supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nutritional supplements: SAMe, fish oil supplements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Therapeutic massage: with a trained massage therapist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TENS daily for 6+ sessions; may improve fatigue and quality of life, provide acute pain relief and reduce analgesic requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insomnia</td>
<td>Aromatherapy: lavender, rosemary, chamomile and marjoram oils are popular; a few drops of oil in the bath, on a pillow, in an oil diffuser or in massage vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herbal medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lemon balm, passionflower, Siberian ginseng, valerian, chamomile tea; or stronger forms under supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Therapeutic massage: with a trained massage therapist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meditation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 10.2 COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES THAT HAVE BEEN USED TO IMPROVE CANCER CURE RATES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cat’s claw (Uncaria tormentosa)</td>
<td>See monograph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapparral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>There have been several positive case reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumin</td>
<td>Attracting a lot of interest from researchers. See monograph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essiac tea</td>
<td>Herbal mixture originally formulated by an Ojibwa healer and popularised in the 1920s by a nurse, Rene Caisse. (Essiac is Caisse spelt backwards.) The four main herbs in Essiac tea are burdock root (Arctium lappa), Indian rhubarb (Rheum palmatum), sheep sorrel (Rumex acetosella) and the inner bark of slippery elm (Ulmus fulva or U. rubra).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green tea</td>
<td>Attracting a lot of interest from researchers. See monograph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laetrile</td>
<td>A single compound isolated from a natural substance (apricot kernels and almonds); promoted as ‘vitamin B17’.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MGN-3</td>
<td>This is a mushroom and rice bran extract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maitake mushroom extract (Grifola frondosa)</td>
<td>Maitake D-fraction is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mistletoe extract</td>
<td>Has been subjected to clinical trials in Europe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pau d’arco</td>
<td>Used as a tea. Thought to be an old Inca remedy for many illnesses, including cancer. It is made from the bark of an indigenous South American evergreen tree, and its active ingredient, lapachol, has been isolated. See monograph for further information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-SPES</td>
<td>Chinese formulation of eight herbs consisting of isatis (Isatis indigotica), either liquorice (Glycyrrhiza glabra) or Gan coa (G. uralensis), Chinese skullcap (Scutellaria baicalensis), reishi (Ganoderma lucidum), saw palmetto (Serenoa repens or Sabal serrulata), Asian ginseng (Panax ginseng), denodrantherm (Denodrantherma morifolium) and rabdosia (Rabdosia rubescens). It is no longer available, as it was also found to contain diethylstilboesterol and warfarin, which increase the risk of adverse effects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>714X</td>
<td>A liquid medicine made from camphor, nitrogen, ammonium salts, sodium chloride, and ethanol, generally given by injection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shark cartilage</td>
<td>Thought to have potential owing to antiangiogenic properties. See monograph for further information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 10.3 CM THERAPIES THAT HAVE BEEN USED TO IMPROVE CANCER CURE RATES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CM THERAPY</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chelation therapy</td>
<td>The use of agents to chelate heavy metals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Di Bella regimen</td>
<td>Consists of melatonin, bromocriptine, retinoids, and either somatostatin or octreotide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electromagnetic therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fasting and juice therapies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoxsey therapy</td>
<td>Consists of a caustic herbal paste for external cancers or a herbal mixture for ‘internal’ cancers, combined with laxatives, douches, vitamin supplements and dietary changes; one of oldest alternative cancer treatments in the United States, dating back to the 1920s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozone therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 10.4 Cytochrome Enzymes Involved in the Metabolism of Chemotherapeutic Drugs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cytochrome Enzyme</th>
<th>Chemotherapeutic Drug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CYP 1A1, 1A2</td>
<td>dacarbazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2A6</td>
<td>cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, tegafur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2B6</td>
<td>cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2C8</td>
<td>cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, paclitaxel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2C9</td>
<td>cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2C19</td>
<td>teniposide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2D6</td>
<td>tamoxifen, doxorubicin, vinblastine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 2E1</td>
<td>dacarbazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 3A4</td>
<td>teniposide, etoposide, epipodophyllotoxin, cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, vindesine, vinblastine, vincristine, vinorelbine, paclitaxel, docetaxel, irinotecan, tamoxifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CYP 3A5</td>
<td>etoposide, tipifarnib</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Research Approaches and Constraints

The resurgence of medical pluralism has resulted in people with cancer developing their own combinations of biomedical, complementary and self-care strategies. Consequently, the need for a solid knowledge base for the non-surgical, non-radiotherapeutical and non-chemotherapeutical aspects of the treatment experience and their combinations is substantial and will only increase.

Until recently, research efforts in CM and cancer have concentrated mainly on testing a limited number of available treatments using the well-established pharmaceutical randomised controlled trial research model, with tumour size and/or survival as primary outcomes. This has already led to the publication of hundreds of randomised trials in the peer-reviewed literature. While this work is important and will continue, it does not reflect a patient’s reasons for seeking CM treatments, which are not primarily tumour reduction, but improved well-being and symptom relief.

Whole Systems Research (WSR)

Cancer care is currently developing into a complicated network of interventions that are delivered at different times and places with different intentions. Some interventions are offered by healthcare professionals at an oncology centre; others are offered by CM practitioners; still others, such as special diets, meditation and OTC natural supplements, form part of a patient’s individualised package of self-care. These treatment interventions are influenced by psychosocial factors such as the nature of the patient–provider relationship, varying levels of social support, and an individual patient’s personality. Ultimately, a patient’s outcomes are a result of all components of care, and it is likely that the effect of the whole is greater than the sum of its parts (Verhoef et al. 2005). As a result, there is a need to consider whether the current research approaches in clinical cancer care adequately cover the ongoing treatment choices and combinations. One approach developed by CM researchers is whole systems research (WSR), which is proposed as an additional research method for modern systems of care, whether they include CM or not.

WSR is ‘an emerging research framework specific for the investigation of the effectiveness of whole systems of healthcare’ which focuses on the multidisciplinary approach taken by patients, rather than adopting a reductionist perspective where all variables remain constant except one that is altered. In WSR, issues are addressed, such as the ecological validity of the model, individualised patient–centred outcomes, patient–practitioner relationships, the context and environment of the intervention, and the interactions between the various components.
CHAPTER 10 CANCER AND THE SAFETY OF COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES

of the system (Kakai et al. 2013). WSR focuses more on the individual patient and less on group-averaged results, under the assumption that there will be patient heterogeneity in response and that important information about the healing approach in that heterogeneity may otherwise be missed (Jonas et al. 2006, Verhoef et al. 2005). Integral to WSR is the belief that clinical research should reflect real-world practice and then be used to inform future clinical practice, hence the conclusion that WSR is the most appropriate form of research in integrative oncology (Sagar & Lawenda 2009). A mixed-methods approach that holds qualitative and quantitative research methods in equal esteem and captures information about different domains is advocated, because whole systems are complex and no single method can adequately capture the meaning, process and outcomes of these interventions (Verhoef et al. 2005).

In summary, WSR is research that:

• encompasses the investigation of both the processes and the outcomes of complex interventions
• includes all aspects of any internally consistent approach to treatment (philosophical basis, patients, practitioners, setting of practice and methods/materials)
• acknowledges unique patient, family, community and environmental characteristics and perspectives.

OUTCOMES RESEARCH

Researchers in Canada determined nine outcome domains relevant to WSR (Fonnebo et al. 2007) as follows: physical, psychological, social, spiritual, quality-of-life, holistic, individualised, process and context outcomes. At the same time, validated outcome instruments have been identified to measure these domains, as well as gaps where no adequate measures currently exist. Researchers in the UK and at the University of Arizona, United States, have led the way by conceptualising and developing these instruments, some examples of which are: Measure Yourself Medical Outcome Profile, Measure Yourself Concerns and Wellbeing, the Patient Enablement Questionnaire and the Consultation and Relational Empathy Measure (Fonnebo et al. 2007).

EXPLORING EXCEPTIONAL PATIENTS

Becoming familiar with patients’ individual experiences and collating information to find common themes is one method of identifying therapeutic approaches that show promising results and warrant further clinical research. In a way, this method of data collection is much like the practice of traditional healers of old, who were required to develop excellent observational and history-taking skills to learn more about the benefits and risks of treatments being applied.

This realisation has led to several international initiatives to collect and systematically categorise and review histories of patients who experience an unexpected benefit or spontaneous remission after CM treatments. Several research groups in different countries have initiated studies in this area, either collecting histories from the treatment providers or recruiting case histories mainly from patients themselves (Launso et al. 2006). The US National Cancer Institute concentrates on a series of what they designate as ‘best cases’, whereas in Norway the National Research Centre in Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NAFKAM) includes both ‘best’ and ‘worst’ cases in its reviews.

LIMITED FUNDING

Despite the enormous popularity of CM, relatively little research has been conducted into the efficacy and safety of its use by people with cancer compared to similar research into conventional medicine. The literature on integrative medicine is expanding, but currently there is a lack of studies assessing the effectiveness of integrative programs. This scarcity of research is closely related to the difficulty in assessing relevant outcomes using validated measures due to the complex nature of CM. The role of therapeutic alliances in integrative medicine is often assumed to be crucial for patients’ positive outcomes, but little research has focused on the entire integrative medicine program as a unit of analysis exploring the perspectives of patients/survivors, caregivers, CM providers and healthcare professionals. Examining the process and context by which healing occurs is crucial in CM research (Kakai et al. 2013, Verhoef et al. 2005). Currently, the majority of research into CM has been conducted in the United States, where a significant effort has been made, with government funding. In 1998
In June 2005 a report entitled ‘The cancer journey: Informing choice’ was released as a result of a Senate inquiry (Commonwealth of Australia 2005). The inquiry aimed to investigate the delivery of services and options for treatment for people diagnosed with cancer and to determine how less conventional and complementary cancer treatments can be assessed and judged. With regard to complementary medicine, several important recommendations were made, including a recommendation that the National Health and Medical Research Council provide a dedicated funding stream for research into complementary therapies and medicines and convene an expert working group to identify the research needs relating to complementary therapies, including issues around safety, efficacy and capacity building. The development of collaborative partnerships across disciplines was also advised. The Senate committee also recommended improved provision of authoritative information to patients and health professionals. Importantly, it recommended that where quality of life may be improved by complementary approaches, the means to make such therapies more accessible needs to be reviewed.

**CLINICAL NOTE — SENATE ENQUIRY INTO SERVICES AND TREATMENTS OPTIONS FOR PERSONS WITH CANCER: KEY RECOMMENDATIONS**

In June 2005 a report entitled ‘The cancer journey: Informing choice’ was released as a result of a Senate inquiry (Commonwealth of Australia 2005). The inquiry aimed to investigate the delivery of services and options for treatment for people diagnosed with cancer and to determine how less conventional and complementary cancer treatments can be assessed and judged. With regard to complementary medicine, several important recommendations were made, including a recommendation that the National Health and Medical Research Council provide a dedicated funding stream for research into complementary therapies and medicines and convene an expert working group to identify the research needs relating to complementary therapies, including issues around safety, efficacy and capacity building. The development of collaborative partnerships across disciplines was also advised. The Senate committee also recommended improved provision of authoritative information to patients and health professionals. Importantly, it recommended that where quality of life may be improved by complementary approaches, the means to make such therapies more accessible needs to be reviewed.

The Office of Cancer Complementary and Alternative Medicine (OCCAM) was established within the National Cancer Institute (NCI) in the United States to coordinate and enhance activities of the NCI in CM research as it relates to the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of cancer, cancer-related symptoms and side effects of conventional cancer treatments (see http://www.cancer.gov/). Since the establishment of OCCAM, the NCI’s research expenditure for CM has more than quadrupled, from approximately US$28 million in 1998 to approximately US$105 million in 2011 (National Cancer Institute 2011).

In the UK, the National Cancer Research Institute has a complementary therapies clinical studies development group, which is looking at prioritising areas for study and methodological issues. In Australia and New Zealand there is still relatively little government funding for research in this area; however, the establishment of the National Institute of Complementary Medicine (NICM) in 2007 was an important step towards increasing awareness of this need and lobbying government and philanthropic organisations.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS AND INTERACTIONS**

One area of great concern is the potential for CMs to reduce the efficacy of oncology treatments or increase their adverse effects and toxicity beyond acceptable limits. In conventional drug therapy, interactions are an ongoing concern, although the clinical relevance of these interactions has not always been investigated. In the area of CM, the issue is even...
more complicated because much remains unknown about the mechanisms of action of many herbal and natural medicines, and relatively little drug interaction research has been conducted.

**ADVERSE REACTIONS**

Type A and type B adverse reactions are possible with all therapeutic agents, including complementary medicines (see Chapters 7 and 8). Type A effects are the most common and predictable because they are dose-related, generally of mild to moderate intensity, and reversible. Regarding vitamins, minerals and the cancer patient, toxicity concerns mainly relate to vitamin A and the minerals selenium and zinc.

**Vitamin A**
Cumulative toxicity is possible with daily doses exceeding 100,000 IU, although some adults can experience toxicity signs and symptoms at lower doses. Symptoms tend to resolve within days to weeks. Supplementation should be avoided in chronic renal failure and liver disease, and high-dose vitamin A should be avoided during radiochemotherapy.

**Selenium**
Cumulative toxicity is possible with daily doses exceeding 1000 micrograms/day. The organic form of selenium found in high-selenium yeast is less toxic and safer than other forms.

**Zinc**
Single doses of 225–450 mg can induce vomiting. Long-term daily use of 100–150 mg interferes with copper metabolism and can cause hypocuprinaemia, red blood cell microcytosis and neutropenia.

For further information about individual herbs, vitamins and minerals, refer to the relevant monographs.

**INTERACTIONS**

Cytotoxic anticancer drugs are among the strongest drugs available and tend to have a complex pharmacological profile, narrow therapeutic index, steep dose–toxicity curve and many pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic differences both within and between patients (Beijnen & Schellens 2004). Often combinations of medicines are used to address the cancer itself, reduce the associated drug toxicities and provide palliation and symptom relief. As such, polypharmacy is standard practice. Additionally, many cancer patients are elderly and may be taking medicines for comorbid conditions such as cardiovascular disease, and as the number of concomitant medicines increases, so too does the risk of interactions (Blower et al 2005). Age-related changes to renal and hepatic functions and reduced homeostatic reserve are other complicating factors that make the prediction and avoidance of interactions difficult in this population.

As discussed in Chapter 8, there are two main categories of interaction, pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic, and a minor category known as physicochemical:

- **Pharmacodynamic** interactions occur when one substance alters the sensitivity or responsiveness of tissues to another. This type of interaction results in additive, synergistic or antagonistic drug effects and is frequently employed in clinical practice to improve patient outcomes. It is of particular concern when medicines used simultaneously have overlapping toxicities.

- **Pharmacokinetic** interactions occur when there is an alteration to the absorption, distribution, metabolism or excretion of a medicine. This interaction results in a change to the amount and persistence of available drug at receptor sites or target tissues. As a result, a change in magnitude of effect or duration of effect can occur, but no change to the type of effect is seen. This interaction is sometimes harnessed to increase serum levels of an expensive medicine without increasing the actual dose.

- **Physicochemical** interactions occur when two substances come into contact and are either physically or chemically incompatible. This type of interaction can take place during the manufacture or administration of medicines and result in the inactivation of one or both medicines.

Regardless of the mechanism involved, three possible outcomes can arise from an interaction: increased therapeutic or adverse effects; decreased therapeutic or adverse effects; or a unique response that does not occur when either agent is used alone.
Pharmacodynamic interactions

Antioxidants and chemotherapy

Chemotherapy-related toxicity is a major concern in oncology. The toxicity experienced with the use of chemotherapy agents can be sufficiently severe as to require dosage reduction, delays in treatment and even cessation of potentially effective treatments. Chemotherapy-induced toxicity is also a concern in those patients who are cured or achieve prolonged survival, but experience long-term side effects that reduce their quality of life (Weijl et al. 2004). There is emerging evidence that malnourished cancer patients are at even higher risk for chemotherapy toxicity, and therefore nutritional support in the prevention of weight loss and hypoalbuminaemia are important considerations: specific nutrient support is indicated in all chemotherapy patients as a preventative (Bozzeti 2013).

Much debate has arisen about whether antioxidant supplementation alters the efficacy of cancer chemotherapy. Epidemiological studies show that a high intake of antioxidant-rich foods is inversely related to cancer risk, however, once cancer has occurred, there is a theoretical concern that high intake of substances with antioxidant activity will reduce patients’ responsiveness to treatments that rely on inducing oxidative stress such as doxorubicin that is preferentially toxic to hypoxic cells (Borek 2004). Drugs with mechanisms of action which include free radical generation include, but are not limited to, alkylating agents (e.g. melphalan, cyclophosphamide), anthracyclines (e.g. doxorubicin, epirubicin), podophyllin derivatives (e.g. etoposide), platinum coordination complexes (e.g. cisplatin, carboplatin) and camptothecins (e.g. topotecan, irinotecan) (Labriola & Livingston 1999). Unfortunately, free radicals produced during the course of treatment are also a major source of serious side effects. For example, cisplatin and other platinum-induced toxicities include nephrotoxicity, ototoxicity and peripheral neuropathy, while doxorubicin and other anthracyclines often cause cardiotoxicity (Block et al. 2007). There are other chemotherapy drugs that are thought to be less reliant on free radical production as a mechanism of action, such as plant-derived agents (e.g. vinca alkaloids and taxanes), antimetabolites (e.g. methotrexate, fluorouracil, cytarabine) and hormonal agents (Labriola & Livingston 1999).

Attempting to characterise chemotherapeutic compounds solely in this manner oversimplifies the issue, as most effective chemotherapeutic agents are multi-mechanistic and their relative ability to generate free radicals is not only dose-dependent but also dependent on the localisation and metabolism of the drug within specific tissues (Block et al. 2007). Importantly, these cytotoxic drugs tend to have additional mechanisms of action that are not reliant on free radical generation, enabling them to target cells in a number of different ways.

Similarly, antioxidants have multiple mechanisms of action and, depending on their use and dosage, have the potential to serve as free radical molecules themselves.

Currently, clinical evidence is generally lacking to support concerns that antioxidant supplementation given concurrently with reactive-oxygen-species-(ROS)-generating chemotherapy will diminish the efficacy of treatment; however, the area remains under-researched and definitive evidence is still not available.

A historical perspective

The concept of administering antioxidant vitamins in cancer probably arose in the 1970s as a result of publications by Linus Pauling and Ewan Cameron. In one of their early papers entitled ‘Orthomolecular treatment of cancer — the role of vitamin C in host defence’, it was proposed that cancer treatment must be multidisciplinary and include all that medicine and surgery has to offer and also treatments that maximise the individual patient’s resistance to cancer (Cameron & Pauling 1974). The phrase ‘orthomolecular treatment’ was described as a means of enhancing patients’ responses, achieved by manipulating certain biochemical reactions. High-dose vitamin C supplementation was chosen as a good candidate to enhance host resistance, based on theoretical considerations, preliminary studies and the observation that many cancer patients had depleted vitamin C levels.

Cameron and Pauling went on to publish two controlled retrospective studies in 1976 and 1978 that showed the mean survival times were, respectively, more than four and three times as great for the ascorbate subjects as for the controls with the use of intravenously and
orally administered high-dose vitamin C (Verrax & Buc Calderon 2008). Pauling and collaborators were convinced that high doses of ascorbate would increase the formation of collagen, leading to tumour encapsulation. Rapidly, several criticisms were raised about the design of the Pauling/Cameron studies since they were not randomised or placebo-controlled and had other methodological weaknesses. In an attempt to either duplicate or refute the amazing results obtained by Cameron and Pauling, the Mayo Clinic initiated different controlled double-blind studies, but these did not find that treatment was effective against advanced malignant disease.

In the last 30 years, our knowledge of the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of ascorbic acid has increased and provides the rationale to support its re-evaluation as adjuvant treatment for cancer patients. Indeed, ascorbic acid is cytotoxic against a wide variety of cancer cells, but presents a low toxicity towards normal cells, which could lead to the consideration of ascorbate as an interesting anticancer agent (Verrax & Buc Calderon 2008).

The evidence today

A number of comprehensive reviews in the peer-reviewed literature have assessed the effects of combined antioxidant and chemotherapy usage on different outcomes such as side-effect reduction, reduced toxicity and, to a lesser extent, survival. While there are some promising findings, particularly indicating that antioxidants reduce chemotherapy-induced toxicity, definitive conclusions about safety and efficacy cannot yet be drawn because of the variations in study design, intervention protocols, eligibility criteria, statistical power, timing of the observation or intervention, malignancy type and anticancer regimens (Borek 2004).

Block et al (2007) evaluated data from 19 randomised controlled trials (n = 1554 patients) in which studies measured survival and/or treatment-response levels of patients who were given antioxidants concurrently with chemotherapy in order to determine if the antioxidants enhanced or interfered with the efficacy of the chemotherapy. Reviewers found no evidence to support concerns that antioxidant supplementation diminished the efficacy of chemotherapy in study populations comprising mostly advanced or relapsed patients; overall, studies showed a positive trend in the survival and response rates for the groups receiving the antioxidants. Although these results are certainly encouraging, only four studies provided adequate statistical data to support the positive conclusion made by Block et al.

Statistics were more robust to support the conclusion that antioxidant therapy reduced chemotherapy-induced toxicity. Seventeen studies reported on toxicity; 15 of these showed similar or reduced toxicities in the antioxidant group compared to controls; only one study reported significantly greater general toxicity, although the result was somewhat expected owing to the well-documented toxicities of high-dose vitamin A. One other study reported that two out of eight measured toxicities were non-significantly higher; however, the authors reported difficulty in interpretation because of poor patient compliance in the antioxidant group. More specifically, with regard to neurotoxicity, all 11 studies found antioxidant supplementation led to similar or less neurotoxicity compared to controls.

The comprehensive review looked at antioxidants with different mechanisms, such as free-radical scavengers that act as reducers or that break lipid chains (melatonin, N-acetylcysteine [NAC], vitamin E, glutathione [GSH], beta-carotene and vitamin C), metal chelators (vitamin C, epigallocatechin gallate from green tea [EGCG]), cellular protectors (vitamins A, C, E and melatonin), those that target and repair DNA aberrations (EGCG) and antioxidant enzymes created by combining with a protein to form selenoproteins (selenium, GSH). Only studies in which cancer patients were undergoing chemotherapy at the same time were included, as were all types of cancer and various chemotherapies that utilised the reactive oxygen species mechanism.

Some reviews have come to a similar conclusion (Simone & Simone 2008, Simone et al 2007). The authors evaluated 280 peer-reviewed in vitro and in vivo studies, including 50 human studies involving 8521 patients (5081 of whom were given nutrients) and concluded that studies have consistently shown that antioxidants do not interfere with therapeutic modalities for cancer. Furthermore, they contend that non-prescription antioxidants and other nutrients enhance the killing of therapeutic modalities for cancer, decrease their side
effects and protect normal tissue. In 15 human studies, 3738 patients who took non-prescription antioxidants and other nutrients actually had increased survival rates.

By contrast, a 2008 review (Lawenda et al 2008) advises against the concurrent use of antioxidants during chemotherapy because of the possibility of tumour protection and reduced survival. The authors identified 16 randomised clinical trials that studied the concurrent use of antioxidant supplements and chemotherapy, six of which included a placebo control. Although no decrements in tumour response rates or survival rates were observed in the studies that reported response data, it was reported that none of the studies were sufficiently powered to evaluate these endpoints.

Theories explaining the observed improvement in survival and/or treatment response reported in some clinical studies with antioxidant supplementation have been offered (Conklin 2004, Block et al 2007). It is suggested that oxidative stress can slow the cell-cycle progression of cancer cells, which can interfere with the ability of anticancer agents to kill cells, and that the formation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), such as aldehydes, can inhibit drug-induced apoptosis and further diminish treatment effects. It is further proposed that the use of antioxidant agents during chemotherapy could enhance treatment effectiveness by decreasing this unwanted effect of ROS generation. In the 2007 review by Block et al, it was suggested that antioxidant therapy reduced free-radical-induced damage to normal tissues, leaving non-oxidative cytotoxic mechanisms unaffected. In this way, patients experienced fewer dose-limiting toxicities, so that more of them could successfully complete prescribed regimens.

Cisplatin and antioxidants

One of the most important drugs used for the treatment of a wide range of solid tumours is cisplatin, but it induces numerous toxicities that are mainly caused by the formation of free radicals, leading to oxidative organ damage. Long-term side effects of treatment include nephrotoxicity, loss of high-tone hearing and peripheral neuropathy. As a strategy to reduce oxidative damage and drug-induced toxicities, antioxidants (nutritional and herbal) have been investigated in both animals and humans, with some studies showing amelioration or prevention of some side effects and possibly increased treatment effectiveness (Ali & Al Moundhri 2006, Lamson & Brignall 1999, Ohkawa et al 1988, Seifried et al 2003).

Neurotoxic protection

The neurotoxicity of chemotherapy depends not only on the anticancer agent used, the cumulative dose and the delivery method, but also on the capacity of the nerve to cope with the nerve-damaging process. The sensory and motor symptoms and signs of neurotoxicity are disabling, and have a significant impact on the quality of life for cancer patients. Moreover, the risk of cumulative toxicity may limit the use of highly effective chemotherapeutic agents. Therefore, prophylaxis and treatment of peripheral neurotoxicity secondary to chemotherapy are major clinical issues (De 2007).

Experimental and clinical studies have been conducted to investigate whether naturally-derived antioxidants prevent cisplatin-induced neurotoxicity, overall producing promising results. In a recent review of four trials, for example, the combination of vitamin E with cisplatin was shown in all trials to reduce the incidence of chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy (Ben-Arye et al 2013, Wolf et al 2008). While no data was included on the long-term survival of the patients involved, numerous studies have been undertaken that failed to show a detrimental effect from combining vitamin E with chemotherapy. For instance, Argyriou et al (2005) conducted a randomised, open label trial with blind assessment to investigate whether vitamin E supplementation (600 mg/day) has a neuroprotective effect in chemotherapy-induced peripheral nerve damage. Thirty-one patients with cancer treated with six courses of cumulative cisplatin, paclitaxel or their combination regimens were randomly assigned to be controls receiving standard care, or to receive oral vitamin E at a daily dose of 600 mg/day during chemotherapy and for 3 months after its cessation. The incidence of neurotoxicity differed between the two groups, occurring in 25% patients taking vitamin E and 73% of controls ($P = 0.019$). A smaller trial found that a lower dose of only 300 mg/day vitamin E significantly reduced peripheral neurotoxicity in a group of 21 patients each receiving six cycles of cisplatin.
(P < 0.01). This supplementation was orally administered every day before treatment and continued for 3 months after cisplatin therapy and did not have any negative effects on cisplatin therapy (Pace et al 2003). More recently, the same group of researchers conducted a larger follow-up study of 108 cisplatin patients administered the same dose and frequency as previously described and noted that incidence of neurotoxicity was significantly lower in the vitamin E group at 5.9% compared to placebo 41.7% (P < 0.01). The severity of neurotoxicity as measured by Total Neuotoxicity Score (TNS) was also significantly lower in the treatment group (P < 0.01) (Pace et al 2010).

In several experimental settings, the prophylactic administration of acetyl-L-carnitine (ALC), the acetyl ester of L-carnitine, prevented the occurrence of peripheral neurotoxicity commonly induced by chemotherapeutic agents and further promoted recovery of nerve function (De 2007). Later in vitro research suggested alpha-lipoic acid exerts neuroprotective effects against cisplatin-induced neurotoxicity in sensory neurons by protecting against mitochondrial toxicity, which is an early common event in cisplatin-induced neurotoxicity (Melli et al 2008).

Nephrotoxic protection

Many different agents have been shown to ameliorate experimental cisplatin-induced nephrotoxicity including antioxidants (e.g. melatonin, vitamin E, selenium, St John’s wort, capsaicin, garlic powder, spirulina, tetramethylpyrazine, a major constituent of the Chinese herb *Ligusticum wallichii*, and many others) and modulators of nitric oxide (e.g. zinc histidine complex, L-arginine) (Ali & Al Moundhri 2006, Khan et al 2006, Mohan et al 2006, Razo-Rodriguez et al 2008, Saleh et al 2005, Shimeda et al 2005). Only a few of these agents have been tested in humans.

A randomised study using 4000 micrograms/day of selenium (as seleno-kappacarrageenan), given 4 days before to 4 days after treatment with cisplatin, found that it effectively reduced drug-induced nephrotoxicity and bone-marrow suppression (Hu et al 1997). Another randomised study that tested oral vitamin E (300 mg/day), given before treatment and continued for 3 months post-treatment, showed it significantly reduced the incidence and severity of neurotoxicity associated with cisplatin (Pace et al 2003).

Alternatively, combination therapy with vitamins C and E and selenium in 48 subjects failed to exert protective effects against cisplatin-induced nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity, according to a double-blind study (Weijl et al 2004). The doses used in that study were 1000 mg vitamin C (as L-ascorbic acid), 400 mg vitamin E (as DL-α-tocopherol-acetate) and 100 micrograms selenium (as sodium selenite), which was taken as a milky beverage 7 days before the onset of chemotherapy and continued until 3 weeks after cessation of therapy. Unfortunately, the interpretation of the results is difficult, as the study was hampered by very poor patient compliance, with only 36% of the intervention patients drinking the antioxidant-enhanced beverage for the duration of the test period. Additionally, the study has been criticised for using insufficient doses of antioxidants and, although supplementation led to a marked increase in plasma antioxidant levels before cisplatin treatment, enhanced levels were not maintained during chemotherapy. Clearly, further investigation is required.

**Antioxidants and radiation therapy**

Until recently, research attention has focused primarily on the interaction of antioxidants with chemotherapy, and relatively little attention has been paid to the interaction of antioxidants with radiotherapy. In general, oncologists take the view that antioxidants diminish the effectiveness of radiation therapy; however, there is great variation in the degree of concern over this issue. Considering that over 50% of radiotherapy patients are also utilising CM, more research, education and greater patient–practitioner communication is certainly warranted (Bolderston et al 2008, Moran et al 2013).

Reviews by Moss (2007) and Lawenda et al (2008) provide summaries of the available evidence to determine whether antioxidants interfere with radiation therapy. The different conclusions drawn by the two reviews clearly indicate that the issue of safety in this population is far from decided.

In the literature, published studies have reported on the use of alpha-tocopherol for the amelioration of radiation-induced mucositis; pentoxifylline and vitamin E to correct the adverse effects of radiotherapy; melatonin alongside radiotherapy in the treatment of brain cancer; retinol palmitate as a treatment
for radiation-induced proctopathy; a combination of antioxidants and external beam radiation therapy as definitive treatment for prostate cancer; and the use of synthetic antioxidants, amifostine, dexrazoxane and mesna as radio-protectants. Moss (2007) concluded that, with few exceptions, most of the studies draw positive conclusions about the interaction of antioxidants and radiotherapy.

By contrast, Lawenda et al (2008) came to a different conclusion and advised against the concurrent use of antioxidant supplements. Five randomised clinical studies have been reported that investigated the use of high-dose vitamin E (400–600 mg/day or 400 IU/day), high-dose beta-carotene (30 mg/day) or melatonin (20 mg/night) in patients with head and neck cancers, non-small-cell lung cancer, brain metastases or glioblastoma multiforme, who were receiving radiotherapy. Two of these studies produced negative findings. The most concerning was that generated by Bairati et al (2005), who conducted a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study involving 540 head and neck cancer patients treated with radiation therapy. Patients receiving supplementation with alpha-tocopherol (400 IU/day) and beta-carotene (30 mg/day) administered during radiation therapy and for 3 years thereafter tended to have less severe acute adverse effects during radiation therapy; however, the rate of local recurrence of the head and neck tumour tended to be higher in the supplement arm of the trial. Subgroup analysis published later found that interactions between antioxidant supplementation and cigarette smoking during radiation therapy were associated with an increase in both disease recurrence and cancer-specific mortality, whereas no increase in either of these outcome measures was observed for the non-smokers (Meyer et al 2008).

Lawenda et al (2008) point out that it is important to distinguish between high-dose and relatively low-dose antioxidant supplementation and the variations in antioxidant classes, because these differences may substantially define the efficacy and safety profiles of specific antioxidant supplements as therapy for cancer patients receiving selected chemotherapy agents or radiation therapy. Conklin, from the University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA) puts forward the theory that while radiation kills cells by generating high levels of free radicals, the effect is most successful in well-oxygenated tissues (Moss 2007). Tumours, particularly large ones, are often hypoxic at their core, thereby diminishing the effectiveness of radiation. He further suggests that the degree of free radical generation is proportional to the oxygen tension in the tissue, and with improved blood flow, resulting from relatively low-to-moderate doses of antioxidants, improved neoplastic activity may be seen. Conklin also makes the point that the dose of antioxidant supplementation must be sufficiently low to avoid the risk of diminishing treatment efficacy.

**Increased risk of bruising and bleeding**

A number of commonly used herbs and natural supplements demonstrate antiplatelet activity and have the potential to increase the incidence of bruising and/or bleeding when taken in sufficient dosage. This is of particular concern for patients undergoing major surgery who are taking anticoagulants or conventional antiplatelet agents. A list of these substances is given in Chapter 9.

**Hormonally responsive tumours**

Hormonal agents are used when a neoplasm is sensitive to hormonal growth controls in the body; for example, prostate cancer is stimulated by male androgens and breast cancer by oestrogen. Chemical treatment may consist of anti-androgens, anti-oestrogens and/or cytotoxic agents. Many constituents in herbs and everyday foodstuffs can theoretically stimulate or inhibit tumour growth or interact with hormonal treatments. The flavonoid group of naturally occurring chemicals provides a good example.

Flavonoids are polyphenolic compounds widely found in vegetables, nuts, fruits, beverages (e.g. coffee, tea and red wine) and medicinal herbs such as St Mary’s thistle and St John’s wort. They exert a wide range of biochemical and pharmacological actions and have been the focus of much interest, especially with regard to their cancer-protective activities, which are attributed to free-radical scavenging, modification of the enzymes that activate or detoxify carcinogens and inhibiting the induction of the transcription factor activator protein-1 activity by tumour promoters (Moon et al 2006).

Some of these compounds have been found to decrease oestrogen biosynthesis; for example,
the flavones chrysin and baicalin, the flavonones (naringenin) and isoflavones (genistein, biochanin A) (Moon et al 2006). This is achieved by inhibiting the activity of aromatase (cytochrome P19) and could theoretically have a use in breast and prostate cancer (Kao et al 1998). Additionally, some flavonoids, such as soy isoflavones, can bind to oestrogen receptors and might slow down cell proliferation as a consequence (Wood et al 2006). Unfortunately, the bioavailability of many dietary flavonoids tends to be low, so effects seen in vitro do not necessarily reflect in vivo responses; however, this may not be true for herbal preparations or functional foods with concentrated flavonoid levels that may achieve much higher plasma concentrations.

Soy and isoflavones

Dietary soy isoflavones have attracted a lot of attention as potential cancer-protective agents, chiefly because of observations that high consumption in Asian diets has been correlated with lower incidence of prostate and breast cancers. Currently the data available is contradictory and it is still unclear under what conditions soy isoflavones have cancer protective effects, if at all.

The potential for soy isoflavones to either enhance or antagonise the effects of anticancer medicines such as tamoxifen has also been investigated in several experimental models. Most studies have focused on genistein, because of its relatively strong binding (in comparison to daidzein) to the alpha- and beta-oestrogen receptors and its oestrogenic/anti-oestrogenic activities, which are stronger than those of other isoflavones (Constantinou et al 2005). Some studies have raised the possibility that genistein could compete with tamoxifen for oestrogen receptors and thereby decrease the drug’s efficacy, an observation seen in two experimental models (Constantinou et al 2005, Ju et al 2002). Alternatively, research conducted with daidzein has produced positive results and showed that it enhanced the effect of tamoxifen against mammary carcinogenesis in the rat model (Constantinou et al 2005). In fact, the combination of tamoxifen/daidzein was more effective than tamoxifen alone for reducing tumour burden, incidence and multiplicity, as well as increasing tumour latency. When these results are taken together, it appears that although the isoflavone genistein may have a deleterious effect when combined with tamoxifen, the use of soybeans in combination with tamoxifen is not necessarily dangerous and beneficial effects may even be possible.

Drug inactivation — chemical incompatibility

Predicting interactions between natural products and chemotherapeutic drugs is difficult and occasionally unexpected findings come up. The following case highlights the challenges in making interaction predictions in the area of IO and provides a good example of drug inactivation caused by a natural compound.

In recent years, chemopreventive and chemotherapeutic effects of green tea have been reported in different malignancies and have become well known. Epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), the most abundant and biologically active polyphenol in green tea, selectively inhibits cell growth and induces apoptosis in cancer cells without adversely affecting normal cells. The antitumour effects of EGCG include inhibition of angiogenesis, modulation of growth-factor-mediated proliferation, suppression of oxidative damage, induction of apoptosis and cell-cycle arrest. As a result, it has become a popular beverage among people with cancer or at risk of cancer.

Shammas et al (2006) reported that EGCG demonstrated potent and specific antimyeloma activity in experimental models, thereby suggesting it could have a role in chemoprevention and possibly treatment of multiple myeloma. As a result, a few years later EGCG was tested in vitro and in vivo to investigate whether combining it with the proteasome inhibitor bortezomib (BZM), commonly used in the treatment of multiple myeloma, would result in an increase in the drug's antitumour activity (Golden et al 2009). The results were surprising, as green tea extract almost completely blocked the effects of BZM both in vitro and in vivo.

Upon further investigation, it was found the interaction was due to a 1,2-benzene diol moiety contained in some of the green tea constituents, particularly the epigallocatechin-gallate (EGCG) which formed stable covalent bonds with the boronic acid moiety of BZM. The formation of the new boronate product resulted in little to none of the proteasome-blocking effect usually observed for BZM, thereby neutralising the...
An interaction will occur when a substrate is co-administered with another substance that alters the expression of the relevant counter-transport protein. With regard to P-gp, expression can be altered by a number of factors, such as common foods, herbs and pharmaceutical medicines. A promising strategy is to use P-gp inhibitors to increase drug bioavailability and reverse multidrug resistance in tumours; for example, the use of oral cyclosporin and paclitaxel has proved successful in a phase II study of people with advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (Kruijtzer et al 2002). Alternatively, P-gp inducers can have the opposite effect and reduce the bioavailability of P-gp substrates and increase drug resistance: they should be avoided when medicines that are P-gp substrates are administered.

Pharmacokinetic interactions
Pharmacokinetic interactions often involve metabolising enzymes or drug transporters that have great significance in chemotherapy. Cytochrome enzymes (CYP) and drug transporters in the intestinal epithelium affect the bioavailability of many oral chemotherapy agents and can induce multidrug resistance.

P-glycoprotein
One mechanism responsible for multidrug resistance is overexpression of the adenosine-triphosphate (ATP)-binding cassette-containing family of proteins such as P-glycoprotein (P-gp), which has a counter-transport role and actively forces substrates out of cells. These proteins are expressed in both healthy cells, such as the blood–brain barrier, and resistant tumour cells, and act as a barrier. Of significance, they are highly expressed in the lumen of the gut and can substantially impede the oral uptake of several anticancer medicines (Beijnen & Schellens 2004). Examples of anticancer medicines that are P-gp substrates are:

- daunorubicin
- docetaxel
- doxorubicin
- paclitaxel
- taxol
- tacrolimus
- vinblastine
- vincristine.

Herbal and natural medicines affecting P-gp
The influence of herbal and natural medicines on P-gp expression has only recently been investigated, so much is still unknown and speculative. To date, most research has centred on St John’s wort (Hypericum perforatum), which has significant P-gp induction effects, as demonstrated in clinical testing (Durr et al 2000). Studies have found that, after 16 days of continual use, P-gp expression can increase 4.2-fold. The hyperforin constituent is responsible for the induction effect, which is achieved by activation of the pregnane X receptor (Moore et al 2000). In Europe, some manufacturers have produced low-hyperforin-containing herbal products, which may not have the same effect. Besides St John’s wort, the isoflavone genistein is reported in other studies to inhibit P-gp-mediated drug transport (Castro & Altenberg 1997).

Alternatively, rosemary extract acts as a P-gp inhibitor. According to an in vitro study, multidrug-resistant mammary tumour cells treated with rosemary extract produced an increase in intracellular concentrations of doxorubicin and vinblastine, both of which are P-gp...
substrates (Plouzek et al 1999), and the same effects were not seen in cells that lack P-gp expression. More recently, an in vitro study identified that bitter melon (Momordica charantia) leaf extract exhibited dose-dependent P-gp inhibition, which resulted in intracellular vinblastine accumulation (Limtrakul et al 2004). The effect was not seen for the fruit. Many other natural substances affect P-gp and have potential as useful adjuncts in the chemotherapeutic treatment of cancer.

**Cytochromes and metabolism**

Many drugs undergo two phases of metabolism: phase I, or functionalisation reactions, and phase II, or conjugation reactions. Many medicines, nutrients, environmental toxins and endogenous substances undergo metabolism by the CYP P450 system during phase I metabolism. As a result, an active substance can be converted into an inactive, less active, more active or toxic metabolite, or an inactive prodrug can be converted into an active one. Although there are over 50 enzymes in the CYP system, the most important for drug metabolism are CYP1A2, 2D6 and 3A4. In particular, CYP3A4 is involved in the metabolism of many anticancer medicines, some examples of which are the oxazaphosphorines (cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide) and the taxanes (paclitaxel, docetaxel) (Beijnen & Schellens 2004) (see also Table 10.4).

Interactions occur when CYP substrates and inducers or inhibitors are taken at the same time.

**Herbal and natural supplements affecting CYP enzymes**

Many factors can interfere with CYP activity, such as the ingestion of foreign compounds (e.g. environmental contaminants) or of certain constituents found in food, beverages, herbs or medicines. Of the herbal medicines commonly available, most research has been conducted with St John’s wort, which significantly induces CYP enzymes, particularly CYP3A4 with long-term administration (Durr et al 2000, Roby et al 2000, Ruschitzka et al 2000). Once again, these effects are attributed to the interaction between hyperforin and the pregnane X receptor, which regulates expression of CYP3A4 mono-oxygenase. In this way, hyperforin increases the availability of CYP3A4, resulting in enzyme induction (Moore et al 2000). Clinically, this means that serum levels of those medicines that are CYP3A4 substrates will be reduced, which can reduce drug effectiveness and possibly induce therapeutic failure.

In recent years a growing number of other herbal medicines have been subjected to interaction studies and investigated for effects on CYP isoenzymes and transporter proteins, using new in vitro and in vivo techniques. The evidence from these tests suggests that several other herbal medicines have the potential to affect drug absorption and/or metabolism. However, readers are advised that translation of in vitro data to clinical practice is problematic and imperfect, and in vivo testing is required before an interaction prediction can be made.

For example, silymarin, the active constituent group from St Mary’s thistle, significantly decreases CYP3A4 activity in primary cultures of human hepatocytes; however, four clinical studies have found no clinically significant effects in vivo (Gurley et al 2004, DiCenzo et al 2003, Leber & Knauff 1976, Piscitelli et al 2002). The daily doses of silymarin used in the clinical studies ranged from 210 mg to 480 mg.

**ELIMINATION**

Although most anticancer medicines are eliminated though metabolism, some, such as the platinum compounds and methotrexate, are eliminated mainly by the kidneys through glomerular filtration and active tubular secretion (Beijnen & Schellens 2004). Urinary excretion can be altered by substances that affect urinary pH, which will affect renal tubular reabsorption. One substance sometimes used by cancer patients is ascorbic acid. Although low-dose ascorbic acid is unlikely to cause detrimental effects, high doses that acidify the urine can affect the excretion of drug metabolites, which precipitate in the renal tubules at low pH. As a result, there has been a theoretical concern that high-dose vitamin C could precipitate methotrexate. A study by Sketris et al (1984) investigated the proposed interaction and found that it does not appear to be clinically significant; however, caution is still advised.

**CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS OF INTEGRATIVE MEDICINE**

People with cancer expect their healthcare providers to work with them to achieve
adequate symptom relief, improved quality of life and a cure. In order for this to be achieved, a holistic approach that combines several different disciplines is best.

Although the role of some forms of CM in cancer is still unclear, there is evidence to support the use of several approaches as supportive therapies. When these are considered safe and provide benefits, either for symptom relief or improvements in wellbeing and quality of life, they should be made available and become a part of standard protocol. This requires access to reliable information and a collaborative partnership with a variety of healthcare providers, based on mutual respect and open communication.

**SHARED DECISION MAKING**

A wide range of patient- and doctor-related factors affect clinical decision making and subsequent use or disuse of CM.

### 1. General safety issues

Patient safety is paramount. Medicinal CM treatments (CMs) can pose a risk to patients via several mechanisms:

- Interference with blood clotting. Cancer patients often have low platelets at various points throughout their treatment, either as a direct result of the cancer itself, or as a temporary side effect from the chemotherapy or radiotherapy. CMs that significantly inhibit blood clotting may increase the risk of haemorrhage.
- Interactions with conventional chemotherapy drugs or radiation therapy resulting in diminished therapeutic effect.
- Interactions with conventional chemotherapy drugs or radiation therapy resulting in increased toxicity and/or other side effects.

Product quality is particularly important to assess in this population. For example, products contaminated with microorganisms can have serious consequences for immunosuppressed patients who have limited ability to mount an immune response.

Such concerns obviously do not relate to non-medicinal CM therapies such as massage and meditation, which may provide significant improvement to patients’ wellbeing and quality of life during treatment. In this regard, finding an appropriately trained and credentialled practitioner with experience in treating cancer patients provides some safeguard against possible harm.

### 2. Availability of credible information sources

Credible, accurate and timely information is required for both patients and healthcare providers in order for evidence-based patient-centred care to occur.

**CLINICAL INTEREST — THE COSA POSITION STATEMENT ON COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINE**

During 2012–13, the Complementary and Integrative Therapies Interest Group within the Clinical Oncology Society of Australia (COSA) undertook a major initiative, which resulted in the COSA position statement regarding CM use by people with cancer (COSA 2013). After an in-depth search through the peer-reviewed literature, it was revealed that no clear guidelines existed that would help oncology healthcare professionals when their patients were using or considering using CM, either as adjunctive therapy or as an alternative to standard oncology practices. This meant oncologists and other doctors, pharmacists and allied health professionals could be easily confused as to their obligations ethically, professionally and legally and compromise patient safety and autonomy as a result.

The working party, chaired by Dr Lesley Braun, consisted of experts with a range of backgrounds in medicine, pharmacy, medical ethics, psychology, research, government regulation and integrative medicine, together with a consumer advocate. They were assisted by an advisory group which provided further expertise in legal matters, integrative oncology and general and community medicine.

The final document is the result of a true inter-disciplinary effort which aims to improve patient outcomes and help all involved in the therapeutic relationship to work more effectively together. It provides guidance for health professionals involved in the treatment of cancer patients.

Asking patients about their interest in and use of CM therapies is essential for good practice. Understanding their reasons for use and the information sources to which they have referred when making such decisions is also important. For many patients, family and friends are the main sources of information; others use CM practitioners, the internet, books and magazines.

When discussing the reliability of the information, some points to guide the patient may include:

- Was the internet site used an officially recognised and registered site? Is it frequently updated and what are the credentials of the authors providing content for the site?
- Was the internet site supporting a profit-driven enterprise? Was information in adversorial style, rather than independently written?
- If CM practitioners were consulted, are they registered or accredited with a professional association? What is their training and experience? Credentials?
- Healthcare providers should ensure that they:
  - have access to current, credible and relevant information sources
  - have effective information-seeking skills to locate information from databases and other resources
  - are able to critically evaluate the information retrieved
  - have a network of reliable CM practitioners who can provide additional information about treatments when necessary, as sometimes the peer-reviewed medical press has little useful information about some CM treatments.

3. Evidence of efficacy and safety

Evidence-based, patient-centred care means amassing and evaluating the best available evidence and involving patients in a shared decision-making process that takes into account their individual circumstances and wishes.

The emerging picture shows that the evidence base is greater for some CM therapies than others, and there is an urgent need for more research from a variety of perspectives and methodological approaches. Peer-reviewed journals provide a good starting point for gathering evidence, and frequently updated databases written by people expert in CM are also useful. It is important to note what evidence exists, but also what is missing and remains unknown. Importantly, keep in mind that a lack of evidence is not necessarily evidence of a lack of effectiveness. It is likely that some CM treatments being used by patients are effective, but have not yet been subjected to clinical trials. Table 10.5 gives a list of useful internet information sources.

When reviewing the evidence, look for:

- in vitro tests and studies with animal models that provide information about mechanisms, pharmacokinetic influences and the potential effects in humans, although they are not definitive
- clinical studies to provide more relevant information — consider the patient group involved, intent of treatment, interventions used (dose, form, time frames, administration method, type of extract), what other medications were also used (where relevant) and outcomes measured
- up-to-date, comprehensive reviews of the literature.

4. Intent behind using CM treatment

CM therapies are generally used as adjuncts to conventional treatments and, in the case of cancer, to improve quality of life, address symptoms and reduce toxic side effects. Far less common is their use as a potentially curative treatment. The decision to use CM therapies for symptom relief requires different consideration from using CM for curative purposes or as an alternative to conventional care.

5. Severity of disease

The use of CM by people with readily curable cancers is often viewed differently to its use by people with difficult-to-treat cancers or by palliative patients.

Highly curable cancers

When conventional treatments have a high cure rate, concomitant use of less proven treatments should be avoided unless there is clear evidence that it will not diminish outcomes. For example, testicular cancer currently has a 98% 5-year survival rate when treated aggressively with chemotherapy (Cancer Council
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information source and URL</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>National Cancer Institute (USA)</td>
<td>The National Cancer Institute (NCI) is a component of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), one of eight agencies that compose the Public Health Service (PHS) in the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). The NCI, established under the National Cancer Act 1937, is the Federal Government's principal agency for cancer research and training. The website includes cancer topics, clinical trials, cancer statistics, research and funding, and cancer-related news.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office of Cancer Complementary and Alternative Medicine</td>
<td>The Office of Cancer Complementary and Alternative Medicine (OCCAM) was established in October 1998 to coordinate and enhance the activities of the National Cancer Institute (NCI) in the arena of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM). The website includes CAM information, research resources, the NCI Best Case Series, clinical trials, grant application information, and funding opportunities in cancer CAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDQ Cancer Information Summaries: Complementary and Alternative Medicine</td>
<td>Electronic resource containing summaries of complementary therapies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDQ Cancer Clinical Trials</td>
<td>The Physician Data Query (PDQ) holds many clinical trials in its international registry and is maintained by the NCI. Users can perform tailored searches focusing on type of cancer, trial type (treatment, supportive care, screening, prevention, genetics, diagnostic), location, status (active or closed), phase, sponsor and drug name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer Research Portfolio</td>
<td>Electronic source for searching, organising and analysing NCI-supported research by organ/cancer site and/or by broad area of scientific interest, such as biology, cancer aetiology, prevention, early detection, diagnosis, prognosis, treatment, cancer control, survivorship, outcomes research and scientific model systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (USA)</td>
<td>The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) is one of the 27 institutes and centres that make up the National Institutes of Health (NIH). Congress established NCCAM in 1998 to explore complementary and alternative healing practices in the context of rigorous science, to train complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) researchers and to disseminate authoritative information to the public and professionals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office of Dietary Supplements (USA)</td>
<td>The US Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act 1994 authorised the establishment of the Office of Dietary Supplements (ODS) at the NIH to promote scientific research in the area of dietary supplements. The website covers background information about claims and labelling for dietary supplements and botanicals, tips for supplement users, how to spot health fraud, and access to US Department of Agriculture and NIH databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Cancer Society</td>
<td>The American Cancer Society (ACS) is a nationwide community-based voluntary health organisation. With headquarters in Atlanta, Georgia, the ACS has state divisions and more than 3400 local offices. The ACS journal <em>Cancer Journal for Clinicians</em> archives numerous articles on CAM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer Labs</td>
<td>ConsumerLab.com, LLC (CL) provides independent test results and information to help consumers and healthcare professionals evaluate health, wellness and nutrition products. It publishes results of its tests on its site, including listings of brands that have passed testing. Products that pass CL’s testing are eligible to bear the CL Seal of Approval.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
TABLE 10.5 USEFUL WEB-BASED INFORMATION SOURCES (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information source and URL</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UK information service &lt;chisuk.org.uk/&gt;</td>
<td>Complementary health information service, UK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NCI-SUPPORTED CANCER RESEARCH PROGRAMS AND CANCER PROGRAMS (USA)**

- [http://www.mskcc.org/cancer-care/integrative-medicine](http://www.mskcc.org/cancer-care/integrative-medicine) Integrative Medicine at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center
- [Cam-cancer](http://www.cam-cancer.org/) (Continued)
- [http://www.dana-farber.org/Adult-Care/Treatment-and-Support/Patient-And-Family-Support.aspx](http://www.dana-farber.org/Adult-Care/Treatment-and-Support/Patient-And-Family-Support.aspx) Dana-Farber Cancer Institute Zakim Center for Integrated Therapies
- [http://www.compmed.umm.edu/default.asp](http://www.compmed.umm.edu/default.asp) The University of Maryland Center for Integrative Medicine
- [http://www.medicine.virginia.edu/research/research-centers/cancer-center](http://www.medicine.virginia.edu/research/research-centers/cancer-center) University of Virginia Cancer Centre Complementary Cancer Care Program
- [mdanderson.org/](http://mdanderson.org/) University of Texas, complementary medicine information site

**Sources:** Lee 2005, Schmidt & Ernst 2004, Vickers & Cassileth 2001

Victoria 2012). The chemotherapy used for this type of cancer commonly involves cisplatin. Although some clinical studies indicate that concurrent use of antioxidants is likely to be safe, until definitive evidence becomes available it is prudent to avoid use during curative treatment.

If the patient understands the risks associated with the use of complementary medicinal agents during curative treatment, and voluntarily decides to use CM treatment, a compromise may sometimes be reached. It is reasonable to suggest the patient takes CM treatment in between treatment cycles, but abstains for a certain time period before, during and after curative treatment to minimise the risk of drug interactions. The washout period between treatments will depend on the pharmacokinetics of the agents being used. For chemotherapy, for example, St John’s wort should be discontinued at least 7 days before any chemotherapy that is metabolised by the CYP3A4 enzymatic pathway or involves the P-gp transporter (see Chapter 8). Treatment may be recommended after five times the elimination half-life of the chemotherapy agent. Making an accurate determination of appropriate washout periods is difficult owing to interpatient variability of pharmacokinetics, and the difficulty in interpreting pharmacokinetic data. As a result, a conservative estimation of the half-life is recommended.

The Micromedex database states that the drug cyclophosphamide has an elimination half-life of 3–12 hours (Commonwealth of Australia 2005). This means that St John’s wort should not be started until 3 days (12 × 5 = 60 hours) after cessation of the cyclophosphamide. However, this has not taken into account the fact that cyclophosphamide has active metabolites that contribute to its pharmacological effect. No specific data are available in popular drug databases concerning the half-life or the metabolic pathway of the primary active metabolite, but a case study of 12 people has been reported that identified 77% of the active metabolite present in serum 8 hours after administration. Assuming linear
elimination kinetics, the elimination half-life of the active metabolite is extrapolated to be 17.3 hours; thus, the patient should wait for at least 86.5 hours before recommencing St John’s wort. In such cases, if the cyclophosphamide is being given at regular intervals (often every 14 or 21 days), the most practical option is to abstain throughout treatment and recommence 4 days after the final treatment cycle has ended.

The use of CMs during active chemotherapy attracts a greater risk of drug interactions and is more problematic. It is essential to gather credible information about the known and unknown benefits and risks and to provide this to patients, so they can be involved in making an informed decision. If patients with a readily curable cancer experience drug-induced toxicities that jeopardise their ability to continue treatment or necessitates dose reduction, then concurrent use of antioxidants and other organ-protective treatments may be more acceptable and provide a useful option.

**Difficult-to-cure cancers**

When conventional treatments do not have a high cure rate, or a patient’s response to treatments has been poor, a different situation arises. The combined use of CMs with conventional treatments is more acceptable in this setting, although thoughtful judgement still applies.

Numerous CM therapies have been shown to reduce a variety of chemotherapy-related side effects and/or pose no obvious risk to patients. In addition, CMs shown to have potential to increase the efficacy of chemotherapy can be further explored (with less ethical problems) in this patient group.

For example, ovarian cancers in the advanced stages are often treated with single-agent cisplatin or carboplatin. Treatment cessation or dose reductions are most often due to toxicities and/or renal impairment. Various antioxidants have been shown to reduce chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy (Wolf et al 2008), renal toxicity and haematological toxicity (Block et al 2007) and may play an important role in reducing additional organ damage. Some clinical studies further suggest that co-administration may improve survival outcomes. As a result, combined use of antioxidants and other CMs with chemotherapy may present patients with a good option.

**Prevention and enhancing quality of life in cancer survivors**

Good knowledge and critical analysis of CM research is important for clinicians who counsel patients about preventing cancer recurrence and meeting survivorship needs. Considering that 64% of cancer patients survive more than 5 years beyond diagnosis, oncologists and CM practitioners are challenged to expand their focus from acute care to managing the long-term health consequences of cancer treatment and ensuring the integration of cancer prevention into their practices (Sagar & Lawenda 2009). When a patient has initiated CM integration during cancer therapy, it is reasonable to expect that they may want to continue utilising CM in some form, such as a specialised diet or supplementation, after treatment. Reasons for this include enhancing quality of life, reducing fatigue and improving energy levels, enhancing immune function and the interest in continuing positive lifestyle changes to prevent recurrence.

There are numerous dietary and lifestyle changes that survivors may wish to explore, with different levels of evidence to support their use. For example, a patient may reduce refined sugar intake in an ongoing manner due to research suggesting that excess dietary sugar increases cancer risk and promotes cancer cell growth via an increase in growth hormones, including insulin and insulin-like growth factor (Dixon 2012). Some food groups, such as dairy, are associated with increased risk of some types of cancer such as prostate cancer (Newmark & Heaney 2010), but may be protective in others such as breast cancer (Dong et al 2011). Lack of lifestyle modification plays a very significant role in the development of new cancers, and may be a factor in the relapse of previously treated disease. Preventive lifestyle changes such as increased physical activity are very important in bowel cancer prevention (Meyerhardt et al 2006a, 2006b) and in breast cancer (Larsson et al 2007). Weight loss was found to be a significant contributor to disease-free survival in the Women’s Intervention and Nutrition Study, which focused on limiting dietary saturated fat in breast cancer survivors (Chlebowski et al 2006). A systematic review of publications on green tea research concludes that the tea may have beneficial effects on cancer prevention (Liu et al 2008); however,
Besides providing physical benefits, the use of various CM therapies and medicinal treatments may provide significant psychological benefits for patients and their families if they have a strong need to feel they have tried everything possible that is available to them. The use of CM during this stage may assist them in coming to terms with the disease and subsequently help the family in the bereavement period.

Unfortunately, indiscriminate use of CM treatments during this period may also occur as patients and families search desperately for new treatments. Research on breast cancer patients indicates that the most common sources of information for use in decision making lie outside the medical system, including families and friends (49%), followed by the media (39%), whereas within the medical system, the GP played the major role (40%), followed by the outpatient oncologist with 20% (Tautz et al. 2012). Although family and friends may be true advocates for the patient’s wishes in some cases, inappropriate and unqualified advice in the use of some CMs may have detrimental effects and place an unwanted burden on the patient physically, psychologically and financially if they comply with family wishes while suffering added discomfort to do so (Öhlén et al 2006).

In the UK, national guidelines for the use of complementary therapies in supportive palliative care provide a comprehensive overview of the key issues involved in CM provision and make recommendations for the safe and appropriate use of CM treatments in this population (Tavares 2003).

Communicating with patients
The patient–practitioner communication gap is a common phenomenon with regard to CM therapies in oncology. Failure to integrate information regarding health advice and therapies may interfere with provision of effective and safe care, whether complementary or conventional. In addition, communication barriers may cause safety issues, such as delayed or missed diagnoses, as well as adverse events from conventional–CM treatment interactions (Gulla...
& Singer 2000). It is well documented that a lack of good communication and failure to include the patient’s perspective is responsible for most formal complaints and litigation in health care malpractice, which involves lack of due care resulting in patient injury (Brophy 2014, Cohen & Kemper 2005). Because of the above issues of safety and efficacy, which could impact on patient care, doctors and CM providers are urged to inquire about concurrent therapies and monitor them for safety and efficacy in order to accurately estimate clinical risk (Deng et al 2007).

Various measures have been proposed in an attempt to close this gap. Schiff et al (2011) proposes a user-friendly framework for better communication between doctors, CM practitioners and patients in order to achieve better therapeutic outcomes. They propose more frequent use of the referral letter with the inclusion of four critical ‘content elements’, as represented by the mnemonic DIGS: conventional or CM diagnosis, with explanations of terminology when appropriate; possible CM–conventional treatment interactions; description of the treatment plan and goals and finally the quality of supplement/herb when prescribed (Schiff et al 2011). A communication-prompting list is suggested as a framework for clinicians, including reminders to: understand, respect, ask, explore, respond, discuss, advise, summarise, document and monitor CM therapies. Further to this, Ben-Arye et al (2013) provide a flow chart of a recommended stepwise approach to establishment of open non-judgemental oncologist–patient dialogue on CM use during adjuvant chemotherapy and radiotherapy, focusing on discussion, respect and trust.

Clearly, the need for doctors to assist patients in treatment decision making is considerable and requires more than just a basic knowledge of common CMs (Ben-Arye et al 2012). Doctors also need to have effective (and non-judgemental) communication skills to manage the discussion. They must also be prepared to provide information and advice about the benefits and likely outcomes of treatment, potential risks and complications, side effects and complementary treatment options. This information is needed to meet the traditional ethical principles of non-maleficence (do no harm), beneficence (offer a benefit), respect for autonomy and medical pluralism (Ben-Arye et al 2008, Schiff & Ben-Arye 2011, Schiff et al 2011, Verhoef et al 2006).

---

**PRACTICE TIPS TO PROMOTE PATIENT SAFETY**

1. **Ask all patients about the use of CMs.**
   According to the literature, many patients fail to disclose use of CMs to hospital staff; however, disclosure is more likely if they are asked directly (Tautz et al 2012). Some patients may not understand what is meant by the term ‘complementary medicine’, so consider using phrases such as ‘vitamins, minerals or herbal medicines’ or ‘natural medicines’. If a patient is also seeing a CM practitioner who is prescribing CM treatments, it may be important to contact the practitioner and start an open dialogue to promote patient safety and continuity of care.

2. **Clearly communicate about risks and benefits, known and unknown.**
   If a patient is using a CM that has known or suspected potential to cause adverse outcomes, an honest discussion about what is known and unknown about the risks should ensue. If the patient still wishes to continue using the CM product against professional advice, the patient should be asked to sign a form listing the potential adverse effects to acknowledge that the attending doctor or pharmacist has recommended against continued use. This should also be documented in the patient’s medication history and/or discharge summary.

3. **Suspend use of complementary medicines known or suspected to pose a safety risk.**
   Pharmacokinetic data about the drugs involved in treatment will help determine appropriate washout periods.

4. **If in doubt, refer to drug information centres, peer-reviewed literature or reputable resources for further information.**
   Evidence is accumulating about CM at a rapid rate and it would be unreasonable to expect all healthcare professionals to keep up to date with these changes. However, referring to reputable information sources when unsure about patient safety is essential for best practice.
CHAPTER 10 CANCER AND THE SAFETY OF COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES

5. Document information and recommendations in the patient’s chart.
A patient’s CM use should be documented in the medication history and/or discharge summary as appropriate. The name, strength, brand and dose used should be recorded.

6. Consider if and when a patient can resume taking the CM.
If use of an effective CM has been withdrawn, recommencement will be required to restore the patient’s response. This should be discussed when taking the medication history.

7. Recommend CMs with known safety and benefits.
If research indicates a CM has significant patient benefits and is low-risk, then evidence-based practice dictates it should be considered in the patient’s management. Furthermore, if a patient is experiencing beneficial outcomes from the use of a CM product in the time prior to cancer treatment and the available evidence indicates efficacy and safety, continued use should be considered and carefully monitored.

8. If an adverse event does occur, report this through the relevant channels.
Case reports provide useful clues that can guide future research to better determine factors affecting patients’ safety.

REFERENCES
Beatty LJ et al. Evaluating the impact of cancer on complementary and alternative medicine use, distress and health related QoL among Australian women: A prospective longitudinal investigation.


INTRODUCTION
Most women take over-the-counter (OTC) medicines at some point during their pregnancy. This may occur intentionally or inadvertently during the early stages of pregnancy. The advice on many product labels and package inserts is to ‘consult your doctor’ or ‘consult your healthcare provider’ before using a particular medicine, yet many healthcare providers are poorly equipped to weigh up the benefits of taking, or not taking, a particular medicine during pregnancy. The risk/benefit assessment is possibly even more complex when considering the safety and efficacy of complementary medicines (CMs).

Medical and complementary medicine practitioners, pharmacists and other healthcare providers face similar challenges when advising the pregnant patient about CMs. Despite their popularity, there is very little published evidence regarding the efficacy and safety of natural medicines during pregnancy and lactation. Modern and traditional texts may warn against use; however, little information is provided about the evidence used to come to such a recommendation. Information about the potential efficacy of CMs in pregnancy is also scarce.

This chapter aims to provide readers with an introduction to the fundamental concepts and concerns surrounding the use of CMs in pregnancy. Part 1 explores the use of herbs and natural supplements in pregnancy from a contemporary and traditional approach. Safety and evidence issues are discussed in Part 2. Central to this section is a discussion about the methods of establishing the safety of any medicine in pregnancy. Part 3 provides a guide as to how the information presented in this chapter may be used to shape clinical practice.

PART 1 — HERBS AND NATURAL SUPPLEMENTS USED IN PREGNANCY
It is commonly known that CM is widely used throughout the world. In many countries traditional medicine continues to form the basis of primary healthcare (WHO 2002). There is an increasing trend in developed countries, including Australia, for the use of traditional and complementary medicines (MacLennan et al. 2002, Thomas et al. 2001, Tindle et al. 2005, Xue et al. 2007). The literature indicates that women frequently use CM during pregnancy; however, usage estimates vary considerably due to variations in the definition of CM used, geographical location, socioeconomic and cultural influences. For example, surveys conducted in Europe, the United States and Canada indicate the prevalence of CM usage in pregnancy to range from 7.1 to 96% (Forster et al. 2006). Australian statistics estimate that between 10% (Henry & Crowther 2000) and 91% (Forster et al. 2007) of all pregnant women will use CM at some stage during their pregnancy. Specifically in regards to herbal
medicines, although the majority of women discontinue taking herbal medicines once they are aware of their pregnancies, some others may commence taking them on the advice of their maternity care providers (Ranzini et al 2001).

Surveys of Australian women have identified that nutritional supplements are frequently taken before and throughout pregnancy. During the preconception period, the most common supplements used are folate (29–33%), multivitamins (11–12%) and other supplements including vitamin C, calcium and iron (12–15%). During pregnancy, folate use increases to 70–79% of women (particularly in the first trimester), multivitamins 27–35%, iron 38–52% and other supplements including calcium, vitamin B₆ (predominantly in the first trimester) and zinc. The herbal medicine most often used in pregnancy is raspberry leaf (particularly in the last trimester) (Forster et al 2007, Maats & Crowther 2002).

Despite the widespread use of CM, pregnant women do not always disclose their use of CMs to their healthcare providers. In one study only 1% of participants’ medical records listed their CM use (Maats & Crowther 2002), while another study reported 75% of women had informed their primary care provider (Tsui et al 2001). This is problematic as it is a missed opportunity for women to receive informed advice about the effectiveness and safety of the medicines they have chosen to use and prevent unsafe outcomes. Unsupervised use potentially increases the risk of drug interactions with prescribed medicines and contributes to the under-reporting of side effects and adverse outcomes.

Some pregnant women are motivated to take CMs in lieu of conventional medicine as they regard them as safer treatments (Hollyer et al 2002). Sometimes self-prescribed use is justified, such as using nutritional supplements to meet increased nutritional requirements or to treat a pregnancy-related health issue (e.g. nausea or general pregnancy preparation) or to treat non-pregnancy specific problems (e.g. the common cold) (Henry & Crowther 2000, Maats & Crowther 2002, Nordeng & Havnen 2004).

Pregnant women appear to use a variety of information sources to aid their selection of CMs including healthcare practitioners (Forster et al 2007, Tsui et al 2001), friends, family members (Hollyer et al 2002, Maats & Crowther 2002, Nordeng & Havnen 2004, Tsui et al 2001) and media sources (e.g. magazines and internet) (Tsui et al 2001).

NUTRITIONAL MEDICINE
Pregnant women choose to use nutritional medicines as symptomatic treatment to improve their own health in general and to optimise the healthy development of the growing child and its safe delivery.

Most clinicians will be aware of the changes in nutritional requirements that occur in pregnancy and the need for women to increase their dietary intake of certain nutrients such as iron, calcium, folate and others. Nutritional supplements are sometimes used to help women achieve these higher intake levels and correct preexisting deficiencies. The National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) nutritional guidelines for the adequate intake of vitamins and minerals (Australian Government 2006) provides guidelines for nutritional requirements during pregnancy; however, they are only estimates based on extrapolated data from other populations and models, and do not take into account the individual’s specific needs. In practice, a detailed diet and lifestyle history is necessary and sometimes additional pathology testing to enable clinicians to make more appropriate individual recommendations.

Besides enabling women to meet their basic nutritional needs, nutritional supplements are also used in larger doses to act as pharmacological agents to ameliorate symptoms and address a specific health complaint. For example, calcium and magnesium supplements have been used to reduce the severity of leg cramps, pyridoxine to alleviate nausea and folate to reduce the incidence of neural tube defects. Appendix 11.1 (p. 190) lists common nutritional supplements and their use in pregnancy. Appendix 11.2 (p. 198) lists dosage recommendations for the nutrients.

Long-term impact of maternal nutrition
The ‘developmental origins of disease’ hypothesis suggests that the benefits of a nutritional intervention may extend much further than those more immediate outcomes. Environmental factors during development, such as maternal nutrition, have been shown to influence the
expression of our phenotype. The most sensitive time for this influence has been shown in-utero. Fetal nutrition can alter the body’s structure, function and metabolism, subsequently affecting the risk of developing diseases later in life (Barker 2004). Longitudinal studies from around the world have found low birth weight (in relation to gestational age) is associated with increased risk of coronary heart disease, stroke, hypertension and type 2 diabetes in adulthood (Barker 2007). Furthermore, maternal vitamin D status during pregnancy appears to influence the bone-mineral density of offspring, even in late childhood (Javaid et al. 2006). Similarly, there is some evidence suggesting that calcium supplementation during pregnancy can reduce the offspring’s blood pressure during their childhood (Hatton et al. 2003).

HERBAL MEDICINE

Herbal medicines are used in pregnancy as pharmacological agents. They are used as foods, such as ginger, in extract form (liquid and solid dose forms) and also as teas. In many developing countries, herbal medicines have been used as the dominant form of medicine and continue to play a major role in healthcare, reproductive health and midwifery (WHO 2002).

A traditional approach

Although conception is a problem for some women nowadays, a more common problem throughout the ages was contraception. Ethnobotanical studies conducted in many parts of the world reveal that herbal medicines have been used widely to prevent conception and induce miscarriage for generations, and in some parts of the world, their use continues despite the availability of pharmaceutical contraceptive pills and devices. Besides this, herbal medicines have been used to enhance fertility, regulate menstruation, facilitate childbirth, help with expulsion of the placenta and promote lactation.

In many cultures, herbal healers have special reverence for herbs thought to have abortifacient or emmenagogue properties. These concepts are foreign in Western medicine and deserve some discussion.

Abortifacients

Plants have been used as a source of both contraceptives and early-term abortifacients since the times of ancient Egypt (Riddle 1991) and in some parts of the world this practice still occurs. The abortifacient effects of herbs are attributed to their inherent toxicity or ability to induce uterine contractions (Noumi & Tchakonang 2001). It is also suspected that abortifacient activity may be immune-mediated, hormonal or due to non-specific actions such as the ability to reduce uterine blood flow. Examples of western herbs with abortifacient potential due to suspected toxicity include: wormwood (Artemisia absinthium), pennroyal (Menta pulegium), poke root (Phytolacca decandra), pau d’arco (Tabebuia avellanedae), rue (Ruta graveolens) and tansy (Tanacetum vulgare) (Mills & Bone 2005).

Emmenagogues

The term ‘emmenagogue’ is used to describe a herb that will stimulate menstrual flow. These herbs have been traditionally indicated for delayed menstruation and developed a reputation as being contraindicated in pregnancy for fear they may induce miscarriage. Herbalists consider emmenagogues as exerting oxytocic-like effects which cause uterine contractions; however, this mechanism is unlikely to explain how they promote menses in a non-pregnant woman. Changes to lymph or blood flow and hormonal effects are more likely mechanisms. Examples of herbs found on many traditional lists thought to act as emmenagogues include aloe (Aloe vera), juniper (Juniperus communis), pennroyal (Menta pulegium), goldenseal (Hydrastis canadensis), black cohosh (Cimicifuga racemosa), blue cohosh (Caulophyllum thalictroides), dong quai (Angelica polymorpha), rue (Ruta graveolens), tansy (Tanacetum vulgare), and thuja (Thuja occidentalis). Some herbs considered as emmenagogues are also thought of as potential abortifacients if used in sufficient quantities (e.g. oxytocin agonists); however, not all abortifacients may act as emmenagogues, e.g. potentially toxic herbs with no hormonal or uterine effects.

Historical perspectives

The use of medicinal plants has occurred in Mexico since pre-Hispanic times. Nearly 10,000,000 indigenous people speaking nearly 85 different languages inhabit the region and many still depend upon plants for primary therapy from the diverse flora (almost 5000
medicinal plants) (Andrade-Cetto 2009). An ethnobotanical study of the medicinal plants from Tlanchinol, Hidalgo, Mexico identified several plants used as abortifacients: Galium mexicanum var mexicanum, Ruta chalepensis, Zaluzania triloba and Tanacetum parthenium. The herb Cinnamomum verum is generally considered useful to induce childbirth and Pedilanthus tithymaloides is used for ovarian pain.

The Criollo people of Argentina use a vast plant pharmacopoeia. To date, 189 species with 754 different medicinal applications have been recorded (Martinez 2008). The absence of a normal menstrual cycle and amenorrhea are matters of concern among these people and are treated with emmenagogue plants, the most common being Anemia tomentosa, Tripodanthus flagellaris, Lippia turbinata and Trixis divaricata. Contraceptive herbs used in the region include: Zea mays, Anemia tomentosa and abortifacient herbs include: Artemisia absinthium; Cheilantes buchtienii; Chenopodium aff. hircinum; Cuphea glutinosa; Ligaria cuneifolia; Lippia turbinata and Pinus sp. (Martinez 2008).

Rama midwives in eastern Nicaragua currently use a diverse group of plants in the practice of midwifery: 162 species from 125 genera and 62 families (Senes et al 2008). This extensive ethnopharmacopoeia is employed to treat the many health issues of pregnancy, parturition, postpartum care, neonatal care and primary healthcare of women and children. The 22 most popular midwifery species are medicinals that are widely used by practitioners other than midwives, not only in eastern Nicaragua, but elsewhere. Very few herbal species are used as contraceptives in this region, whereas abortifacients are well known and mostly made with bitter-tasting plants, probably due to alkaloids and other bitter-tasting compounds. The most widely used abortifacients are decoctions made from the leaves and seeds of soursap and the roots of guinea hen. Others are decoctions made with the leaves and/or flowers of barsley, broom weed, trumpet, sorosi and wild rice and the root of ginja.

Interestingly, midwives in other parts of the world use many Rama midwifery species for the same purpose. For example, the two species sorosi and lime are both widely regarded as important in midwifery in many parts of the world. Sorosi is one of the most widely used medicinals in eastern Nicaragua and elsewhere where it is used as an abortifacient, with similar use in Africa, Australia, Brazil, India, Malaysia, Philippines and the West Indies (Senes et al 2008). Lime is a domesticated crop used by the Rama and other indigenous groups of eastern Nicaragua as an abortifacient and to accelerate labour. It is also used to induce abortion by tribal people in India, Honduran midwives and the Tikunas of northwestern Amazonia.

Europe has a rich history of herbal medicine use, which continues to be popular today. Plants here were also used for reproductive health, to prevent conception and induce abortion, with women and midwives as the main keepers of herbal knowledge. Savin (Juniperus sabina) was one abortifacient herb of choice in Europe and pennyroyal, sage, thyme and rosemary were considered powerful emmenagogues (Belew 1999). Unlike some other parts of the world, information exchange down the generations was interrupted during the 18th and 19th centuries as there was a major shift in management of the birthing process (Schiebinger 2008). During this period, female practitioners with knowledge of herbal lore lost ground to obstetricians (men trained primarily as surgeons) and the use of plant-based treatments was gradually replaced with surgical procedures (Schiebinger 2008). As a result, much knowledge about European use of herbal medicines in fertility and reproduction was lost.

The North American Indians used herbal medicines extensively throughout the reproductive life cycle and had many remedies for improving fertility, preventing miscarriage, treating symptoms during pregnancy and facilitating the birthing process. A large number of these treatments came to the knowledge of European settlers in North America through careful study, observation and subsequent clinical use. If repeated use indicated the treatments were effective, the herbs were recorded and prescribed by the Eclectic physicians who flourished from the mid-1800s to around 1920 in the United States (Belew 1999). Many of the herbal medicines used by the North American Indians and described by the Eclectic physicians are still in use today as part of the Western herbalists and traditional midwives cache of treatments.

The Eclectics considered black cohosh a ‘remedy par excellence to stimulate normal functional activity of the uterus and ovaries’
throughout the reproductive life cycle (Belew 1999). They reported that when used regularly at the end of pregnancy ‘it will render labor easier and quicker, and give a better getting up’. Black haw was highly regarded by the Eclectic physicians, who used it both before and during pregnancy to prevent miscarriage, prepare for labour and relieve false labour pains and afterpains. The Eclectic physicians preferred to use cotton root (Gossypium) as an oxytocin agonist rather than the newly available sublingual oxytocin preparation because the herb was considered to have a more gentle action and produce more predictable results. Squaw vine (Mitchella repens) was well considered when enhanced fertility was called for. It was extensively used to promote menstruation and alleviate physical discomfort in the latter months of pregnancy, and was thought to be a good preparative to labour, rendering the birth of a child easier.

Contemporary use by Western herbalists

In Western herbal practice today, much knowledge about herbal safety and efficacy in pregnancy is drawn from North American and European traditions and traditional applications are largely used as a basis for prescriptions. Herbal medicines may be prescribed to regulate menstruation before conception, alleviate morning sickness and other symptoms related to pregnancy. A growing number of gynaecologists and obstetricians are working with herbalists to enhance patients’ chances of conception and reduce miscarriage, sometimes in combination with IVF procedures.

Requests for abortifacient herbs in Western countries are virtually unheard of; however, some women still seek herbalists to provide ‘partus (birth) preparatus (prepare)’ mixtures to prepare for childbirth and facilitate delivery. Traditionally the Eclectic physicians called these preparations ‘mother’s cordial’. They tend to be recommended in very low doses starting at 36 weeks gestation, increasing in dose each week until delivery. Herbs that have been used in partus preparatus preparations include: Mitchella repens (squaw vine), Viburnum prunifolium (black haw), Rubus idaeus (raspberry), Chamaelirium luteum (false unicorn), Caulophyllum thalictroides (blue cohosh) and Cimicifuga racemosa (black cohosh).

Today, Western herbalists are also asked for treatment to address pre- and postnatal depression, alleviate symptoms of dyspepsia, nausea and lower back pain and sometimes topical applications to reduce perineal discomfort and stretch marks associated with pregnancy. In addition, herbalists may be providing support for conditions unrelated to pregnancy, such as urinary tract or upper respiratory tract infections.

Unlike medical practitioners, Western herbalists are less concerned about teratogenicity than inducing miscarriage. To minimise the risk of harming the mother or fetus, several general guidelines are followed. Most importantly, traditional sources dictate that if known toxic herbs are avoided, then toxic side effects are unlikely to occur. In addition, other classes of herbs avoided during pregnancy include the following (Hess et al 2007):

- emmenagogues and abortifacients (discussed above)
- large quantities of herbs containing a high volatile oil content, especially during the first trimester. It is suspected that volatile oils contain constituents that could induce uterine contractions. Many kitchen spices contain volatile oils, which are not believed to be a problem when used in dietary amounts but could pose problems when used in concentrated preparations, e.g. rosemary, peppermint, thyme, sage. This contraindication is likely to be derived from European tradition
- stimulant laxative herbs containing anthraquinones. These herbal medicines stimulate peristalsis and can induce loss of water and electrolytes, intestinal cramps, loose bowels and dependency with chronic use. It is believed these harsh irritant effects may exert a reflex stimulating effect on the uterus causing uterine contractions. Stimulant laxative herbs include buckthorn, cascara (Rhamnus species), rhubarb, castor, senna and aloe. Aloe gel is not a problem as it contains a part of the plant that does not contain significant levels of anthraquinones
- herbs with hormonal actions such as Trifolium pratense (red clover) and Vitex agnus castus (chastetree) may adversely influence fetal development
- thujone-containing herbs, e.g. Achillea millefolium (yarrow), Thuja occidentalis (thuja) or Artemisia absinthium (wormwood) due to its inherent toxicity concerns
This approach is based on traditional evidence and theoretical concerns, usually without any scientific evidence to confirm lack of safety. As such, a herbalist’s approach to these herbs may be overly cautious and not borne out if scientific testing takes place in the future. For example, senna is traditionally avoided during pregnancy as it is an anthraquinone-containing herb; however, it is widely recommended as a safe and effective short-term stimulant laxative for constipation by medical practitioners (Tytgat et al. 2003). Some herbalists also recommend against the use of several aromatherapy oils during the first trimester; however, there is no scientific evidence to suggest external use of such oils poses any serious danger.

PART TWO — SAFETY IN PREGNANCY

All medicines have the potential to affect maternal health, cross the placenta and affect fetal development. The most serious risk associated with medicine use in pregnancy is the possibility of teratogenesis, which can manifest as a structural abnormality, dysfunctional growth in utero and/or long-term functional defects. Other risks include miscarriage and neonatal withdrawal.

Birth defects naturally occur in 2–4% of all newborns and in the vast majority of cases the cause is unknown. Medication use is not considered to be a major contributor to the incidence of birth defects as less than 1% of cases can be attributed to drug use (Webster & Freeman 2001). It is likely that the use of CMs in Western countries is a far less important factor.

CRITICAL PERIODS IN HUMAN DEVELOPMENT

The safe use of any medicine in pregnancy must take into account the safety of the treatment to be used, the seriousness of the patient’s presenting problem and the timing of exposure.

In the first 2 weeks prior to implantation, an insult is thought to have an all or nothing effect. Assuming the embryo survives, the risk of structural malformations to the fetus is greatest 17–70 days post-conception, a critical stage of organ development (Freyer 2008). After this time, organs continue to mature, so later adverse effects tend to be functional rather than structural and major birth defects are unlikely. Functional defects are less obvious than structural ones and may only become obvious once the child is older. The central nervous system, eyes, teeth and external genitalia are the last to fully develop and continue to mature until the baby reaches full term.

If practitioner and patient agree that medicinal treatment is warranted, then minimising exposure during critical developmental times is essential. This means using the lowest effective dose of the least toxic substance for the shortest period of time.

TERATOGENESIS

Teratogens are agents that result in structural or functional defects in the development of fetal organs (Shehata & Nelson-Piercy 2000). Sources of exposure to these agents include: contaminated air, water, soil, food, beverages, household items and medicines (including CMs). Teratogens can cause a variety of effects, including embryo/fetal death, intrauterine growth restriction and increased risk of malformations and carcinogenesis (Shehata & Nelson-Piercy 2000). The exact mechanisms responsible for teratogenicity are unknown, but theories include damage to DNA, membranes, protein and mitochondria, enzyme inhibition and hormonal interference. Despite the potential for teratogens to have devastating consequences, only a relatively small number of fetuses exposed to these agents experience adverse effects (Freyer 2008). This relates to factors such as the dose and duration of exposure, genetic susceptibility of the fetus/embryo, timing of exposure, specific mode of action of the teratogen (Miller et al. 2007) and nutritional and disease status of the mother–baby unit (Shehata & Nelson-Piercy 2000).

Data on herbal teratogens is limited and largely based on animal studies, which are not completely reliable. Blue cohosh is an example of a herb that has some evidence to suggest a potential teratogenic effect based on animal studies (Keeler 1976, Keeler et al. 1976, Knelly et al. 1999). Other herbs that may increase the risk of fetal malformations (predominantly based on limited animal data) include aloe, andrographis, cat’s claw, Jamaica dogwood, pau d’arco, pennyroyal, poke root, tribulus and white horehound (Mills & Bone 2005). There is very little evidence of teratogenic activity or
adverse pregnancy outcomes from the use of nutritional supplements with the notable exception of high-dose vitamin A. Interestingly, nutrient deficiencies such as vitamin A, folate, vitamin B₁₂, vitamin D, iodine and zinc have been found to have adverse effects including teratogenesis emphasising the important role these nutrients play in normal embryonic and fetal development.

**Neonatal withdrawal**

While the fetus is in utero, the placenta supplies it with nutrients and other substances, as well as drugs. When the baby is born, placental supply ceases, which can lead to neonatal withdrawal syndromes for certain drugs such as beta-blockers, SSRIs and other antidepressants, opiates and alcohol (Freyer 2008, Sanz et al 2005). It is not known whether the use of CMs during the final trimester can also induce withdrawal syndromes.

**HOW IS SAFETY EVALUATED IN PREGNANCY?**

One of the hardest challenges a clinician faces is advising a pregnant patient about the safety of a treatment. A key factor to consider is the strength of evidence indicating the treatment is safe or, as so often happens in pregnancy, the lack of evidence indicating it is unsafe. More specific factors are the dose of medicine to be used, precise timing of exposure and duration of exposure.

When evaluating the effectiveness of a treatment, prospective randomised trials and meta-analyses are widely considered the gold standards. When evaluating safety in pregnancy, there is a paucity of such trials because pregnant women tend to be excluded, so other methods of information-gathering are required. Epidemiological studies, tests with animal models, post-marketing surveillance systems, case reports and traditional use provide the main inputs into establishing safety; however, each method has limitations and should not stand alone without corroborating evidence from another source.

**Epidemiological studies**

Epidemiological studies are also known as population studies. Due to their large participant numbers, epidemiological studies can detect large and small size effects and sometimes rare outcomes, if the study population is sufficiently large and follow-up is sufficiently complete. As such, they may provide useful information regarding safety in pregnancy.

Considering that the incidence of fetal malformations is already small (2–4%) extremely large participant numbers would be required to detect a slight increase above what might normally be expected. For example, a study would require 35,000 women in order to establish with 95% confidence level that a medicine changes the naturally-occurring frequency of a congenital malformation by 1% (Lee et al 2000). Unfortunately, most epidemiological studies have inadequate statistical power to detect this outcome as they lack sufficient patient numbers. As such, no medicine (pharmaceutical or complementary) has proven safety based on reliable epidemiological data involving sufficient numbers of women.

**Animal studies**

Animal studies of reproductive toxicity are required for all new drugs before they are licensed; however, they are not required for CMs. While they can provide some assurance of safety, animal tests have limited usefulness as results do not always extrapolate accurately to humans. For example, the drug thalidomide did not cause birth defects in animal models; however, it had a potent effect in humans (Webster & Freeman 2001). Far more common is the problem of false positives, whereby medicines that produce defects in animals are later found to be relatively safe in humans (e.g. corticosteroids) (Lee et al 2000). It is likely that the excessive doses used in testing increase the risk of producing a false positive as there is greater embryonic and maternal exposure to the medicine than would be expected in clinical practice. This should be kept in mind when interpreting the results of drug or herbal medicine testing in animal models.

**Post-marketing surveillance systems**

In many cases, more meaningful safety data only become available once a medicine is in widespread use and women knowingly or inadvertently take it during pregnancy. Those medicines with high effect rates will be detected more quickly than less potent teratogens. For example, the teratogenic effect of isotretinoin was detected about one year after it came onto the market.
whereas the anti-epileptic drug valproic acid was available in Europe in the 1960s, yet it took approximately 20 years of use by millions of women before its teratogenic potential was identified (Webster & Freeman 2001).

Post-marketing surveillance systems are set up to detect unfavourable outcomes and highlight adverse events rather than establishing safety, an inherently more difficult endpoint.

Adverse event case reports

Adverse event case reports are an account of an individual’s suspected response to a treatment. Case reports are notoriously unreliable, as they tend to lack sufficient detail to clearly establish causality and fully eliminate the influence of confounding factors. Individual case reports become more convincing when a series of similar reports are collected.

Several factors should be considered when interpreting a case report; firstly, was the exposure to the medicine at the appropriate critical stage in pregnancy (usually first trimester) and was the dose used clinically relevant and similar for all cases? Additionally, if a complementary medicine is implicated, has the medicine been tested for contaminants and adulteration to exclude extrinsic factors and did the treatment involve a single entity or combination therapy (the norm in complementary medicine)? Finally, the traditional body of evidence that accompanies herbal medicines may provide further insights when interpreting cases.

The following three cases are presented as examples of the literature. They involve the herbs dong quai, Korean ginseng and blue cohosh. The reports indicate a probable link between herbal use and adverse outcome; however, none of the products implicated was tested for herbal authenticity or the presence of contaminants or adulterants, an essential step towards drawing a definitive conclusion.

Examples of case reports:

A 32-year-old woman, 3 weeks postpartum, developed acute headache, weakness, light-headedness and vomiting with a blood pressure reading of 195/85 mmHg (Nambar et al 1999). She reported using dong quai for postpartum weakness and had not been taking any other medicines. Her 3-week-old son’s blood pressure was also raised at 115/69. Within 48 hours of stopping herbal treatment, blood pressure normalised for both the mother and the breastfed child.

In 1990, a case report published in JAMA described a 30-year-old mother who had taken Panax ginseng (650 mg twice a day) throughout pregnancy and during lactation of her 2-week-old baby (Koren et al 1990). The boy was noted to have signs of androgenisation, thick black pubic hair, hair over the entire forehead, swollen red nipples and enlarged testes. After 2 weeks, his pubic and forehead hair began to fall out and was scant by 7.5 weeks. Excessive androgen production was ruled out and the authors suspected the effects were produced by hormonal activity of the herbal product. Letters to the editor were subsequently exchanged suggesting the product contained Siberian ginseng and not Panax ginseng (Awang 1991). The story does not end here as Siberian ginseng has no significant androgenic activity in vivo which could account for the effects observed (Awang 1991, Waller et al 1992). It is now suspected that the herbal product was not substituted for Siberian ginseng but instead Periploca sepium (called Wu jia or silk vine), as American herb companies importing Siberian ginseng from China have been known to be supplied with two or three species of Periploca (Awang 1991).

A newborn infant presented with acute myocardial infarction associated with profound congestive heart failure and shock (Jones & Lawson 1998). The mother had been ingesting blue cohosh (Caulophyllum thalictroides) in the month prior to delivery to facilitate the birthing process. She had been instructed to take one tablet daily but elected to take three times the recommended dose in the 3 weeks prior to delivery. During this time she noticed an increase in uterine contractions and a decrease in fetal activity. The infant eventually recovered after being critically ill for several weeks. Attending doctors excluded other causes of myocardial infarction and indicated blue cohosh was responsible for the adverse event. On late follow-up at 2 years of age the child was doing well with good exercise tolerance and normal growth and development. However, cardiomegaly persisted, left ventricular function remained mildly reduced and he was still receiving digoxin therapy.

Clinical studies

While prospective clinical studies of herbal safety in pregnancy are problematic,
retrospective studies are easier to conduct. Establishing cause–effect relationships beyond reasonable doubt are rare due to the myriad of confounding factors present; however, they may identify common or palpable problems that could be investigated in appropriate models.

**Example: echinacea**

A Canadian study involving 412 pregnant women investigated the safety of echinacea in pregnancy (Gallo et al 2000). These women had contacted a teratogen information service (Motherisk Program) between 1996 and 1998 with concerns about the safety of ingesting echinacea during pregnancy. Half the group had already taken the herb, whereas the others decided against use, so were enrolled as a control group. Of the 206 women in the echinacea group, 112 (54%) used the herb in the first trimester and 17 (8%) used it throughout their pregnancies. No significant differences were seen between the groups for rates of major and minor malformations or any pregnancy outcome including delivery method, maternal weight gain, gestational age, infant birth weight or fetal distress.

**Long-term use**

Long-term use of a medicine by large populations of women without apparent increase in adverse events is considered to contribute towards evidence of safety. For example, the Australian Drug Evaluation Committee (ADEC) has classified the drug metoclopramide as relatively low risk because the ‘drug has already been taken by large numbers of pregnant women and women of child-bearing age without proven increase in fetal harm’ (Bryant et al 2003).

The term ‘long-term use’ in relation to herbal medicine may actually refer to hundreds or even thousands of years of use, not just decades, as is the case with pharmaceutical medicines. In fact, many herbal medicines, such as ginger and garlic, have been used as both foods and medicines since antiquity. This has allowed a large body of longitudinal and retrospective evidence to accumulate which gives herbalists an extra dimension to consider.

Like all forms of evidence, traditional evidence has its limitations and must be interpreted carefully. It is likely that traditional healers would have found it easier to identify poisonous herbs and herbs that induce acute or obvious adverse effects than those which induce insidious, rare or delayed-onset adverse outcomes. There may also be significant differences in the way a herbal medicine is grown, prepared and used today compared with older times, thereby allowing larger doses to be taken and different herbal constituents to be absorbed (Tannis 2003).

**WEIGHING UP THE EVIDENCE**

For both pharmaceutical and complementary medicines, the evidence base is incomplete and insufficient to state with certainty that any medicine is safe in pregnancy. To build a case for safety, evidence from multiple sources must be considered to fill in as many gaps in knowledge as possible.

In regards to complementary medicines, any evidence supporting or contraindicating use during pregnancy must be based on the totality, quality and relevance of the evidence. In general, the greater the consistency of evidence from different sources, the stronger the evidence is overall.

In Australia, the Australian Drug Evaluation Committee (ADEC) has classified drugs on their potential to cause harm during pregnancy. Eight categories are listed and each describes the evidence used to indicate safety or lack of safety (see Table 11.1). They rely on evidence gathered from animal models and post-marketing surveillance systems and also consider the proven, suspected or expected potential of a drug to cause adverse outcomes (e.g. cytotoxic drugs).

**Proposing a different system for complementary medicines**

A similar grading system is required for CMs, which builds a case for safety or harm based on considering multiple forms of evidence. Ideally the new system should take into account the availability of a traditional body of evidence and the relative lack of data available from animal studies. It should also take into account the relative safety of OTC CMs in comparison to scheduled pharmaceutical drugs and whether the association between exposure and proposed adverse outcome is biologically plausible.

Table 11.2 (p. 174) is a safety matrix that synthesises different forms of evidence, including taking note of what is known and what
TABLE 11.1 ADEC PREGNANCY CATEGORIES (AUSTRALIA)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CATEGORY</th>
<th>Drugs which have been taken by a large number of pregnant women and women of childbearing age without any proven increase in the frequency of malformations or other direct or indirect harmful effects on the fetus having been observed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CATEGORY B1</td>
<td>Drugs which have been taken by only a limited number of pregnant women and women of childbearing age, without an increase in the frequency of malformation or other direct or indirect harmful effects on the human fetus having been observed. Studies in animals have not shown evidence of an increased occurrence of fetal damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATEGORY B2</td>
<td>Drugs which have been taken by only a limited number of pregnant women and women of childbearing age, without an increase in the frequency of malformation or other direct or indirect harmful effects on the human fetus having been observed. Studies in animals are inadequate or may be lacking, but available data show no evidence of an increased occurrence of fetal damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATEGORY B3</td>
<td>Drugs which have been taken by only a limited number of pregnant women and women of childbearing age, without an increase in the frequency of malformation or other direct or indirect harmful effects on the human fetus having been observed. Studies in animals have shown evidence of an increased occurrence of fetal damage, the significance of which is considered uncertain in humans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATEGORY C</td>
<td>Drugs which, owing to their pharmacological effects, have caused or may be suspected of causing harmful effects on the human fetus or neonate without causing malformations. These effects may be reversible. Accompanying texts should be consulted for further details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATEGORY D</td>
<td>Drugs which have caused, are suspected to have caused or may be expected to cause, an increased incidence of human fetal malformations or irreversible damage. These drugs may also have adverse pharmacological effects. Accompanying texts should be consulted for further details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CATEGORY X</td>
<td>Drugs which have such a high risk of causing permanent damage to the fetus that they should not be used in pregnancy or when there is a possibility of pregnancy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For drugs in the B1, B2 and B3 categories, human data are lacking or inadequate and subcategorisation is therefore based on available animal data. The allocation of a B category does NOT imply greater safety than the C category. Drugs in category D are NOT absolutely contraindicated in pregnancy. Moreover, in some cases the D category has been assigned on the basis of suspicion.


remains unknown. Traditional and scientific evidence from various sources are compared and theoretical reasoning is considered. The matrix has been weighted so scientific evidence is given greater credence than traditional evidence; however, it must be acknowledged that, in many cases, scientific evidence to support safety will be unavailable.

USING THE SAFETY MATRIX

Clinicians are recommended to use information in the monographs of this text as a starting point for gathering information about evidence of safety in pregnancy. Supplementary information will be required from frequently updated databases and traditional monograph pharmacopoeas. Five common herbs are reviewed here as examples of how the matrix may be used: echinacea, ginger, raspberry leaf, black cohosh and chasteberry.

Echinacea spp. (Echinacea)
Classification: Likely safe
• Traditional evidence: available? Y
  – Traditional evidence: cautions or contraindicates? NA
  – Traditional evidence: if cautions: biologically plausible? NA
• Scientific evidence: available? Y
  – Scientific evidence: human or animal studies find NO known pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? Y
  – Scientific evidence: toxicological or pharmacological profile studies find NO known
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traditional Evidence Scientific Evidence</th>
<th>Well-Documented Traditional Evidence Unavailable</th>
<th>Traditional Evidence Does Not Contraindicate Against Use</th>
<th>Traditional Evidence Cautions or Contraindicates Use Due to Postulated Non-Specific Mechanisms That Are Not Biologically Plausible</th>
<th>Traditional Evidence Contraindicates Use Based on Descriptions of Specific Adverse Effects or Is Used as an Abortifacient</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There are no animal or human studies available to support safety</td>
<td>Consider as unsafe because safety remains unknown</td>
<td>Likely to be safe but safety cannot be confirmed Scientific evidence unavailable to support or refute traditional safety claim</td>
<td>Likely to be safe but best used under professional guidance Scientific evidence unavailable to support or refute traditional contraindication</td>
<td>Unsafe Scientific evidence unavailable to support or refute traditional contraindication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human and animal studies demonstrate there are no known pharmacological activities of the substance or its components relevant to therapeutic use in humans known to be associated with fetal damage, abortifacient activity or any other adverse reproductive effects</td>
<td>Safe</td>
<td>Safe Scientific evidence supports traditional safety claim</td>
<td>Likely to be safe but best used under professional guidance Scientific evidence does not support traditional contraindication</td>
<td>Likely to be safe but best used under professional guidance Scientific evidence does not support traditional contraindication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The toxicological or pharmacological profile of the substance indicates that there are no known pharmacological actions of the substance or its components relevant to therapeutic use in humans which could cause fetal damage, abortifacient activity or any other adverse reproductive effects</td>
<td>Safe</td>
<td>Safe Scientific evidence supports traditional safety claim</td>
<td>Likely to be safe but best used under professional guidance Scientific evidence does not support traditional contraindication</td>
<td>Likely to be safe but best used under professional guidance Scientific evidence does not support traditional contraindication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human or animal studies have shown evidence of pharmacological activity for the substance or its components relevant to therapeutic use in humans which could cause fetal damage, abortifacient effects or any other adverse reproductive effects</td>
<td>Unsafe</td>
<td>Unsafe Scientific evidence refutes traditional safety claim</td>
<td>Unsafe Scientific evidence supports traditional contraindication</td>
<td>Unsafe Scientific evidence supports traditional contraindication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? NA

– Scientific evidence: human and/or animal studies find evidence of pharmacological effects adverse to pregnancy, e.g. abortifacient? Y

One animal study highlighted concerns about use during the first trimester demonstrating the risk of spontaneous abortions, with pregnant mice fed *Echinacea purpurea* daily, increased as 50% of fetuses were lost by mid-pregnancy (Chow et al 2006). Human studies, however, indicate it is generally considered safe in pregnancy when used in recommended doses (Mills & Bone 2005). A recent study of a prospective cohort study found that oral consumption during the first trimester did not increase the risk of malformations and was recommended as safe for use during pregnancy (Perri et al 2006). Additional evidence from a prospective cohort study suggests it is safe during pregnancy with no increase in the risk for major malformations; however, large-scale controlled trials are unavailable (Gallo et al 2000). This particular study involved 206 women who used echinacea during their pregnancy (54% in the first trimester and 8% in all trimesters). Fifty-eight per cent of participants used capsules or tablets (doses ranging from 250 to 1000 mg/day) and 38% used tinctures (dose varied from 5 to 10 to a maximum of 30 drops per day). Most used the echinacea for only a short period of time compared with a control group matched by disease (upper respiratory tract ailments), maternal age, alcohol and cigarette use. There was no statistical differences between the groups for any of the end points analysed — major and minor malformations, miscarriages and neonatal complications.

**Zingiber officinalis** *(Ginger)*

Classification: Likely to be safe, but safety cannot be confirmed for high-dose supplements (concentrated extracts), safe for usual dietary intake

• Traditional evidence: available? Y
  
  – Traditional evidence: cautions or contraindicates? Y
  
  – Traditional evidence: if cautions: biologically plausible? N

• Scientific evidence: available? Y

– Scientific evidence: human or animal studies find NO known pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? Y

– Scientific evidence: toxicological or pharmacological profile studies find NO known pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? NA

– Scientific evidence: human and/or animal studies find evidence of pharmacological effects adverse to pregnancy e.g. abortifacient? Y

Traditionally used as an anti-emetic, ginger has encouraging research to support its use during pregnancy for nausea and vomiting (Borrelli et al 2005) and no adverse effects have been reported in several studies examining ginger in treatment of nausea and vomiting in pregnancy. Ginger’s anti-nausea and anti-emetic mechanism of action has not been fully elucidated, although several hypotheses have been proposed. It has been reported that symptoms of nausea and vomiting during pregnancy improve in a manner directly correlated to improvements in pregnancy–induced gastric dysrhythmias. Therefore, ginger’s actions in pregnancy may be due to a direct effect of the medicine on the gastrointestinal tract (Chaiyakunapruk et al 2006, Matthews et al 2010).

A recent systematic review assessed 10 RCTs that investigated ginger in pregnancy. Five trials reported ginger to be more effective than placebo, four trials found ginger to be equally effective in the management of nausea and vomiting compared to vitamin B6 and dimenhydrinate. Compared with dimenhydrinate, ginger caused fewer side effects and none of the studies raised any concerns about safety in pregnant women (Dante et al 2013). The Cochrane Collaboration reached the conclusion that the efficacy of ginger was equal to that of either vitamin B6 or dimenhydrinate (Matthews et al 2010).

Another systematic review of 4 double-blind RCTs (n = 449) and one prospective observational cohort study (n = 187) evaluated the effects of ginger on pregnancy outcomes. The preparation used in the trials was a ginger root powder or extract, taken 3–4 times daily (total dose ranging from 1.0–1.5 g) from 8 to 20 weeks’ gestation. No dose was provided in the prospective study. No difference in the occurrence of spontaneous abortions, stillbirth, term
delivery and caesarean deliveries, neonatal death, gestational age and congenital abnormalities were found between those women who took ginger compared to those taking vitamin B₆ or placebo, or the general population (Borrelli et al. 2005).

Unfortunately, there is a lack of consensus regarding its safety during pregnancy. Sou-damini et al. (1995) suggest ginger contains possible mutagenic properties; however, this effect appears to be counteracted by zingerone, another constituent present in the whole rhizome (Nakamura & Yamamoto 1982). Traditionally, ginger has been contraindicated in labour due to the possibility of increased post-partum haemorrhage and in large doses it is traditionally thought to act as emmenagogue (Grieve 1971). German Commission E suggest that ginger is contraindicated in pregnancy, while more recent research suggests that doses up to 2 g/day of dried ginger root have been used safely. When considered in a comparison of recent research, the proposed notion of haemorrhage is unlikely. Teratogenicity studies in rats show that even at very large doses (ginger tea up to 50 g/L) it had no impact on maternal toxicity or fetal malformations; however, embryo losses were double compared to the controls. No evidence of maternal toxicity was found for a patented extract of ginger (EV.EXT 33) given in doses of up to 1000 mg/kg/body weight daily to pregnant rats during the period of organogenesis (Weidner & Sigwart 2001).

**Rubus idaeus (raspberry leaf)**

Classification: Likely to be safe, but safety cannot be confirmed (first trimester), likely to be safe (second and third trimester)

- Traditional evidence: available? Y
  - Traditional evidence: cautions or contraindicates? N
  - Traditional evidence: if cautions: biologically plausible? NA

- Scientific evidence: available? Y
  - Scientific evidence: human or animal studies find evidence of pharmacological effects adverse to pregnancy, e.g. abortifacient? Y

Raspberry leaves appear to have a dual effect on the uterus, acting as both a stimulant and a relaxant to the uterine musculature (Bamford et al. 1970). The use of this herb in concentrated form is traditionally recommended only in the second and third trimesters due to its possible effects on the uterus. Traditional evidence and the select pharmacological studies highlight that this herbal medicine has an effect on uterine contractions (Bamford et al. 1970). Unfortunately, there is limited research on both the efficacy and the safety of raspberry leaf. In one retrospective trial, raspberry leaf was associated with some shortening of labour and a decreased need for mechanical assistance (forceps or vacuum), although the difference was not statistically significant (Parsons et al. 1999). In another study, raspberry did not shorten the first stage of labour. The only clinically significant findings were shortening of the second stage of labour (mean difference = 9.59 minutes) and lower rate of forceps deliveries between the treatment group and the control group (19.3% vs 30.4%) (Simpson et al. 2001). Two clinical studies evaluating the safety of raspberry leaf in pregnancy have reported no evidence of toxicity in either mother or child (Parsons et al. 1999, Simpson et al. 2001) although evidence from older animal studies is less clear (Burn & Withell 1941, Whitehouse 1941). In one systematic review, no adverse effects were described in the mothers (increase in blood pressure, increase in blood loss at birth, preterm or post-term labour), and no significant relationships were found between raspberry consumption and neonatal outcomes (Apgar score, birth weight) (Dante et al. 2013).

Although raspberry leaf has been in traditional use for a very long time, the evidence regarding safety, efficacy and active constituents is weak. The chemical constituents responsible for the effect on uterus or other smooth muscle are not clearly determined. Some of the constituents, such as flavonoids, have repeatedly been shown to have a relaxing effect on smooth muscle (Mullen et al. 2002); however, more research is required.
**Cimicifuga racemosa** (Black cohosh)

Classification: Unsafe (first and second trimester). Likely to be safe but cannot be confirmed (labour)
- Traditional evidence: available? Y
  - Traditional evidence: cautions or contra-indicates? Y
  - Traditional evidence: if cautions: biologically plausible? Y
- Scientific evidence: available? Y
  - Scientific evidence: human or animal studies find NO known pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? N
  - Scientific evidence: toxicological or pharmacological profile studies find NO known pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? N
  - Scientific evidence: human and/or animal studies find evidence of pharmacological effects adverse to pregnancy, e.g. abortifacient? Y

Black cohosh was traditionally used by the Native Americans for a variety of ailments including arthritis, menopausal symptoms and respiratory symptoms, and was commonly used to induce labour. It was widely used by the Eclectics in traditional Western Herbal Medicine as a partum preparatory if taken in the last few weeks of pregnancy (Felter & Lloyd 1905, 1983). Black cohosh has a variety of actions such as selective oestrogen-receptor modulator activity, anti-inflammatory and dopaminergic effects. Traditionally it is avoided during early pregnancy, but could be used to assist birth under professional supervision.

**Vitex agnus castus** (Chaste tree)

Classification: Likely to be safe, but cannot be confirmed
- Traditional evidence: available? Y
  - Traditional evidence: cautions or contra-indicates? N
  - Traditional evidence: if cautions — biologically plausible? NA
- Scientific evidence: available? Y
  - Scientific evidence: human or animal studies find NO known pharmacological effects of concern in pregnancy? Y
  - Scientific evidence: toxicological or pharmacological profile studies find NO known pharmacological effects adverse to pregnancy, e.g. abortifacient? N

Chaste tree has been traditionally used for a variety of gynaecological conditions such as aiding the expulsion of the placenta after birth and promoting menstruation. In the first trimester it is sometimes used to promote conception and/or support the growth and development of the fetus. North American herbalists traditionally recommended vitex to improve fertility and after pregnancy as a galactagogue (Felter & Lloyd 1905, 1983). As it is most commonly used by women of child-bearing age, it is likely that some women may consume it unknowingly when in the early stages of pregnancy (Dougoua et al 2008). Vitex is believed to act on dopamine receptors to decrease prolactin levels, (Mills & Bone 2005). According to in vitro studies, it may bind to alpha and beta oestrogen-receptors.

**PART THREE — ADVISING PATIENTS IN CLINICAL PRACTICE**

At some stage of practice most clinicians have to consider the question ‘Is this treatment safe in pregnancy?’ The answer to such a question is never straightforward, as establishing safety in pregnancy with any degree of certainty is difficult.

Over the years medical practitioners and pharmacists have generally held the view that all medicines should be avoided during pregnancy, where possible. This has referred to the use of pharmaceutical medicines and is wise counsel. With the increasing popularity and accessibility of CMs, many have extended this caution to include herbal medicines under the assumption that the same safety issues apply. Indeed, the safety issues are similar and prudence is still required.

Naturopaths and herbal medicine practitioners hold a more targeted view and recommend a small number of herbal and nutritional medicines during different stages of pregnancy, while being mindful of many others which
are considered contraindicated for various reasons.

It is easy for clinicians to adopt the conservative view that all herbal medicines are to be avoided throughout pregnancy; however, this is not useful in practice, especially as women will continue to take them in the belief that they are safe. In fact, it could be argued that best practice means considering all treatment options for safety and efficacy in pregnancy, including herbs and natural supplements.

When medicinal treatments present unacceptable risks or are ineffective, CM as a treatment domain offers a broad range of non-medicinal treatment options which can be considered by clinicians. For example, lifestyle prescriptions, dietary manipulation, massage, acupuncture and aromatherapy provided by appropriately trained practitioners can address a range of symptoms during this sensitive time.

FACTORS TO CONSIDER IN PRACTICE

Individual prescribing

The decision to prescribe or withdraw a CM must be made on an individual case-by-case basis. The safe use of any medicine in pregnancy must take into account the safety of the treatment being considered, the seriousness of the patient’s presenting problem, maternal age and gestational age of the fetus and timing of exposure. This includes a consideration of the dose to be used, dosing interval and timing in respect to other medicines and food. Additionally, the patient’s presenting health and nutritional status, comorbidities, kidney and liver function and personal attitude to treatment are important factors.

If practitioner and patient agree that a medicine is to be used, steps should be taken to reduce harm, such as recommending the lowest effective dose for the shortest period possible. While special cautions exist for the first trimester, care must be taken at all stages of pregnancy as fetal growth and development continues.

Timing of the intervention

In practice, choosing the correct dose and administration form is essential and in pregnancy there is the additional consideration of correct timing, which is important for achieving a desired clinical result with a minimum of risk. For example, folate supplementation has been shown to prevent neural tube defects when administered in the preconception period and continued during the first trimester (Berry et al 1999, De-Reigil et al 2010). Similarly, antioxidant supplements appear to be ineffective in reducing preeclampsia when started later in pregnancy (Rumbold et al 2008); however, positive results in preeclampsia were reported in a study which commenced treatment in the first trimester with a broad spectrum antioxidant supplement (including vitamin A 1000 IU, vitamin C 200 mg, vitamin E 400 IU, folic acid 400 mcg, selenium 100 mcg, zinc 15 mg, copper 2 mg, N-acetyl cysteine 200 mg, iron 30 mg) (Rumiris et al 2006).

Informed consent

Evidence-based, patient-centred care means all clinicians are required to present risk/benefit information to their patient, who can then make an informed choice. This means an honest discussion between patient and practitioner about what is known and what remains unknown about the safety and efficacy of a treatment. Patients will no doubt vary in their interest and ability to comprehend and recall the necessary information, so written information and assurance that the woman understands the issues during the time of consultation is useful.
CHAPTER 11 HERBS AND NATURAL SUPPLEMENTS IN PREGNANCY

PRACTICE POINTS: GENERAL RULES FOR USING COMPLEMENTARY MEDICINES IN PREGNANCY

• Use CM within the Quality Use of Medicines (QUM) Framework.
• Consider the patient’s presenting health status and comorbidities.
• Consider non-medicinal treatment options where appropriate, especially during the first trimester.
• Is such a treatment available and likely to be successful?

Risk–benefit analysis:
• If a CM is under consideration, what are the potential risks and benefits to the mother and fetus?
• What are the risks and benefits (for each) of not prescribing?

Timing of intervention:
• Avoid all medicinal agents where possible, especially in the first trimester.
• Carefully consider the timing of the intervention in regards to gestational age of the fetus: a fetus’ susceptibility to toxic effects changes throughout gestation.
• Consider appropriate dose, dose frequency and duration of treatment.

Pharmacotherapy compared with complementary medicine:
• If the patient’s condition is sufficiently severe that pharmacotherapy is being considered, clinicians should consider whether an appropriate CM treatment exists with a lower risk of harm.
• If clinician and patient decide a CM is to be used, the lowest possible dose should be used for the shortest period of time.
• CM is best prescribed by a qualified and appropriately trained health professional.

Counselling:
• Counsel pregnant women to avoid exposure to unnecessary medicines and chemicals.

Education and communication:
• If use of a CM is being considered, an open discussion about the potential benefits and potential risks must ensue, so patients can make an informed decision. This includes providing information about what is known about the safety of the treatment and what remains unknown.
• Communication is essential among all health professionals involved in obstetric patient management and the patient.
• Encourage patients to disclose CM use to all their obstetric team of health professionals.
• Special caution should be considered by women due to have elective caesarean section or other surgery. Presurgery cautions and recommendations should be considered.

Additional rules relating to the specific use of herbal medicines in pregnancy
• Avoid all known toxic and poisonous plants at all times, e.g. aconite, pennyroyal, tansy.
• Avoid all thujone-containing herbal medicines, e.g. *Achillea millefolium* (yarrow), *Thuja occidentalis* (thuja) or *Artemisia absinthium* (wormwood).
• Avoid internal use of pure volatile oils from herbal medicines throughout pregnancy. Herbal teas and small concentrations of oils used as flavouring are the exception, e.g. peppermint oil or food quantities of essential oil containing herbal medicines.
• Avoid emmenagogue herbal medicines throughout pregnancy.
• Herbs used to assist delivery should only be used under close professional supervision in the final 6 weeks of pregnancy.
### APPENDIX 11.1: NUTRIENTS DURING PREGNANCY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION</th>
<th>DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin A</strong></td>
<td>Required for gene expression and cellular differentiation in organogenesis and embryonic development of the spinal cord and vertebrae, limbs, eyes and ears, and heart (Morriss-Kay &amp; Sokolova 1996). Poor maternal status will result in risk of infant deficiency (Ortega et al 1997) associated with poor immune function and increased risk of infection morbidity and mortality in infants and children (Grubesic 2004, Huiming et al 2005) Maternal deficiency increases the risk of mortality (West et al 1999), premature rupture of membranes (Westney et al 1994), preterm delivery (Radhika et al 2002), reduced haemoglobin levels and anaemia (Bondevik et al 2000, Suharno et al 1993), night blindness (Livingstone et al 2003) and immune suppression (Cox et al 2006). A Cochrane review in 2011 (van den Broek et al 2010) pooled results of two large trials in Nepal and Ghana (95,000 women). These results indicated that there was no role for antenatal vitamin A supplementation to reduce maternal or perinatal mortality. However, the populations studied were probably different with regard to baseline vitamin A status and there were problems with follow-up. There is good evidence for antenatal vitamin A supplementation to reduce maternal anaemia for women who live in areas where vitamin A deficiency is common or who are HIV positive. There is also possibly some benefit to reduce maternal infection; however, these data sources are not high quality so further studies are required.</td>
<td>Excessive supplementation shown to be associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes particularly in the first trimester No association with moderate intake (&lt;10,000 IU) and fetal malformations (Botto et al 1996, Johansen et al 2008, Martinez-Frias &amp; Salvador 1990, Mastroiacovo et al 1999, Mills et al 1997, Shaw et al 1997, Werler et al 1990) Supplement labels must carry the warning – when taken in excess of 3000 mcg retinol equivalents (10,000 IU), vitamin A may cause birth defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin B₆</strong> (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>Beneficial in the treatment of nausea of pregnancy (Jamigorn &amp; Phupong 2007, Jewell &amp; Young 2003, Sripramote &amp; Lekhyananda 2003). Poor vitamin B₆ status may decrease the possibility of conception (Ronenberg et al 2007) and increase the risk of early pregnancy loss (Goddijn-Wessel et al 1996, Ronnenberg et al 2007, Wouters et al 1993). Unfortunately vitamin B₆ is insufficiently studied. A Cochrane review established that there were few trials reporting clinical outcomes and mostly had unclear trial methodology and inadequate follow-up. There was not enough evidence to detect clinical benefits of vitamin B₆ supplementation in pregnancy and/or labour, other than one trial suggesting protection against dental decay. It is recommended that future trials assessing this and other outcomes such as orofacial clefts, cardiovascular malformations, neurological development, preterm birth, preeclampsia and adverse events are required (Thaver et al 2006).</td>
<td>RDI during pregnancy is increased slightly to 1.9 mg, and upper recommended level is 50 mg with no evidence of teratogenicity. High dose supplementation (mean 132 mg/day) for 9 weeks during the first trimester appears to be safe with no associated increase in risk for major malformations (Shrim et al 2006). Doses used in studies for nausea are 30–75 mg/day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Vitamin B<sub>9</sub> (folic acid)**

Deficiency can lead to homocysteine accumulation, possibly associated with abnormalities of the placental vasculature and increased risk of miscarriage and preeclampsia (Dodds et al. 2008, Napolitano et al. 2008, Makedos et al. 2007) and are associated with a two-fold increased risk of adult schizophrenia (Brown et al. 2007). Intake of folic acid preconceptually and in the first 4–6 weeks of pregnancy reduces the risk of neural tube defects (NTD) by more than 50% (Berry et al. 1999, Czeizel & Dudas 1992), and may also decrease risk of other congenital malformations including urinary tract and cardiovascular defects, limb deficiencies and hypertrophic pyloric stenosis (Czeizel 1998). The protective effects of higher folic acid intake was also demonstrated in a study from Chile, whereby fortification of flour with folic acid has led to a 55% reduction in NTD prevalence between 1999 and 2009. Individuals with polymorphisms in folate metabolism (methylene-tetrahydrofolate reductase [MTHFR] gene) may be at greater risk of deficiency and subsequent adverse effects (Biselli et al. 2008, Boyles et al. 2008, Candito et al. 2008, Coppede et al. 2007, Steer et al. 2008). In this instance, 5-methyl-tetrahydrofolate preparations are more advisable. A recent Cochrane review found a benefit for folic acid in improving mean birth weight (Lassi & Salam 2013). Supplementation with folic acid has been linked with increased risk of multiple pregnancies (Czeizel 1998, Czeizel & Varga 2004) although disputed by others (Li et al. 2003). RDI in pregnancy is 600 mcg/day (200 mcg above non pregnancy state). Upper limit recommended in pregnancy is 1000 mcg due to the possibility of masking a vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency.

**Vitamin B<sub>12</sub> (cyanocobalamin)**

Inadequate cobalamin status in pregnancy has been associated with several adverse outcomes such as preterm birth (Ronnenberg et al. 2002), intrauterine growth-retardation (Muthayya et al. 2006), increased risk for NTDs (Groenen et al. 2004, Gaber et al. 2007, Kirke et al. 1993, Steen et al. 1998, Suarez et al. 2003, Wright 1995) and increased risk of miscarriage (Hubner et al. 2008). It is also required for homocysteine metabolism, whereby increased levels have been associated with numerous conditions including preeclampsia (Napolitano et al. 2008) and recurrent pregnancy loss (Hubner et al. 2008). Inadequate maternal status may result in an infant with poor stores, and this may be further exacerbated by low stores in breast milk (Allen 1994). The RDI is slightly increased to 2.6 mcg/day in pregnancy. There is no upper level of intake as there is no evidence of adverse effects. Deficiency (indicated by macrocytic changes) may be masked by high dose folic acid supplementation.

**Vitamin C**

Vitamin C deficiency has been suggested to play a role in several adverse pregnancy outcomes such as preeclampsia, intrauterine growth restriction and pre-labour rupture of fetal membranes (PROM). A Cochrane review reported no difference between women supplemented with vitamin C (alone or combined with other supplements) compared with placebo for the risk of stillbirth, miscarriage, birth weight, placental abruption or intrauterine growth restriction (Rumbold & Crowther 2005, Rumbold et al. 2005). Required for healthy immune function and significantly reduces the risk of urinary tract infections during pregnancy (Ochoa-Brust et al. 2007). The recommended intake of vitamin C is slightly increased in pregnancy to 60 mg/day. Early reports of high-dose maternal supplementation causing ‘conditioned or rebound scurvy’ in infants (Cochrane 1965, Rhead & Schrauzer 1971) have not been replicated in subsequent studies (Diplock et al. 1998).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION</th>
<th>DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Vitamin D | Vitamin D supplementation in a single or continued dose during pregnancy increases serum vitamin D concentrations. A recent Cochrane review analysing results from three trials involving 463 women suggest that women who receive vitamin D supplements during pregnancy were less likely to have a low birth weight baby below 2500 grams compared to women receiving no treatment or a placebo (De-Regil et al 2012). High prevalence of vitamin D deficiency in pregnancy and lactation has been reported (Ainy et al 2006, Hollis & Wagner 2004, Judkins & Eagleton 2006, Sachan et al 2005, van der Meer et al 2006). Maternal status also affects the infant’s vitamin D status (Hollis & Wagner 2004) and intrauterine growth of long bones (Morley et al 2006), poor infant skeletal growth and mineralisation (Zeghoud et al 1997). In severe maternal deficiency, there is an increased risk of rickets in the infant (Specker 1994). Glucose intolerance (Maghbooli et al 2008), bone health and risk of osteoporotic fracture risk later in life may also be influenced (Javaid et al 2006). It is important for normal brain development (Cui et al 2007, Eyles et al 2003) with fetal deficiency leading to alterations in brain structure and function (Almeras et al 2007, Feron et al 2005). Supplementation may protect against multiple sclerosis (Munger et al 2004, 2006) and reduce the risk of later preeclampsia in the infant (Hypponen et al 2007).
Conversely, maternal concentrations of > 75 nmol/L of 25 (OH)-vitamin D in pregnancy may increase the risk of eczema in infants and asthma in children, but did not negatively influence the child's intelligence, psychological health or cardiovascular system (Gale et al 2008). | The amount of vitamin D required during pregnancy and lactation to avoid deficiency may be higher than the recommended amount (RDI 5.0 mcg) (Hollis 2005, 2007, Vieth et al 2001). The recommended upper limit is 80 mcg (Australian Government 2006). Vieth et al (2001), however, found no adverse effects even at doses of 100 mcg (4000 IU) per day. Toxicity is rare, but may occur with excessive supplementation (Koutkia et al 2001). Breast milk is a poor source of vitamin D, with infants requiring an exogenous source within a few months (Challa et al 2005, Daaboul et al 1997, Hatun et al 2005, Sills et al 1994). |
| Vitamin E | Antioxidant activity is valuable in protecting the embryo (in vitro) and fetus from damage due to oxidative stress (Cederberg et al 2001, Jishage et al 2001, Wang et al 2002). Although oxidative stress plays an important role in the pathogenesis of preeclampsia (Gupta et al 2005), there is little evidence for the role of vitamin E in its prevention (Polyzos et al 2007). Some evidence suggests it was beneficial in women with poor antioxidant status (Rumiris et al 2006).
Low maternal levels contribute to increased risk of wheezing and asthma in childhood (Devereux et al 2006) and supplementation was useful in reducing pregnancy-related leg cramps (Shahraki 2006) and increasing birth weight for gestation (Scholl et al 2006, Valsecchi et al 1999). | The recommended intake for vitamin E (7 mg) is not increased for pregnancy. High dose supplementation of vitamin E (400–1200 IU) appears to be safe and does not increase risk for major malformations, preterm deliveries, miscarriages or stillbirths (Boskovic et al 2005). The recommended upper limit in pregnancy is 300 mg/day (Australian Government 2006). |
Vitamin K

**THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION:** Poor maternal vitamin K levels can result in relative deficiency in newborn infants (Shearer 1992). Low intake combined with the reduced gastrointestinal bacterial synthesis puts infants at risk of Vitamin K deficiency bleeding (VKDB) due to the lack of activity of vitamin K-dependent clotting factors (II, VII, IX and X) (von Kries et al 1993). This is compounded in breastfed infants as breast milk contains lower levels compared to formula, although this may be increased with maternal supplementation during lactation (Greer et al 1997).

**DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES:** The recommended intake of vitamin K during pregnancy and lactation is the same as for a non-pregnant woman (60 mcg/day). To prevent infant health risks, prophylactic treatment of one intramuscular injection of 1 mg (0.1 mL) at birth, or 3 × 2 mg (0.2 mL) oral doses at birth, 3–5 days of age and at 4 weeks are recommended (Australian Government 2006).

Calcium

**THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION:** The newborn infant skeleton holds approximately 20–30 g calcium (Prentice 2003), 80% of which is acquired during the third trimester when the fetal skeleton is rapidly mineralising (Trotter & Hixon 1974). This increased demand for calcium during pregnancy is met by alterations to maternal calcium metabolism, particularly a two-fold increase in calcium absorption mediated by increases in 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D and other mechanisms (Kovacs & Kronenberg 1997, Prentice 2003).

A possible inverse relationship between calcium intake during pregnancy and risk of hypertension and preeclampsia has been suggested from epidemiological and clinical studies (Repke & Villar 1991, Villar & Belizan 2000, Villar et al 1983, 1987, 2003). Supplementation (1.0–2.0 g/day) is recommended to reduce the risk of preeclampsia, gestational hypertension (Hofmeyr et al 2006, 2007), and may also reduce the blood pressure of the offspring (Belizan et al 1997, Hatton et al 2003).

Calcium supplementation during pregnancy has been shown to reduce maternal blood lead concentrations by an average of 11% by inhibiting the mobilisation of lead from bone and inhibiting intestinal absorption (Téllez-Rojo et al 2006). Supplementation (1200 mg) during lactation also reduces the risk of infant lead exposure by decreasing the concentration in breast milk by 5–10% (Ettinger et al 2006).

A recent Cochrane review identified that calcium supplementation is associated with a significant protective benefit in the prevention of preeclampsia (Buppasiri et al 2011). Another Cochrane review determined that calcium supplementation halved the risk of preeclampsia, reduced the risk of preterm birth and reduced the occurrence of the composite outcome ‘death or serious morbidity’ (Hofmeyr et al 2010).

Although pregnancy is a time of high calcium requirement, there is no increase in the recommended daily intake for pregnancy (1000 mg). If supplementation is required, it appears to be safe to use (Hofmeyr et al 2006).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION</th>
<th>DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>Deficiency is believed to have an effect on glucose intolerance (Jovanovic-Peterson &amp; Peterson 1996, Jovanovic &amp; Peterson 1999). Chromium may protect against maternal insulin resistance and gestational diabetes (Morris &amp; Samaniego 2000); however, studies are contradictory (Aharoni et al 1992, Gunton et al 2001, Woods et al 2008).</td>
<td>Recommended daily intake during pregnancy is slightly increased to 30 mcg/day. Supplementation in gestational diabetes is likely to be safe (Jovanovic &amp; Peterson 1999).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>Iodine deficiency occurs in both developing and developed countries (Becker et al 2006, Donnay et al 2013). Deficiency during pregnancy (defined as urinary iodine concentrations &lt;150 mcg/L) has been found, even in areas considered to have generally adequate intake. In a study conducted in Rome where a salt iodination program has been introduced, only 4% of non-pregnant women were found to be iodine deficient (&lt;100–199 mcg/L) compared to 92% of pregnant women, suggesting it may be necessary to monitor pregnant women even in regions where iodine deficiency is not common (Marchioni et al 2008). It enables the manufacture of maternal thyroid hormones, is protective against cretinism (Delange 2000) and development of fetal brain, protects against neurological damage (Peres-Lopez 2007), and is also supplied to the breastfed infant via breastmilk (Berbel et al 2007). Maternal hypothyroidism during early pregnancy is associated with other adverse outcomes including premature birth, preeclampsia, breech delivery and increased fetal mortality (Casey et al 2005, Haddow et al 1999, Pop 2004). It protects the mother from thyroid dysfunction which in turn protects the neonate's thyroid function and supports neurocognitive development in children (Ersino et al 2013). High-risk women (personal or family history of thyroid disorders or a personal history of other autoimmune diseases) have more than a six-fold increased risk of hypothyroidism during early pregnancy (Vaidya et al 2007)</td>
<td>Mild iodine deficiency (median UIE &lt; 100 mcg/L) has been found in several areas in Australia including NSW and Victoria (Li et al 2006). To prevent iodine deficiency disorders, WHO, United Nations Children's Fund and International Council for the Control of Iodine Deficiency Disorders established that for a given population median urinary iodine concentrations (UIC) must be 150–249 mcg/L in clinically healthy pregnant women (Marchioni et al 2008). Iodine requirement increases during pregnancy and recommended intakes are 250–300 mcg/day (Delange 2007). To monitor iodine status, WHO suggest that a median urinary iodine concentration 250–500 mcg/day indicates adequate iodine intake in pregnancy (Zimmermann 2007).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUTRIENT</td>
<td>THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION</td>
<td>DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>Iron requirements increase significantly in pregnancy to support expansion of maternal red blood cell mass and fetal growth (Bothwell 2000). Accurate assessment of iron status during pregnancy is more challenging due to the physiological changes occurring at this time (Milman et al 1991). Haemodilution affects iron parameters, such as haemoglobin concentration, haematocrit, serum iron, ferritin and total-iron binding capacity. Serum ferritin is regarded as the most reliable indicator of iron stores (Byg et al 2000), while haemoglobin levels are used as an inexpensive marker to diagnose anaemia (Reveiz et al 2007). The evaluation of iron status and the future risk of anaemia developing during pregnancy may be more accurate when done early in pregnancy before the maternal plasma volume expands (Scholl 2005). Demands are partly met by a progressive increase in iron absorption as the pregnancy advances (Bothwell 2000); however, depending on initial iron reserves this may not be sufficient to prevent deficiency (Casanueva et al 2003). The risk of iron deficiency increases with parity (Loomer et al 1997). Maternal iron stores at conception appear to be a strong predictor of the risk of anaemia in later pregnancy (Bothwell 2000, Casanueva et al 2003). WHO estimates indicate that iron deficiency anaemia affects 22% of women during pregnancy in industrialised countries and 52% in non-industrialised countries (WHO 1992). Supplementation raised haemoglobin levels by 7.5 g/dL and reduced the risk of iron deficiency and iron-deficiency anaemia at term (Casanueva et al 2006, Pena-Rosas &amp; Viteri 2006). Numerous studies have showed an association between adverse outcomes and iron deficiency anaemia, including increased risk of maternal mortality, infection, low birth weight and premature delivery. Fetal and infant iron deficiency may adversely impact on brain development, function and neurocognition (Grantham-McGregor &amp; Ani 2001). Poor maternal iron status may contribute to reduced fetal stores (de Pee et al 2002, Emamghorashi &amp; Heidari 2004, Preziosi et al 1997). However, in a recent cross-sectional study, pregnant women with iron deficiency or mild anaemia were not found to produce offspring with significantly altered iron levels (Paiva Ade et al 2007). Similarly, iron supplementation during the second half of pregnancy was not found to influence the iron status of the children at 6 months or 4 years of age (Zhou et al 2007). On a cautionary note, excessive iron supplementation resulting in high haemoglobin and increased iron stores may be associated with increased adverse pregnancy outcomes (Scholl 2005), including low birth weight and premature delivery (Casanueva &amp; Viteri 2003). A recent Cochrane review involving more than 27,402 women concluded that prenatal supplementation with daily iron is effective in reducing the risk of low birth weight babies, and prevents maternal anaemia and iron deficiency in pregnancy (Peña-Rosas et al 2012).</td>
<td>The daily recommended intake of iron during pregnancy is increased to 27 mg/day. Upper limit is 45 mg based on the risk for side effects and potential systemic toxicity. A daily supplement of 40 mg ferrous iron from 18 weeks of gestation appears adequate to prevent iron deficiency in 90% of women (Milman et al 2005). However, individual assessment of iron status in early pregnancy may be useful to tailor the appropriate prophylaxis to prevent iron deficiency and iron deficiency anaemia: Ferritin ≤ 30 mcg/L — 80–100 mg ferrous iron/day; ferritin 31–70 mcg/L — 40 mg ferrous iron/day; those with ferritin &gt; 70 mcg/L do not require supplementation (Milman et al 2006). High dose supplementation may reduce the absorption of zinc (Hambidge et al 1987, O’Brien et al 2000) and other divalent cations (copper, chromium, molybdenum, manganese, magnesium) (Rossander-Hulten et al 1991). Side effects of high dose supplementation typically include gastrointestinal disturbances — most commonly constipation and nausea (Melamed et al 2007).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION</th>
<th>DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zinc</strong></td>
<td>Deficiency has been associated with adverse outcomes in pregnancy. Numerous animal models demonstrate an association between zinc deficiency and increased developmental abnormalities and fetal losses. Deficiency has also been associated with reduced interuterine growth, preterm delivery, labour and delivery complications, poor immunological development (Caulfield et al 1998) and congenital malformations (Hambidge et al 1977). A Cochrane review analysing results from studies assessed over 15,000 women and their babies concluded that zinc supplementation resulted in a small but significant reduction in preterm birth (Mori et al 2012). In humans acrodermatitis enteropathica, a genetic disease which produces severe zinc deficiency, has been found to increase fetal losses and malformations, most probably due to its key role in protein synthesis and cellular growth (King 2000). The usefulness of zinc supplementation during pregnancy is unclear. Supplementation has been shown to reduce preterm birth (Mahomed et al 2007), assist the accumulation of lean tissue in the infant during the first year of growth (Iannotti et al 2008) and reduce the risk of delivering via caesarean section (Mahomed et al 2007). While women with preeclampsia have significantly lower zinc and SOD levels compared to healthy pregnant women (Ilhan et al 2002), zinc supplementation had no significant effect in pregnancy hypertension or preeclampsia (Mahomed et al 2007), and no significant differences were seen for several other maternal or infant outcomes including pre-labour rupture of membranes, antepartum haemorrhage, post-term birth, prolonged labour, retention of placenta, meconium in liquor, smell or taste dysfunction, maternal infections, gestational age at birth or birth weight (Mahomed et al 2007).</td>
<td>Recommended daily intake during pregnancy is increased to 11 mg/day and recommended upper level of intake is the same as for adults at 40 mg/day. Vegans and vegetarians may need an additional 50%. The teratogenic effects of alcohol may be exacerbated by a concurrent zinc deficiency (Keppen et al 1985).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUTRIENT</td>
<td>THERAPEUTIC FUNCTION/JUSTIFICATION</td>
<td>DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS AND ISSUES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omega 3 (DHA/ EPA)</td>
<td>High fetal demands for omega-3 fatty acids result in maternal stores progressively decreasing throughout pregnancy (Al et al 1995, Bonham et al 2008). Important for optimal fetal and infant neurodevelopment and may be associated with benefits for other pregnancy and infant health outcomes including growth and development of the fetal and infant brain (Horrocks &amp; Yeo 1999, Rogers et al 2013), improvements to children’s eye–hand coordination (Dunstan et al 2008) and higher infant cognitive function (Hibbeln et al 2007, Oken et al 2005). Lower maternal intake was associated with increased risk of infants with poorer outcomes for prosocial behaviour, fine motor, communication and social development scores (Hibbeln et al 2007), increase risk of infant asthma (Olsen et al 2008), increased risk of postnatal depression (Levant et al 2006, 2008) and increased depressive symptoms in postpartum women (Hibbeln 2002). However, more recent studies have found no association (Browne et al 2006, Freeman et al 2008, Rees et al 2008, Sontrop et al 2008) or mixed outcomes (Su et al 2008). Lower dietary intake of fish (Oken et al 2007) and biochemical markers of omega-3 fatty acid intake (Mehendale et al 2008, Qiu et al 2006, Velzing-Aarts et al 1999) have been reported in women who develop preeclampsia. However, intervention studies with fish oil supplementation generally have not found a protective effect. In a Cochrane review there was no significant difference in risk of gestational hypertension (five trials) or preeclampsia (four trials) in those taking the fish oil (133 mg/day to 3 g/day) compared with control groups (Makrides et al 2006). Fish oil supplementation during pregnancy appears to be safe. Mild side effects such as belching and unpleasant taste are reported (Freeman &amp; Sinha 2007, Makrides et al 2006). Recommendations for dietary intake of EPA/DHA (adequate intake) for pregnancy is 115 mg/day. Upper level of intake is recommended at 3 g for adults (no pregnancy specifications). Maternal dietary docosahexaenoic acid intake of at least 200 mg/day is associated with positive infant neurodevelopmental outcomes (Cetin &amp; Koletzko 2008). Lower dietary intake of fish (Oken et al 2007) and biochemical markers of omega-3 fatty acid intake (Mehendale et al 2008, Qiu et al 2006, Velzing-Aarts et al 1999) have been reported in women who develop preeclampsia. However, intervention studies with fish oil supplementation generally have not found a protective effect. In a Cochrane review there was no significant difference in risk of gestational hypertension (five trials) or preeclampsia (four trials) in those taking the fish oil (133 mg/day to 3 g/day) compared with control groups (Makrides et al 2006). Fish oil supplementation during pregnancy appears to be safe. Mild side effects such as belching and unpleasant taste are reported (Freeman &amp; Sinha 2007, Makrides et al 2006). Recommendations for dietary intake of EPA/DHA (adequate intake) for pregnancy is 115 mg/day. Upper level of intake is recommended at 3 g for adults (no pregnancy specifications). Maternal dietary docosahexaenoic acid intake of at least 200 mg/day is associated with positive infant neurodevelopmental outcomes (Cetin &amp; Koletzko 2008).</td>
<td>Fish oil supplementation during pregnancy appears to be safe. Mild side effects such as belching and unpleasant taste are reported (Freeman &amp; Sinha 2007, Makrides et al 2006). Recommendations for dietary intake of EPA/DHA (adequate intake) for pregnancy is 115 mg/day. Upper level of intake is recommended at 3 g for adults (no pregnancy specifications). Maternal dietary docosahexaenoic acid intake of at least 200 mg/day is associated with positive infant neurodevelopmental outcomes (Cetin &amp; Koletzko 2008).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probiotics</td>
<td>Prenatal and postnatal supplementation with probiotics may play a role in immune regulation and the prevention of allergies developing in the infant. Numerous positive studies in the prevention of allergies including eczema in the child have involved the following strains: Lactobacillus reuteri ATCC 55730 (Abrahamsson et al 2007) Lactobacillus rhamnosus strain GG (ATCC 53103) (Kalliomaki et al 2001, 2003, Rautava et al 2002) Lactobacillus rhamnosus GG (ATCC 53103); L. rhamnosus LC705 (DSM 7061); Bifidobacterium breve Bb99 (DSM 13692); and Propionibacterium freudenreichii ssp. shermanii JS (DSM 7076) (Kukkonen et al 2007) Lactobacillus rhamnosus strain GG and Bifidobacterium lactis Bb12 (Huurre et al 2008) Prophylactic enteral supplementation reduces the occurrence of necrotising enterocolitis and death in premature infants born less than 1500 g (Alfaleh &amp; Bassler 2008), which may be due to normalisation of gut flora and stimulation of natural host defences (Hammerman &amp; Kaplan 2006). Vaginal application reduces the risk of vaginal infections in pregnancy (Othman et al 2007).</td>
<td>Based on review of literature, prescription appears to be safe for internal and vaginal application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline</td>
<td>Choline status in pregnancy influences the development of the memory centre (hippocampus) in the fetal brain, and may have a lifelong impact on memory (Zeisel 2004). It has been shown to improve cognitive function in the neonate and benefit extends into childhood (Boeke et al 2013).</td>
<td>The recommended daily intake is slightly increased at 440 mg/day, with an upper level of 3000 mg.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# APPENDIX 11.2: NHMRC DOSAGE RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PREGNANCY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>RDI (NHMRC)</th>
<th>NUTRIENT</th>
<th>RDI (NHMRC)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A</td>
<td>2600 IU</td>
<td>PABA</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B1 (thiamine)</td>
<td>1.4 mg</td>
<td>Coenzyme Q10</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B2 (riboflavin)</td>
<td>1.4 mg</td>
<td>Alpha lipoic acid</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B3 (niacin)</td>
<td>18 mg</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>1000–1300 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B5 (pantothenic acid)</td>
<td>5 mg</td>
<td>Chromium</td>
<td>30 mcg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B6 (pyridoxine)</td>
<td>1.9 mg</td>
<td>Copper</td>
<td>1.3 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyridoxal 5 phosphate (PSP)</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
<td>Iodine</td>
<td>220 mcg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B9 (folic acid)</td>
<td>600 mcg</td>
<td>Iron</td>
<td>27 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folinic acid</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>350 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-5-MTHF</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
<td>Manganese</td>
<td>5 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B12 (cyanocobalamin)</td>
<td>2.6 mcg</td>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>2800 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin C</td>
<td>60 mg</td>
<td>Selenium</td>
<td>65 mcg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin D</td>
<td>200 IU/5 mcg</td>
<td>Silica</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin E</td>
<td>10 IU/7 mg</td>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>11 mcg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin K</td>
<td>60 mcg</td>
<td>Total omega-3 essential fatty acids</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Betacarotene</td>
<td>800 mcg</td>
<td>Total omega-6 essential fatty acids</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioflavonoids</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
<td>DHA</td>
<td>220 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotin</td>
<td>30 mcg</td>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>220 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline</td>
<td>440 mg</td>
<td>Evening primrose oil</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inositol</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
<td>Probiotics (mixed strains)</td>
<td>No guidelines available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## REFERENCES


Bussaner P et al. Calcium supplementation (other than for preventing or treating hypertension) for improving pregnancy and infant outcomes. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 10 (2011).


Dawson EB et al. Fish consumption in pregnancy and omega-3 status after birth are not associated with psychomotor depression. Journal of Affective Disorders 90.2–3 (2006): 131–139.


Felder HW, Lloyd JU. King’s American dispensatory, 18th edn, 3rd rev. vol 1, Eclectic Medical Publications, USA, 1905, reprinted 1983.


A NEW ACADEMIC DISCIPLINE
— WELLNESS ONLINE

WHAT IS ‘WELLNESS’?

‘Wellness’ is a concept that has gained popularity in recent years but still has no rigorously developed definition, theory or philosophy. At a very simple level, wellness can be equated with health which, according to the World Health Organization (WHO), is ‘a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity’ (WHO 1948). Wellness, however, can also be seen as distinct from health, in that it is holistic and multidimensional. The notion of wellness includes not only physical, mental and social dimensions, but also emotional, cultural, spiritual, educational, sexual, occupational, financial, environmental, ethical and existential dimensions, with the assumption being that if any one of these dimensions is deficient, complete wellness cannot be achieved.

Wellness describes a quality of systems rather than isolated entities and, as such, it is dependent on relationships and must take into account both content and context. Because it describes systems, the notion of wellness can be applied to individuals as well as to communities, businesses and large-scale economies and requires an ecological perspective that can be expanded to include the concepts of human security, corporate social responsibility, social justice, environmental impact and sustainability, together with subjective fulfillment and physiological wellbeing.

In 1961, wellness pioneer Halbert Dunn defined wellness in his book *High-level wellness* as ‘an integrated method of functioning which is oriented toward maximizing the potential of which the individual is capable’ (Dunn 1961, p 4). He acknowledged that wellness is dependent on the relationship between individuals and their environment, stating that wellness ‘requires that the individual maintain a continuum of balance and purposeful direction within the environment where he is functioning’. He also stated that ‘wellness is a direction in progress toward an ever-higher potential of functioning’ (p. 6).

More recently the (US) President’s Council on Physical Fitness and Sports proposed a uniform definition of wellness as ‘a multidimensional state of being describing the existence of positive health in an individual as exemplified by quality of life and a sense of well-being’ (Corbin & Pangrazi 2001). Yet another definition suggests that wellness is an ‘active process of becoming aware of and making choices toward a more successful existence’ (US National Wellness Institute 2009). Another proposed definition is:

> Wellness is the multidimensional state of being ‘well’, where inner and outer worlds are in harmony: a heightened state of consciousness enabling you to be fully present in the moment and respond authentically to any situation from the ‘deep inner well of your being’. Wellness is dynamic and results in a continuous awakening and evolution of consciousness and is the state where you look, feel, perform, and stay ‘well’ and, therefore, experience the greatest fulfilment and enjoyment from life and achieve the greatest longevity (Cohen 2008a, p 8).
This definition implies that the state of wellness allows the greatest flexibility to respond to situations and therefore provides the greatest resilience to stress and disease. Wellness in this context can be seen as the best preventive medicine. In this definition wellness is also seen as a state of consciousness that guides the quality of our relationships with the world and therefore cannot be viewed separately from the environment in which it occurs. Thus, if ‘health’ is ‘wholeness’, then wellness is the experience of an ever-expanding realisation of what it means to be whole (Cohen 2008a).

Travis and Ryan suggest that wellness is never a static state, but rather a way of life, and that wellness and illness exist along a continuum: just as there are degrees of illness, there are also degrees of wellness. Travis and Ryan further see wellness as a choice, a process, a balanced channelling of energy, the integration of body, mind and spirit and the loving acceptance of self (Travis & Ryan 2004).

If health and disease are considered to be at opposite ends of a spectrum, then it is possible to classify health into three broad areas: ill health (illness), average health and enhanced health (wellness) (Fig 12.1). The divide between ill health and average health is generally defined in Western medical terms, which classify diseases based on symptom patterns or other diagnostic parameters. Western medicine uses a bottom-up approach that aims to define and understand illness, and develop interventions such as drugs and surgery to treat or prevent the disease and control factors that reduce well-being (‘stressors’).

The divide between average health and enhanced health is less distinct. Enhanced health is more than just being disease-free: it assumes high levels of physical strength, stamina and mental clarity, as well as physical beauty and maximal enjoyment and fulfilment from life. This requires the holistic integration of multiple factors that determine physical, psychological, emotional, social, economic, environmental and spiritual health. In many Eastern philosophies, the idea of enhanced health can be extended to the concept of ‘perfect health’ or ‘enlightenment’, whereby a person is ‘at one with the universe’ and hence in a state of perfect bliss or ‘nirvana’ (Cohen 2003).

Moving up the spectrum from illness to wellness allows for greater flexibility of response and hence greater resilience; the best form of prevention is therefore to be as high on the spectrum as possible. Thus, while ‘stressors’ tend to reduce the ability to respond and create downwards movement, upwards movement can be facilitated by ‘blissors’, which create greater wellbeing. Throughout the spectrum, however, there is also a central axis that represents the core of our being. This central core, which may be termed the ‘soul’ or the ‘essence’, is an eternal and immortal aspect of the self that is naturally and blissfully at one with the universe.
Bliss, or ‘ananda’ in Sanskrit, is considered by Vedic scholars to be the innermost level of the individual self, as well as the nature of the whole universe. It is the goal of the path to enlightenment and is found in the deepest experience of meditation and the innermost level of our being (Maharishi 1957–64). Bliss is also the ultimate aim of Eastern healing and spiritual practices, which adopt a top-down approach by attempting to elicit bliss through meditation and other practices that enhance wellbeing (‘blissors’) (Cohen 2008a).

The state of bliss can also be considered as the ultimate in achieving human potential. As the late anthropologist Joseph Campbell states:

*I think that most people are looking for an experience that connects them to the ecstasy of what it could feel like to be totally alive. To know the unburdened state of total aliveness is the pinnacle of the human potential* (Campbell 1988).

This ‘state of total aliveness’ is what many people may consider to be ‘wellness’.

**THE WORLD IN CRISIS**

It seems that all people at some time have tried to tackle the question of how to live well in the world. This single question has driven human endeavour and led to innovations that have created new technologies and ways of living that have allowed human populations to expand exponentially (Meadows et al 1976).

Expanding human populations and exploitation of the natural environment has led to a series of global crises that are challenging the financial system, the climate and the environment leading to global terrorism and social unrest, pandemics, environmental pollution, general toxicity and natural disasters, which are breaching national boundaries and threatening human security. We also currently live in a world where one-third of the world’s population is dying from diseases linked to malnutrition and starvation; another third is dying from obesity and diseases related to overconsumption; toxic chemicals are continuously being created and released into our environment and food supply; and people are becoming increasingly disconnected from their natural environment and one another.

Modern healthcare systems are also struggling to provide quality care to all in need, as the burden of illness-care reaches barely manageable proportions. It is becoming clear that the current illness-based medical model is not sustainable and is ill-equipped to meet the needs of the global population or deal with the consequences of an ageing population, increasing healthcare costs and an epidemic of lifestyle-related diseases such as obesity, diabetes, heart disease and cancer.

A disproportionate focus on illness has allowed unhealthy lifestyle practices to remain largely unchecked, thereby allowing them to expand across the globe to the point where they now represent the greatest threat to human health and survival. A 2005 report by WHO entitled *Preventing chronic disease: A vital investment* estimates that of the 58 million deaths in the world in 2005, 35 million (60%) were caused by chronic diseases such as heart disease, stroke, cancer, chronic respiratory diseases and diabetes. The report goes on to suggest that 80% of premature heart disease, stroke and type 2 diabetes and 40% of all cancers are preventable, concluding that the main modifiable risk factors for these diseases are lifestyle-related and include unhealthy diets, physical inactivity and tobacco use (WHO 2005).

It has been predicted that, as a result of unhealthy lifestyles, for the first time in history the lifespan of the next generation in the United States could be shorter than that of their parents (Olshansky et al 2005). In a Price-WaterhouseCoopers (PWC) report on the future of healthcare entitled *HealthCast 2020: Creating a sustainable future* (PWC 2005), it is suggested that ‘There is growing evidence that the current health systems of nations around the world will be unsustainable if unchanged over the next 15 years’ (PWC 2005, p 2), while ‘preventive care and disease management programs have untapped potential to enhance health status and reduce costs’ (PWC 2005, p 4).

**IN SEARCH OF WELLNESS**

It is becoming increasingly evident that the fate of all people on Earth is linked and that as a global species we must find sustainable ways to live well in the world together. Humanity has
CHAPTER 12 Introduction to Wellness

reached a ‘tipping point’, bringing the possibility of either substantial hardship or a breakthrough into new ways of living and a new phase in human evolution. This new phase represents a culmination of thousands of years of human history, during which different philosophies, traditions and technologies have attempted to address the questions of life, ageing, illness and death.

The search for wellness is a common goal for all people. It can be understood as a conscious extension of the basic animal instinct to avoid pain that has its origins at the dawn of humanity when consciousness first became self-reflective (Cohen 2000). This search has influenced the evolution of medicine, which has seen the elaboration of two distinct yet complementary approaches: Eastern medicine, which is based on holistic thinking that maintains a cosmological and systems perspective outlining a philosophy of life; and Western medicine, which is based on a reductionist approach, emphasising controlled scientific experimentation and mathematical analysis (Cohen 2002).

The different health paradigms that aim to improve health and wellness have attempted to address the same issues in different ways. The principle of consilience suggests that there is an underlying unity of knowledge whereby a small number of natural laws may underpin seemingly different conceptual frameworks (Wilson 1999). Indeed, there are general concepts and principles that seem to recur as themes across different healthcare paradigms.

The Thermodynamics of Wellness

Perhaps the most ubiquitous principle in medical thought is the idea that life is dependent on energy. The science of energy is well described in the field of thermodynamics, which proposes universal laws that give rise to precise mathematical equations that form the foundation for modern science and technology. However, while the field of thermodynamics purports to describe all energetic processes, it is seldom applied directly to the fields of health and medicine, despite ‘energy’ being a basic principle in virtually every healing tradition.

The concept of energy is described in different traditions as ‘life energy’, ‘vital force’, ‘prana’, ‘chi’ (or ‘Qi’), and is said to flow along defined pathways and support the functioning of living systems. Traditional Chinese medicine has developed a sophisticated framework for conceptualising this energy: it is seen to encompass the concept of ‘flow’ and to move according to the dynamic interplay of the opposite yet complementary forces of ‘yin’ and ‘yang’, which guide the process of transformation whereby non-living things become animate. In this view, pain and disease are said to result when the energetic flow is disrupted, and healing is aimed at restoring the natural balance and flow (Cohen 2002).

As science does not recognise a form of energy specific to living systems, many concepts underlying Eastern medicine have been criticised as unscientific. There are parallels, however, between Eastern and Western concepts, which can be seen to be linked through the concept of information. Information can be measured in terms of energy or ‘joules/degree Kelvin’ (Tribus & McIrvine 1971), and there is a congruence between the concepts of ‘Qi’ in Eastern medicine and ‘information’ in thermodynamics.

Thus the Eastern concept of disease arising from a blockage of ‘Qi’ can be seen to parallel the second law of thermodynamics, which describes a tendency towards disorder or entropy in an isolated system. Disease and the adverse effects of ageing, which include progressive degeneration of tissues together with loss of function, can therefore be related to an increase in entropy as a consequence of blockages or isolation of different systems. In contrast, the ability of living systems to grow, evolve and learn appears to defy the second law and can be related to an open exchange between organisms and the environment. This can be extended to the concept of ‘nirvana’, or perfect bliss, whereby a person is ‘at one with the universe’, and there is no distinction between self and non-self, thus creating an open system that is no longer prone to the increase in entropy that occurs in isolated systems (Cohen 2002).

Wellness and Flow

While it may be true that life depends on energy, living systems must remain ‘open’, as it is the flow of energy through them that maintains their integrity. The concept of ‘flow’ is a powerful one that provides a bridge
between Eastern and Western thought. The concept of flow applies to both thermodynamic processes and systems theory, as well as to the cyclic thinking of Eastern medicine. The concept of flow has also been applied to subjective psychological states that involve the integrated functioning of mind and body. This concept has been developed by Mihalyi Csikszentmihalyi, who describes flow as ‘a joyous, self-forgetful involvement through concentration, which in turn is made possible by a discipline of the body’ (Csikszentmihalyi 1992).

The state of flow occurs when perceived challenges exactly match the skills and capacity to respond. Such a state is therefore a ‘whole of consciousness’ phenomenon that requires the integrated action of both physiological and psychological processes, and hence the involvement of the entire being. In requiring ‘wholeness’, the ‘flow state’ is aligned with health and wellness, and engenders positive feelings that include:

- being completely involved in what we are doing — focused, concentrated
- a sense of ecstasy — of being outside and beyond everyday reality
- great inner clarity — knowing what needs to be done and how well we are doing it (introspective, realistic feedback)
- knowing the activity is able to be done — that our skills are adequate to the task
- a sense of serenity — having no undue concerns or worries about oneself, and a feeling of growing beyond the boundaries of the ego
- timelessness — being thoroughly focused on the present so that hours seem to pass by in minutes
- intrinsic motivation — whatever produces flow becomes its own reward (Csikszentmihalyi 2004).

The idea that positive psychological states and wellbeing require ‘open systems’ is recognised in everyday common language in the phrases ‘having an open heart’ or ‘open mind’. The concept of flow sustaining life is also a basic tenet of Chinese and other traditional medicine philosophies. A thermodynamic model that includes the concept of energy and flow can also be seen to include many parallels between Eastern and Western concepts, and thus provide links between different conceptual systems (Fig 12.2) (Cohen 2010).

For example, the process of flow leading to transformation and the maintenance of living systems parallels the concept of the five elements or phases of transformation that is common to Chinese medicine, Ayurvedic

**FIGURE 12.2 Pictorial conceptualisation of wellness concepts from traditional Chinese medicine (Cohen 2008a)**
medicine and ancient Greek medicine (which considered quintessence as a fifth element in addition to air, water, fire and earth). The result of this transformation is represented by the concept of ‘yin’ and ‘yang’, which refers to interdependent yet mutually exclusive opposites and can be compared to the concept of ‘complementarity’ in quantum physics or the concept of homeostatic balance in physiology. The result of this balance leads to an increase or decrease in order as described by entropy or evolution, while the infinite nature of direct experience can be compared to the concept of ‘Tao’ or the mathematical concept of ‘absolute infinity’, both of which are defined as being inherently incomprehensible (Cohen 2002).

**WELLNESS METRICS**

Wellness is holistic and multidimensional, and involves content and context. As such it is both subjective and objective, and is difficult to quantify. As yet there are no agreed upon metrics by which wellness can be reliably measured, despite the existence of many potential indicators and proxy measures that may be applied to populations as well as individuals. Thus, it is now possible to measure subjective states such as ‘quality of life’, ‘happiness’ and ‘wellbeing’ through instruments such as the Australian Quality of Life Index (Cummins et al 2008), as well as to use more objective and physiological measures such as anthropometric and biometric data. Objective indicators of wellness can also be obtained from tissue sampling and measuring biochemical, hormonal, genetic, haematological and toxological data, as well as by testing functional capacity and performance. Further indicators for wellness can be obtained from demographic, socioeconomic and epidemiological data, which can be used to appraise access to food, shelter, education, employment, healthcare and consumer goods, as well as to rate health risks, ecological footprint, morbidity, mortality and life expectancy (Cohen 2008a).

The multidimensional nature of wellness makes any single measure inadequate, and so attempts have been made to combine measures from the different domains. For example, the BankWest Quality of Life Index tracks Australian living standards across municipalities based on key indicators of the labour market, the housing market, the environment, education and health (BankWest 2008).

In attempting to measure ‘full spectrum wellness’, Travis and Ryan adopt the concept of a ‘wellness energy system’, which implies a thermodynamic model and measures wellness in terms of inputs and outputs. They acknowledge that ‘we are all energy transformers, connected with the whole universe’, and that ‘all our life processes, including illness, depend on how we manage energy’ (Travis & Ryan 2004). These authors further describe 12 aspects of wellness, which include inputs provided by breathing, eating and sensing, and outputs described as self-responsibility and love, transcending, finding meaning, intimacy, communicating, playing and working, thinking, feeling and moving. These 12 aspects of wellness are the basis for the wellness inventory, which evolved from early health-risk appraisal techniques to become the first computerised wellness assessment tool using a self-reported questionnaire.

Perhaps the most comprehensive attempt to create a metric for wellbeing is the ‘Happy Planet Index’, which uses both subjective and objective data in an attempt to measure the ecological efficiency with which countries achieve long and happy lives for their citizens. The Happy Planet Index is a composite measure that is calculated by multiplying life satisfaction by life expectancy and then dividing by ecological footprint. It therefore takes a thermodynamic approach to the wellness of populations by dividing outputs (the length and happiness of human life) by inputs (natural resources) (Marks et al 2014). The finding that the average scores across nations are low, that all nations could do better and that no country does well on all three indicators or achieves an overall high score on the index has led the Happy Planet Index to be currently renamed the ‘(Un) Happy Planet Index’ (Marks et al 2014).

**THE WELLNESS REVOLUTION**

Since the emergence of self-reflective consciousness, every culture at every point in history has maintained various practices that aim at achieving and maintaining the wellbeing of individuals and the wider community. These practices invariably include the use of the local environment, food, water and plants, as well as
various indigenous healing practices, such as massage and traditional cultural practices that are performed to focus the mind and anchor the experience of being well in ritual, routine and direct sensual experience.

While every culture throughout history has had its own wellness practices and philosophies, a culture that is global or sustainable has never existed before (Cohen 2008a). In the current millennium, however, there is a need for global solutions that provide an integrated response to the many world crises and an orientation towards wellness promises to provide such solutions. Thus, it is suggested that along with the current crises, the world is also experiencing the start of a ‘wellness revolution’ and the accompanying growth of a ‘wellness industry’.

THE WELLNESS INDUSTRY

In his 2002 book *The wellness revolution*, economist Paul Zane Pilzer estimated that the value of existing items in the US wellness industry had reached approximately US$200 billion. This included US$70 billion for vitamins and US$25 billion for spas and fitness centres — about half the amount spent on automobiles in the United States (Pilzer 2002). Pilzer suggests that the US$200 billion is only the tip of the iceberg, and that wellness products and services represent the beginning of a new trillion-dollar sector of the US economy. In an updated edition of his book, Pilzer estimated that in 2007 the US wellness industry had expanded to over US$500 billion and that the untapped market for wellness had increased in size thanks to millions of new wellness consumers (Pilzer 2007).

The growth of the wellness industry is evidenced by the dramatic growth of the global spa industry (now considered by many to be the ‘spa and wellness’ industry), which has recently emerged as a global phenomenon through a convergence of industries, traditions and therapeutic practices. While spa therapies have been around since ancient times in many different forms that reflect the cultural, social and political milieu in which they are embedded, these practices are now being rediscovered, integrated and branded to create a new global industry that draws from a range of aligned industries, including beauty, massage, hospitality, tourism, architecture, property development, landscape design, fashion, food and beverage, fitness and leisure, personal development, as well as complementary, conventional and traditional medicine (Cohen 2008a).

Fuelled by the merging of the travel dollar with the health dollar, spas are now springing up all over the world and have become a standard feature of luxury hotels and resorts. Spas are reported to be the fastest-growing leisure industry, and it was estimated that by 2001 revenues from spas had already overtaken revenues from amusement parks, box office receipts, vacation ownership and ski resorts (ISPA 2002). A 2008 report on the global spa economy suggests that global revenue from spas in 2007 was worth more than US$255 billion globally and that the wider wellness industry was worth an additional US$1.1 trillion (SRI International 2008). More recently, the wellness industry cluster was estimated to represent a $1.9 trillion global market, which included diverse but related industries including beauty and anti-ageing ($679 billion), fitness and mind–body ($390 billion), healthy eating and weight loss ($276 billion), personalised preventive health ($243 billion), complementary and alternative medicine ($133 billion), wellness tourism ($106 billion), spa ($60 billion), medical tourism ($50 billion) and workplace wellness ($31 billion) (SRI International 2010).

In offering to deliver on wellness, the spa industry is moving beyond luxury and pampering into the area of providing healthcare and, even further, raising consciousness. As such, the global spa industry is a melting pot for a whole host of products and services that encourage enhanced health and wellbeing and are drawn from a wide variety of traditions that include conventional, complementary and traditional medicine. Thus spas are adopting an integrative approach; they are taking holistic medical concepts out of clinics and combining them with the world of hospitality and leisure to place them in sustainable, enjoyable and nurturing environments.

Hotels certainly have a much greater appeal than hospitals. By combining hospitality with an integrative medicine model that emphasises lifestyle change and personal empowerment, the spa and wellness industry has the potential to transcend conventional medicine and create a globally sustainable health system. While most spas do not, as yet, create formal medical
records, instigate diagnostic tests or perform medical procedures, these are all taking place in some medi-spas and destination spas, and some spas are beginning to integrate conventional and complementary medicine with hospitality to create hybrid hospital-spa-hotels (‘hos-spa-tels’). As these are integrated into international hospitality chains, they create the potential for the delivery of a global integrated health service based on wellness principles (Cohen 2008a).

CONSCIOUS CONSUMPTION
The rise of the wellness industry is aligned with a move towards ‘lifestyles of health and sustainability’ (LOHAS). LOHAS is a demographic defining a particular market segment related to sustainable living and ‘green’ ecological initiatives, and is generally composed of a relatively upscale and well-educated population segment. In 2006 the LOHAS market segment was estimated to represent a US$209 billion market for goods and services focused on health, the environment, personal development and sustainable living. The focus of LOHAS is conscious consumption and covers diverse market segments such as personal health, natural lifestyles, green building, alternative energy and transportation, and ecotourism (for more information about LOHAS, see www.lohas.com).

A strong component of the LOHAS movement is the trend for consumers to choose more holistic, prevention-based models of healthcare, and this is evidenced by the increasing use of complementary and alternative medicine (Tindle et al 2005). This trend may reflect a growing disenchantment with the medical profession’s seemingly one-sided emphasis on science and technology, as well as a growing demand for autonomy in healthcare decisions. Certainly, the general population is now better informed than ever and has better access to health information. The public is subsequently demanding more from healthcare providers and is not interested only in treating illness. Instead they want to maximise their health, prevent or slow down the ageing process and achieve higher levels of functioning (Cohen 2001).

The LOHAS movement has arisen out of a growing awareness that rampant consumerism seems to be taking over and destroying the planet. Certainly, unchecked and unconscious consumption can be seen to be at the root of many of the world’s problems. Thus while we as consumers currently have access to a seemingly unlimited choice of goods in every size and colour, we remain disconnected from the products and services we purchase and often do not know where they come from, how they are produced, who produced them, what is in them, how they are disposed of or who benefits from their purchase.

In response to this, there is a growth in conscious consumer trends badged with different labels such as: green, natural, organic, fair-trade, corporate social responsibility, eco, ethical investment, sustainable, barefoot luxury. These have given rise to ‘locovor’ restaurants (those that source food within 160 kilometres/100 miles), carbon offset programs, green buildings, carbon neutral businesses, ecotourism, ethnotourism, voluntourism, downsizing, compacting, tree-change, social capital and triple and quadruple bottom-line reporting.

It is suggested that this range of conscious consumer trends can be integrated under the banner of ‘conshumanism’, which is a term that defines ‘conscious and humane consumption’ or ‘consumption with maximal awareness, efficiency and enjoyment and minimal pain, energy, waste and pollution’ (Cohen 2008a). Conshumanism embraces an overarching concept that can integrate multiple consumer trends towards greater transparency, equity, accountability, social responsibility, environmental sustainability and ethics. The common feature of these trends is increasing information and consciousness about consumption as well as incorporating an awareness of wellness into everyday lifestyle decisions.

TOWARDS A WELLNESS POLICY AGENDA
While treating illness has traditionally been the domain of the medical system, there is a growing realisation that wellness is holistic and multifaceted, and that implementing a wellness agenda requires wellness to become part of the fabric of our society, so that it infiltrates the education system, workplaces and the consciousness of every individual. This will require concerted action from multiple sectors, including civil society, governments, corporations and individuals.
GOVERNMENT INITIATIVES
The year 2008 seems to have been a watershed year for Australian government wellness initiatives. The Australia 2020 Summit called for the development of a ‘whole-of-life wellness model’ and a ‘wellness footprint’ to evaluate, measure and resource services across portfolios (Good & Roxon 2008), while the National Health and Hospitals Reform Commission, the National Preventative Health Task Force, the Primary Health Care Strategy Reference Group and the Indigenous Health Equity Council were established, all with a mandate for health reform (Moodie et al 2008).

The National Preventative Health Task Force subsequently produced a discussion paper entitled ‘Australia, the healthiest country by 2020’, which acknowledged the need for a coordinated approach to wellness, stating that:

_Our health is not only determined by our physical and psychological make-up and health behaviours, but also by our education, income and employment; our access to services; the place in which we live in [sic] and its culture; the advertising we are exposed to; and the laws and other regulations in place in our society_ (Preventative Health Task Force 2008).

These initiatives led to the establishment of the Australian National Preventive Health Agency in 2011, which now serves to support the development and implementation of evidence-based approaches to preventive health initiatives targeting obesity, harmful alcohol consumption and tobacco.

WORKING TOWARDS WELLNESS
In addition to the above government initiatives there are widespread calls for a more proactive, wellness-oriented approach to be taken by the corporate sector. Illness places a huge burden not only on government health systems and communities, but also on industry, with the potential for catastrophic effects. While the costs to industry from illness due to absenteeism are clear, it is only recently that the costs of ‘presenteeism’ have been assessed. It has been estimated that presenteeism — when workers turn up for work but are unproductive because of an ongoing illness — involves a greater cost than absenteeism, and may represent up to 60% of an employee’s total lost productivity and medical costs (Goetzel et al 2004). Presenteeism may also pose serious threats to workplace safety, lead to dissemination of infectious diseases and have hidden long-term costs, as well as compounding other lifestyle and social issues.

There is therefore a clear advantage in addressing wellness in the workplace, as this may have a positive impact on a company’s productivity, recruitment, retention and ultimate profitability. As many employees spend a significant portion of their life at work, workplace wellness programs are also well positioned to address the growing burden of chronic lifestyle-related disease.

At the 2008 World Economic Forum Annual Meeting in Davos, Switzerland, there was a call for action to raise the issue of employee health on the corporate agenda. At the meeting, the results of a collaboration between the World Economic Forum and the WHO were released, suggesting that workplace wellness programs are a real but under-exploited opportunity to tackle the growing worldwide epidemic of chronic disease. This coincided with a PriceWaterhouseCoopers report, _Working towards wellness: accelerating the prevention of chronic disease_, which suggested that large multinational corporations are now looking for wellness strategies to implement in their workplaces and the communities in which they operate, and are rolling out comprehensive wellness programs in multiple countries, even though there are challenges in the implementation, evaluation and monitoring of such programs (PWC 2007).

As yet there is still no robust accounting for wellness, despite the evolution of triple and quadruple bottom-line reporting; however, the corporate sector appears to be taking workplace wellness programs beyond health screening and occupational health and safety programs, and there are moves to engage employees and the wider community in wellness and lifestyle initiatives through corporate social responsibility, environmental sustainability and community development agendas.

LIFESTYLE MEDICINE
Wellness impacts on every aspect of our lives, and experiencing wellness requires the holistic integration of multiple factors that determine
physical, psychological, emotional, social, economic, environmental and spiritual health. Wellness is therefore ultimately an issue of lifestyle. In order to embrace wellness or enhanced health, the key ‘life activities’ that determine our health must be addressed. These life activities are summarised by the SENSE approach (see Chapter 1). We all need to manage stress, move, eat, interact with other people, interact with the world and learn. If we improve the way we do these activities, we will naturally improve our wellbeing. Wellness therefore involves the following:

• **stress management** — managing stressors (e.g. effective time management strategies and priority setting), and including everyday activities that enhance our ability to cope with stressors (e.g. meditation, breathing exercises and hobbies, and infusing life with creativity, humour and fun)
• **exercise** — engaging in regular physical activity that improves our aerobic capacity (e.g. walking), physical strength (e.g. resistance training) and flexibility (e.g. yoga)
• **nutrition** — receiving adequate nutrition through the consumption of a wide variety of fresh, seasonal, whole foods that are stored and prepared appropriately; minimising our exposure to toxins by using organic produce; and avoiding tobacco smoke and environmental toxins
• **social and spiritual interaction** — devoting ourselves to quality time with others and fostering love and intimacy in all our personal relationships; developing an ethic of service to others and a sense of social responsibility (e.g. volunteering and community work); giving to charities (e.g. time, effort, money); ethical investing and purchasing
• **education** — learning about ourselves and others, our environment and our place in it, and attempting to avoid obvious hazards while living sustainable, ecological lifestyles.

In recognition of the impact that lifestyle has on illness, developments in health funding in Australia have enabled allied health professionals to become part of a team that can address lifestyle issues. This has led to the emergence of ‘lifestyle medicine’, which is deemed to be a new discipline that attempts to bridge the gap between health promotion and conventional medicine by applying ‘environmental, behavioural, medical and motivational principles to the management of lifestyle-related health problems in a clinical setting’ (Egger et al 2008).

Managing lifestyle issues changes the emphasis from conventional treatment to one where patients need to be more involved in their own care, and which therefore requires the clinician to have considerable motivational knowledge and skills. It involves the therapeutic use of lifestyle interventions in the management of disease (Egger et al 2009). Lifestyle medicine may also involve health coaching, a practice in which health professionals apply evidence-based psychological, counselling and coaching principles and techniques to assist their patients to achieve positive health and lifestyle outcomes through cognitive and behaviour change (Gale 2014).

**A NEW ACADEMIC DISCIPLINE**

It appears that the wellness revolution has created the opportunity for wellness to be framed as a new academic discipline. The multidimensional and holistic nature of wellness, however, suggests that wellness is in fact a ‘transdiscipline’ requiring extensive collaboration and communication across diverse discipline areas to work on wellness-oriented teaching, learning and research projects.

Wellness seems to have an emerging research agenda, with one of the four Australian Government National Research Priorities being ‘Promoting and maintaining good health’. This priority area aims to support preventive healthcare and enable people to make healthy choices, and includes the following key research themes: a healthy start to life, ageing well, ageing productively and preventive healthcare (Department of Education, Employment and Workplace Relations 2009). While this research priority area seems to target wellness-related research, wellness underpins many disparate research areas, ranging from theoretical and bench–top science to clinical research as well as social and policy research. A wellness agenda is therefore also inherent in other research priority areas, such as sustainability, frontier technologies and safeguarding Australia from terrorism, crime, invasive diseases and pests.
While a wellness research agenda is emerging, significant hurdles remain. Specific research into wellness and disease prevention is hindered by a lack of discrete outcome measures with which to measure wellness. Additional challenges include the design of programs that monitor and promote adherence, novel delivery models and the training, regulation and accreditation of suitable practitioners.

Although training and regulation pose challenges, wellness is a growing area in education and training and is increasingly becoming the focus of academic programs at undergraduate and postgraduate levels. International demand for a wellness-oriented academic program is located in three principal healthcare sectors: the conventional healthcare disciplines, which have an increasing emphasis on health promotion; the complementary and allied health sector including fitness, sports science, nutrition and psychology; and the rapidly growing hospitality, leisure and spa sector.

The need for wellness-related education is demonstrated by current health workforce shortages, the lack of experienced managers and therapists to work in spas, hospitality and leisure and the need for business professionals to embrace workplace wellness. A Productivity Commission report on Australia’s health workforce suggested four broad approaches to overcome current health workforce shortages and distribution problems, and to address the future pressures facing the system. The first of these approaches involves strategies aimed at reducing the underlying demand for healthcare through ‘wellness’ and preventive strategies. This report also commented on the need for a health workforce with increased skills in health promotion (Productivity Commission 2006).

Creating a new academic (trans)discipline around wellness is a challenge, as there is a need to align the wellness industry with the professional and educational standards of the healthcare and business sectors. Such an alignment is evident in the continual increase in the provision and standard of education programs in wellness-related areas such as naturopathy, massage, fitness, yoga and spa therapies. This has led to calls for wellness-education-related accreditation and standards. In answering this call, the US National Wellness Institute recently set up an Academic Accreditation Committee and developed a set of baccalaureate-degree-level standards and processes that will lead to accreditation of academic programs and graduate certification (US National Wellness Institute 2008).

In Australia, RMIT University took on a leadership role and established the world’s first postgraduate Master of Wellness program. Vocational outcomes from these programs, however, are currently unclear and potentially diverse as no position descriptions currently require applicants to have a postgraduate wellness degree. Thus, the program was designed to provide graduate students from diverse backgrounds, including both health science and business graduates, with a holistic overview of wellness principles and practices. The program also aimed to have a positive impact on students’ personal health and wellbeing, and uses cutting-edge educational technology and the latest understanding about adult teaching and learning to deliver a fully online program with a global reach.

**WELLNESS ONLINE**

Wellness is a product of consciousness and it is said that ‘the currency of wellness is connection’ (Travis & Ryan 2004). With the advent of the internet as well as the development of information and communications technology (ICT), the world is certainly becoming more connected. Over the past two decades the development of the internet and ICT has progressed so rapidly that it is now possible for everyone on the globe to be linked via mobile communications technology that infiltrates almost every aspect of society.

It is clear that wellness-related technologies are converging in an online environment. Already ICT is used to support healthcare delivery, and electronic health-information systems promise to improve efficacy, safety and quality of care through the provision of alerts and reminders, diagnostic support, therapy critiquing and planning, prescribing decision support, information retrieval, image recognition and interpretation, as well as through the discovery of new phenomena and the creation of medical knowledge (Coiera 2003).

The advent of personal computing and modern consumer electronics has made technologies that were once accessible only to technical specialists available to the general
population via home-based and mobile platforms. For example, online risk calculators can provide the basis for lifestyle advice and motivation for implementing positive lifestyle changes, and online tools can provide assessments via subjective questionnaires, as well as by the direct testing of cognitive and other functional status.

Biometric monitors further allow remote wellness monitoring by uploading data on various physiological parameters such as activity and sleep. These devices are being integrated into other personal electronic devices such as phones and digital music players. For example, Apple and Nike offer a kit in which a shoe sensor communicates with a wireless iPod receiver to transmit workout information such as elapsed time, distance travelled and calories burned (Cohen 2008b).

Online data collection allows personal information to be analysed and interpreted with the assistance of online experts, who in turn have access to sophisticated knowledge-management technologies, including bibliographic databases and decision support systems. Furthermore, online education offers unprecedented opportunities to deliver education across the planet, and develop knowledge and skills wherever they are required.

THE FUTURE OF WELLNESS

While the worldwide web is still young, when considered as a single machine it represents the largest and most reliable machine ever built with information-processing power approaching the same order as a human brain. The size and power of the web is now doubling every two years, and it is expected that its future evolution will lead to services and opportunities that are yet to be imagined (Kelly 2007). Its global reach provides a unique platform for connecting people, ideas and practices, essential parts of the wellness equation. Yet, how best to harness the web’s capabilities to improve individual and global wellness remains unclear.

Many questions remain. Will the harnessing of global connectivity be able to enhance how we experience our environment and avert the many crises we are facing? Will online environments facilitate therapeutic and health enhancing experiences? Will initiatives such as electronic personal health records provide everyone with an online health record that will enhance continuity of care and provide opportunities for epidemiological research and public health initiatives? Will online access provide everyone access to education and the wealth of the world’s knowledge? Will ‘augmented reality’ become the norm and ‘virtual reality’ become indistinguishable from ‘reality’? Will video games become better than real life? Will social networking provide a forum for meaningful connection and provide an end to loneliness and social isolation?

It seems clear that over the next few decades changing global demographics, accompanied by major societal changes brought about by climate change, and technological innovations will have an impact on personal, community and global wellbeing and will forever change how humans live. The development of wellness as a key focus for research, education, healthcare, government policy and industry can only improve the outlook for present and future generations.

REFERENCES


INDEX

Page numbers followed by “f” indicate figures, “t” indicate tables, and “b” indicate boxes.

A
AAMA see Australian Aromatic Medicine Association
ABC see American Botanical Council
abortifacients 174
ACCM see Advisory Committee on Complementary Medicine
acetyl-L-carnitine (ALC) 157
acupuncture 5–6, 146
ADEC see Australian Drug Evaluation Committee
adenosine-triphosphate (ATP) 160
adequate daily intake (ADI) 35–36, 62
ADR see adverse drug reactions
ADRAC see Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee
adverse drug reactions (ADR) 96–97
with CAM 94–95
for cancer 152–161
extrinsic factors in 97
incidence of 100–106
patient-related factors for 104
preoperative care 130
prevention of 105–106
reporting of 102–104, 102t
therapeutic factors with 105
type A 83t, 96–97
type B 97, 97t
with nutritional supplements 40
in pregnancy 179
with selenium 153
TGA and 9
with vitamin A 153
with zinc 153
Adverse Drug Reactions Advisory Committee (ADRAC) 99, 101
advertising 9, 99
Advisory Committee on Complementary Medicine (ACCM) 9, 102
AFNOR see Association Française de Normalisation
AHP see American Herbal Pharmacopoeia
AIMA see Australian Integrative Medicine Association
ALC see acetyl-L-carnitine
alcohols 23, 44
aldehydes 44
Alfred Hospital 135b
alkaloids 23
alpha-lipoic acid 55t–58t
alpha-pinene 23
alprazolam 16
AMA see Australian Medical Association
American Botanical Council (ABC) 98
American Herbal Pharmacopoeia (AHP) 98
American Herbal Products Association 26
amitriptyline 114t
AMSA see Australian Medical Students Association
anaesthetics 137–138
analgesics 136–137
ananda 204
animal studies 119, 178
anthocyans 55t–58t
anthraquinone glycosides 24
antibiotics 63–64
anti-inflammatories 136–137
antioxidants 154, 156–160
Antiquarium 19
ANZCA see Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists
APP see Australian Pharmaceutical Products
aromacology 43
aromatherapy 42–53
in Australia 45
cancer and 47
carrier substances for 46
chemistry of 44–48
choosing a practitioner 52
drugs and 46
interactions with 48–51
history of 42–43
hydrosols in 46
medical 43
pharmacodynamics of 46
pharmacokinetics of 46
in practice 52
practice models for 43
aromatherapy (Continued)
in pregnancy 47–48, 48t
safety of 47–48, 49t–50t
precautions with 51
standardisation in 44–45
storage for 51–52
subtle 43
TGA and 45
traditional 43
ARTG see Australian Register of Therapeutic Goods
Association Française de Normalisation (AFNOR) 44–45
ATDS see Australia Total Diet Survey
ATP see adenosine-triphosphate
AUST L number 8–9, 97–98
AUST R number 8–9, 97–98
Australia
aromatherapy in 45
CAM in 2–5
greater acceptance for 3–4
popularity of 5
range of therapies in 2, 2t
spending for 3
Food Standards Code in 64
herbal medicines in 27b
PAN Pharmaceuticals and 9–10
quality of 9
natural supplements in
PAN Pharmaceuticals and 9–10
quality of 9
NICM in 83–84
NNS in 32–33
NPS in 16b, 99–100
nutritional deficiency in 33–34
Pan Pharmaceuticals in 9–10
preoperative care in 139
RDAs in 35–37
Australia Total Diet Survey (ATDS) 62
Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA) 139
Australian Aromatic Medicine Association (AAMA) 52
Australian Drug Evaluation Committee (ADEC) 181t
Australian Heart Foundation 29
Australian Integrative Medicine Association (AIMA) 3–5, 85
Australian Medical Association (AMA) 3, 84
Australian Medical Students Association (AMSA) 3
Australian National Training Authority 43
Australian Pharmaceutical Products (APP) 99–100
Australian Register of Therapeutic Goods (ARTG) 8–9, 97–98
Avicenna 93
Ayurveda 14, 60–61, 93, 206–207
Aztecs 19

B
back pain, obesity and 29–30
Badianus 19
balance, empowerment, evidence-based, collaboration, and holism (BEECH) 7
Bank West Quality of Life Index 207
barberry 21
bedside manner 81
BEECH see balance, empowerment, evidence-based, collaboration, and holism
Benson, Herbert 81
berberine 21, 23
best available evidence 14–15
beta-carotene 40, 55t–58t, 155
beta-glucan 55t–58t
bifidobacteria 55t–58t
black cohosh 102–103, 175–176, 185
bliss 204
blueberries 67–68
bortezomib 159
Botanical Adulterants Program 98b
Braun, Lesley 162b
broccoli 68–69
C
caffeic acid 55t–58t
caffeine 21, 23
calcium 33, 191
CAM see complementary and alternative medicine
Campbell, Joseph 204
cancer
aromatherapy for 47
CAM for 143–171
ADR with 152–161
antioxidants and 154
benefits of 146–147
chemotherapy and 154
efficacy of 163
palliative care with 167
P-gp and 160–161
pharmacodynamics with 153–157
pharmacokinetics with 153,
160–161
physiochemical interactions with 153
poor patient disclosure about 144–145
reasons for using 144–145
research on 110–111, 150–152
safety of 163, 168b–169b
selenium and 153
severity of disease and 163–167
survival improvement from 147–150
vitamin A and 153
WSR for 150–151
zinc and 153
IM for 145b, 161–168
information sources on 164t–165t
nutrition and 29–30
nutritional genomics and 39
obesity and 29–30
supportive care for 147
carbohydrates 31
cardiac glycosides 24
cardiovascular disease (CVD) 29–30, 39
carrier substances, for aromatherapy 46
caryophyllene 44
case reports 12–13, 122, 179
chamazulene 44
chaste tree 84t, 185
chelation 117–118, 155
chemotherapy 154
chi 205
Chinese medicine 14, 22, 24, 93
dispensing products in 84
food in 60–61
wellness in 206–207, 206f
chiropractic 5
Chlorella spp. 70–71
chocolate 23
choline 195
chromium 196
cimetidine 16
cisplatin 156–157
Clinical Oncology Society of Australia (COSA) 162b
clinical studies 119–120, 120t, 179–180
Cochrane, Archie 13b
The Cochrane Collaboration 13b, 16
The Cochrane Consumer Network 13b
codeine 35
coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) 134–136, 146–147
coffee 23
complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) 1–18
ADR with 94–95
extrinsic factors in 97
incidence of 100–106
patient-related factors for 104
prevention of 105–106
reporting of 102–104, 102t
therapeutic factors with 105
type A 96–97, 96t
type B 97, 97t
in Australia 2–5
definition of 1
greater acceptance for 3–4
popularity of 5
range of therapies in 2, 2t
spending for 3
for cancer 143–171
ADR with 152–161
antioxidants and 154
benefits of 146–147
chemotherapy and 154
efficacy of 163
palliative care with 167
P-gp and 160–161
pharmacodynamics with 153–157
pharmacokinetics with 153, 160–161
physiochemical interactions with 153
poor patient disclosure about 144–145
reasons for using 144–145
safety of 163, 168b–169b
selenium and 153
severity of disease and 163–167
survival improvement from 147–150
vitamin A and 153
WSR for 150–151
zinc and 153
case reports in 12–13
cost effectiveness of 82–84
CPI for 92
databases for 16
decision making in 16–17
dispensing products in 84
evidence-based complementary medicine and 11–12
herbal medicines in 8–11
human studies in 12–13
IM and 7–8
interdisciplinary collaboration in 88–89
medical spectrum for 6–8, 7f
meta-analyses in 13
multidisciplinary collaborative approach to 87
natural supplements in 8–11
in New Zealand 5–6
NPS and 16b
open communication in 87–88
OTC 92
in pregnancy 187b
for preoperative care 129–142
ADR with 130
bleeding with 131–133
drug interactions with 130–136
safety of 130–136
products in 82, 83t
rational use of 106–107
RCTs in 12–13
reasons for using 83t
risks with 95t
safety of 78–91
definition of 94–97
history of 92–94
likelihood and severity in 94f
regulation and product information for 97–100
scientific evidence for 12–16
systematic reviews in 13
US and 11
in vitro studies in 12
in vivo studies in 12
whole system practice research in 14
see also specific modalities
conjugated linoleic acid 55t–58t
conscious consumption 209
consumer product information (CPI) 92
contraception 176
cooking 36, 64–67
copper 40
CoQ10 see coenzyme Q10
COSA see Clinical Oncology Society of Australia
cottonroot 175–176
coumarins 22, 44, 133
CPI see consumer product information
cranberry 84t
Cruciferous indoles 55t–58t
Csikszentmihalyi, Mihalyi 205–206
curcumin 115t
CVD see cardiovascular disease
cytochromes (CYP) 16, 103–104
animals studies for 119
enzyme induction from 115–116
enzyme inhibition from 115
herbal medicines and 161
interactions with 113–114, 114t
metabolism and 161
natural supplements and 161
P-gp and 113
pharmacogenetics and 116b
preoperative care and 137
warfarin and 125

D
De materia medica (Dioscorides) 19
diabetes 29–30, 39
diadzein 113t
diazepam 115t
dietary fibre 55t–58t
digoxin 122–125, 123t
Dioscorides 19
diterpenes 23
diuretics 35
drugs
interactions with
  aromatherapy and 46
  with CAM preoperative care 130–136
  herbal medicines and 20, 27
  nutritional supplements and 40
  preoperative care and 136–138
in pregnancy 181t
  safety of 182t
  secondary nutritional deficiency and 34–35
Dunaliella salina 71, 71t
Dunn, Halbert 202

E
EARs see estimated average requirements
EBM see evidence-based medicine
EBPC see evidence-based patient choice
echinacea 180–183
education, wellness and 211
EGCG see epigallocatechin-3-gallate
electrolytes 134
ellagic acid 55t–58t
Embase 16
EMEA see European Medicines Agency
eumenagogues 174
energy, wellness and 205
enlightenment 203
ephedrine 23
epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) 155, 159–160
essential nutrients 38
essential oils see aromatherapy
essential trace minerals 32
estimated average requirements (EARs) 35
eugenol 44
European Journal of Cancer 146
European Medicines Agency (EMEA) 103
evidence-based complementary medicine 11–12
evidence-based medicine (EBM) 85
evidence-based patient choice (EBPC) 138–141
exercise, wellness and 211

F
fatty acids 55t–58t
FDA see Food and Drug Administration
feverfew 132
fish oils 84t, 132–133
flavonoids 22, 158
flow, wellness and 205–207
food
additives to 64
antibiotics in 63–64
in Ayurveda 60–61
chemical complexity of 30–32, 30t
in Chinese medicine 60–62
cooking of 64–67
GI and 65
individualisation of 60–61
influences on choices with 34t
irradiation of 64
labeling of 32
macronutrients in 31
as medicine 54–77
micronutrients in 31–32
nutrition in 30–32, 30t
versus nutritional supplements 59–60
pesticides in 61–62
phytonutrients in 55, 55t–58t
preparatin of 64–67
processing of 64–67
single-cell 69–71
social, cultural, and environmental aspects of 65–67
Food and Drug Administration (FDA) 131
Food Standards Australia New Zealand (FSANZ) 32, 62
Foods for Specified Health Use (FOSHU) 55–58
The Friends of Science in Medicine (FSM) 4
INDEX 219

FSANZ see Food Standards Australia New Zealand
FSM see The Friends of Science in Medicine

G
Galen 19, 22, 92–94
Gattéfosse, René 43
general practitioners (GPs) 3, 99–100
genetically modified food (GM) 32, 62–63
genistein 113t
German Commission E, monographs of 16, 24–25, 24b
Gestalt 81
GI see glycaemic index
ginger 183–184
Ginkgo biloba 25–26, 83–84, 84t, 101t, 132
GL see glycaemic load
glucosamine sulfate 84t, 131–132
glucosinolates 24
glutathione (GSH) 55t–58t, 155
glycaemic index (GI) 65
glycaemic load (GL) 65
glycosides 24
GM see genetically modified food
goldenseal 21
good manufacturing practice 9
GPs see general practitioners
grapefruit juice 112, 113t
GSH see glutathione
guarana 21, 134

H
Happy Planet Index 207
hawthorn 84t
HDL see high-density lipoprotein
herbal medicines 19–28
ADR with
   case reports for 122
   with digoxin 122–125, 123t
   likelihood for 122
   with warfarin 125
in Australia 27b
   PAN Pharmaceuticals and 9–10
   quality of 9
in CAM 8–11
chemistry of 20–21
contraception with 176
CYP and 161
   interactions with 113–114, 114t
drugs and 20
   chemotherapeutics of 24–25
   interactions with 27
efficacy of 84t
grapefruit juice and 112
   interactions with 109–128
   absorption factors for 110
   animal studies for 119
   clinical studies for 119–120, 120t
   drugs and 27
mechanisms of 109–121
metabolism and 110
nutrients and 110–111
physiochemicals and 117–118
predictive algorithm for 121–122
screening tools for 118–120
transporter proteins and 111
in vitro studies for 118–119, 120t
in vivo studies for 120t
key constituent groups in 22–24
multiple pharmacological actions of 21
P-gp and 111–112, 113t
pharmacodynamics with 116–117
pharmacognosy and 20
pharmacokinetics of 110–116
physiochemicals and, interactions with 117–118
phytochemicals in 20–21
in pregnancy 172–201
   ADR with 179
   advising patients on 185–186
   contemporary use of 176–177
   history of 174–176
   informed consent for 186
   safety of 177–185
for preoperative care, bleeding from 131–132
product quality and regulation 8–10
rational use of 125–126, 126t
safety of 27
standardisation of 25–27
   limitations of 26–27
synergistic interactions in 21–22, 118
see also specific herbs; specific medicines
Herbmed 16
high-density lipoprotein (HDL) 65
Hippocrates 54
Hippocratic oath 84
honey 84t
hormone replacement therapy (HRT) 46
house chestnut 84t
HRT see hormone replacement therapy
Human Genome Project 38, 79
human studies 12–13
hydrosols 46
hyperforin 21
hypericin 22
hypnosis 5, 146

I
IFA see International Federation of Aromatherapists
IFRA see International Fragrance Association
illness–wellness spectrum 203, 203f
IM see integrative medicine
in vitro studies 12, 118–119, 120t
in vivo studies 12, 120t
indoles 23, 55t–58t
informed consent 85, 186
insoluble fibre 55t–58t
Integrative Cardiac Wellness Program 135b
integrative medicine (IM) 78–91
bedside manner in 81
CAM and 7–8
for cancer 145b
clinical implications of 161–168
decision making and 81–82, 86f
dispensing products in 84
EBM and 85
ethical conduct in 84
holism and individual and 79–80
informed consent in 85
interdisciplinary collaboration in 88–89
intuition in 81
multidisciplinary collaborative approach to 87
open communication in 87–88
patient’s responsibility in 89–90
placebo in 81
referral letters for 88–89, 89t
therapeutic relationships in 80
wellness and 80–81
Integrative Medicine Gateway 16
interactions
with drugs
aromatherapy and 46, 48–51
herbal medicines and 20, 27
nutritional supplements and 40
preoperative care and 130–138
synergistic 21–22
see also adverse drug reactions; specific drugs, herbs, and supplements
International Federation of Aromatherapists (IFA) 52
International Fragrance Association (IFRA) 44–45
International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) 44–45
International Society for Complementary Medicine Research (ISCMR) 12
intuition 81
inulin 55t–58t
iodine 33–34, 196
iron 33, 40, 196
irradiation, of food 64
ISCMR see International Society for Complementary Medicine Research
ISO see International Organisation for Standardisation
isoflavones 55t–58t, 158–159
isoquinoline alkaloids 23
isothiocyanates 55t–58t
J
Journal of the American Medical Association 99
K
kava kava 16, 102–104, 137
ketones 23, 44
Korean ginseng 134
L
lactobacilli 55t–58t
lactones 44
laxatives 24
LDL see low-density lipoprotein
Leclerc, Henri 19
licorice 134
lifestyle medicine 210–211
lifestyles of health and sustainability (LOHAS) 209
lignans 55t–58t
limonene 23, 46
linalool 44
lipids 31
LOHAS see lifestyles of health and sustainability
low-density lipoprotein (LDL) 65
lutein 55t–58t
lycopene 55t–58t
M
MACCAH see Ministerial Advisory Committee on Complementary and Alternative Health
macronutrients 31
magnesium 196
Maury, Marguerite 43
maximum residue levels (MRLs) 62
MCNZ see Medical Council of New Zealand
medical aromatherapy 43
Medical Council of New Zealand (MCNZ) 6
medical spectrum 6–8, 7f
meditation 8
Medline 16
meta-analyses 13
metabolic syndrome 29
metabolism 110, 161
methadone 114t
METOPIA 121
MicroMedex 16
micronutrients 31–32, 39
midazolam 114t
MIMS 99–100
minerals 31
Ministerial Advisory Committee on Complementary and Alternative Health (MACCAH) 5
monoterpenes 23
mono-unsaturated fatty acids 55t–58t
morphine 23, 35
MRLs see maximum residue levels
mucilaginous herbal medicines 110
mushrooms 71–73
mustard oil glycosides 24
N
N-acetylcysteine (NAC) 155
NAFKAM see National Research Centre in Complementary and Alternative Medicine
naproxen 137
narrow therapeutic index (NTI) 105
INDEX

National Center for Natural Products Research (NCNPR) 98
National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) 11
National Formulary 9, 11, 37, 173
RDAs and 35–36
scientific evidence and 14–15, 14t
National Herbalists Association of Australia (NHAA) 27b
National Institute for Complementary Medicine (NICM) 10–11, 83–84, 163
National Institute of Health 11
National Nutrition Survey (NNS) 32–33
National Preventative Health TaskForce 210
National Research Centre in Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NAFKAM) 152b
Native Americans 19, 175
Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database 16
Natural Standard Database 16
natural supplements
in Australia
  PAN Pharmaceuticals and 9–10
  quality of 9
in CAM 8–11
CYP and 161
efficacy of 84t
in pregnancy 172–201
ADR with 179
  advising patients on 185–186
  informed consent for 186
  safety of 177–185
for preoperative care, bleeding with 131–132
product quality and regulation 8–10
see also nutritional supplements; specific supplements
NCCAM see National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine
NCNPR see National Center for Natural Products Research
New England Journal of Medicine 99
New Zealand
  CAM in 5–6
  nutritional deficiency in 33–34
  RDAs in 35–37
NHAA see National Herbalists Association of Australia
NHMRC see National Health and Medical Research Council
NICM see National Institute for Complementary Medicine
nicotine 23
NNS see National Nutrition Survey
non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDS) 35, 97, 100
NPS see National Prescribing Service
NSAIDS see non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
NTI see narrow therapeutic index
nutrition 29–41
  barriers to 34
  bioavailability in 36
  cancer and 29–30
  consequences of poor nutrition 29–30
  CVD and 29–30
  deficiencies in 32–38
  nutritional genomics and 39
  RDI and 36–37
  reference values for 36
  essential nutrients in 38
  in food 30–32, 30t
  mortality risk with 29–30
  optimal 37–38
  primary deficiency in 32–34
  RDAs and 35–37
  RDI and 37–38, 37f
  secondary deficiency in 34–35
  soils and 36
  wellness and 211
nutritional genomics (nutritional epigenetics) 38–40, 38f
nutritional supplements
  ADR with 40
  adverse drug reactions with 40
  drugs and, interactions with 40
  food versus 59–60
  natural versus synthetic 40
  nutritional genomics and 39
  in pregnancy 173–174, 188
  dosage for 196t
  preoperative care with 133
  rational use of 40
  safety of 39–40
  toxicity of 40
see also specific supplements
O
obesity 29–30
Office of Cancer Complementary and Alternative Medicine (OCCAM) 151–152
Office of Complementary Medicine 9
oligofructose 55t–58t
omega-3 55t–58t, 195
onions 146
opioids 35, 136
opium 23
optimal nutrition 37–38
osteoarthritis 29–30
over-the-counter (OTC) 92, 172
oxytocin 175–176
P
Pan Pharmaceuticals 9–10
Paracelsus 93
Pauling, Linus 54
PEACE see personal preferences, evidence, alternatives, costs, and expedience
peppermint 84t
personal preferences, evidence, alternatives, costs, and expedience (PEACE) 16, 85–86
pesticides 61–62
P-glycoprotein (P-gp) 21, 111b–112b, 124
CAM for cancer and 160–161
herbal medicines and 111–112, 113t
pharmacodynamics 46, 116–117, 124, 153–157
pharmacogenetics 116b
pharmacognosy 20
pharmacokinetics 110–116, 125
of aromatherapy 46
with CAM for cancer 153, 160–161
phenols 23, 44, 55t–58t
phenylalkylamine alkaloids 23
phytochemicals 20–21, 32, 44, 55, 55t–58t
phytomedicine see herbal medicines
phytosterols 24
PICO see population, intervention, comparative intervention, and outcome
Pilzer, Paul Zane 208
piperidine 23
piperine 113t
placebo 81
poisons 94b
polyphenols 55t–58t, 158
population, intervention, comparative intervention, and outcome (PICO) 13
potassium 124
prana 208
prebiotics 55t–58t
pregnancy 173–174, 188t–195t
abortifacients and 174
animal studies for 178
aromatherapy in 47–48, 48t
black cohosh in 175–176, 185
calcium in 191
CAM in 187b
case reports for 179
chaste tree in 185
clinical studies for 179–180
drugs in 181t
safety of 182t
echinacea in 180–183
emmenagogues and 174
ginger in 183–184
herbal medicines in 172–201
contemporary use of 176–177
history of 174–176
safety of 177–185
natural supplements in 172–201
safety of 177–185
nutritional supplements in 173–174, 188
do dosage for 196t
OTC in 172
QUM in 187b
raspberry leaf in 184
preoperative care
anaesthetics and 137–138
analgesics and 136–137
anti-inflammatories and 136–137
in Australia 139
blood pressure and 134
CAM for 129–142
ADR with 130
bleeding with 131–133
drug interactions with 130–136
safety of 130–136
CoQ10 for 134–136
coumarins and 133
drug interactions and 136–138
EBPC and 138–141
electrolytes and 134
fish oils and 132–133
Ginkgo biloba and 132
glucosamine sulfate for 131–132
guarana and 134
herbal medicines for, bleeding from 131–132
kava kava and 137
Korean ginseng for 134
licorice and 134
natural supplements for, bleeding with 131–132
nutritional supplements for 133
patient welfare and safety in 140b
QUM and 138–139
recommendations before high-risk surgery 138
reperfusion injury and 134–136
salicylate and 133
St John’s Wort and 138
tissue perfusion and 134–136
valerian and 137
President’s Council on Physical Fitness and Sports 202
preventative healthcare 3
primary deficiency 32–34
proanthocyanidins 55t–58t
probiotics 55t–58t, 84t, 195
ProQuest 16
protein 31, 39
transporter 111b–112b
pseudohypericin 22
pygeum 84t
pyridine 23
pyrrolizidine alkaloids 23
Q
Qi 207
quality use of essential oils (QUEO) 42
Quality Use of Medicines (QUM) 138–139, 187b
QUEO see quality use of essential oils
quercetin 55t–58t, 113t
quinoline alkaloids 23
QUM see Quality Use of Medicines
INDEX 223

R
RACGP see Royal Australian College of General Practitioners
radiation therapy 157–160
randomised controlled trials (RCTs) 12–13, 13b, 15
  on black cohosh 103
whole system practice research and 14
raspberry leaf 184
RCTs see randomised controlled trials
RDAs see recommended daily allowances
RDI see recommended daily intake
recommended daily allowances (RDAs) 35–37
recommended daily intake (RDI) 35, 37–38, 37f
referral letters 88–89, 89t
reishi mushrooms 71–73
relaxation training 8, 146
reperfusion injury 134–136
Research Institute for Fragrance Materials (RIFM) 44–45
reserpine 23
resveratrol 55t–58t, 113t
RIFM see Research Institute for Fragrance Materials
Rig Veda 19
Rocine, Victor 54
rosemary 44, 113t
Royal Australian College of General Practitioners (RACGP) 3–4, 84–85

S
salicylate 46, 133
saponins 24, 118t
saw palmetto 84t
Science Direct 16
scientific evidence
  application of 15
  assessment of 14
  for CAM 12–16
  dimensions of 14t
  limitations of 14–15
  misleading headlines on 16
  obtaining 15–16
secondary deficiency 34–35
selenium 36, 40, 153
Senate Committee on Integrative Care: A Pathway to a Healthier Nation 11
SENSE see stress management, exercise, nutrition, social and spiritual interaction, and education
sesquiterpenes 23, 44
shiitake mushrooms 71–73
single-cell foods 69–71
social and spiritual interaction 211
soils, nutrition and 36
soluble fibre 55t–58t
soy 158–159
Spirulina spp. 70
St John’s wort 12, 21–22, 46, 83–84
ADR with 102
for cancer 146
efficacy of 84t
P-gp and 112, 113t, 160
preoperative care and 138
St Mary’s thistle 113t, 158
standardisation
  in aromatherapy 44–45
  of herbal medicines 25–27
statins 35
stereoisomers 44
sterols 22
stress management 8, 211
stress management, exercise, nutrition, social and spiritual interaction, and education (SENSE) 8, 89
subtle aromatherapy 43
sulforaphane 55t–58t
supportive care, for cancer 147
synergistic interactions, in herbal medicines 21–22, 118
systems biology 38

T
tamoxifen 114t
tannins 22, 117, 117t
tea tree 44, 84t
temazepam 114t
teratogenesis 177–178
terpenes 23, 44
testosterone 114t
Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA) 8–9, 10t, 15, 97–98
ACCM and 9
ADR and 9
aromatherapy and 45
black cohosh and 103
thiazide diuretics 35
thyme 44
tissue perfusion 134–136
Total Neurotoxicity Score (TNS) 156–157
traditional aromatherapy 43
traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) see Chinese medicine
traditional evidence 93–94
transgenic food see genetically modified food
transporter proteins 111, 111b–112b
triterpene glycosides 24
tropane alkaloids 23
type A reactions 83t, 96–97
type B reactions 84t, 97

U
United States (US)
  CAM and 11
  FDA in 131
  obesity in 29
United States (US) (Continued)
  President’s Council on Physical Fitness and Sports in 202
  Senate Committee on Integrative Care: A Pathway to a Healthier Nation in 11
  upper level of intake (UL) 35–36
  upper respiratory tract infections (URTI) 43
  Uppsala Monitoring Centre 100–101
  URTI see upper respiratory tract infections
  US see United States
  US Pharmacopoeia 19

V
  valerian 137
  Valnet, Jean 43
  vitamin A 22, 40, 153, 196
  vitamin B6 40, 196
  vitamin B9 196
  vitamin B12 196
  vitamin C 22, 189
  vitamin D 34, 40, 173–174, 190
  vitamin E 40, 133, 155, 190
  vitamin K 191
  vitamins 31–32, 36, 39, 155

W
  warfarin 101t, 114t, 125
  wellness 202–214
    as academic discipline 211–212
    in Ayurveda 206–207
    CAM for 3
    in Chinese medicine 206–207, 206f
    conscious consumption and 209
    energy and 205
    flow and 205–207
    future of 213
    government initiatives for 210
    illness-wellness spectrum and 203, 203f
    IM and 80–81
    industry of 208–209
    integrative and holistic medicine for 8
    lifestyle medicine and 210–211
    metrics of 207
    in nutritional genomics 38
    online 212–213
    policies for 209–210
    in preoperative care 140b
    revolution of 207–209
    in search of 204–207
    world in crisis and 204
  White House Commission on Complementary Medicine 9–10
  WHO see World Health Organization
  whole systems research (WSR) 14, 150–151
  World Health Organization (WHO) 29, 33–34, 103–104, 131
    ADR and 96, 100–101
    wellness and 202
  WSR see whole systems research

X
  xanthine alkaloids 23

Y
  yang 206–207
  yin 206–207

Z
  zeaxanthin 55t–58t
  zinc 33, 40, 153, 194